



A FIRST BOOK  
IN FRENCH

DOWNER



Class PC 2.111

Book 765

Copyright N<sup>o</sup> 1919

**COPYRIGHT DEPOSIT.**







# TWENTIETH CENTURY TEXT-BOOKS

GENERAL EDITOR

A. F. NIGHTINGALE, PH. D., LL. D.

SUPERINTENDENT OF SCHOOLS, COOK COUNTY, ILLINOIS

---

## DEPARTMENT OF MODERN LANGUAGES

*French*—EDITED BY HENRY A. TODD, PH. D.

COLUMBIA UNIVERSITY

*German*—EDITED BY HORATIO S. WHITE, LL. D.

HARVARD UNIVERSITY

*Spanish*—EDITED BY WILLIAM F. GIESE, A. M.

UNIVERSITY OF WISCONSIN



TWENTIETH CENTURY TEXT-BOOKS

---

# A FIRST FRENCH BOOK

BY

CHARLES ALFRED DOWNER, PH. D.

PROFESSOR OF THE FRENCH LANGUAGE AND LITERATURE  
IN THE COLLEGE OF THE CITY OF NEW YORK



NEW YORK  
D. APPLETON AND COMPANY

PC 2111  
II 65  
1919

COPYRIGHT, 1902  
By D. APPLETON AND COMPANY



MAR -1 1919

©CL.A512508

1/20

no 1

## PREFACE

---

THIS First French Book is not intended to fill the place of a reference grammar of the French language. The aim in its preparation has been to offer a work so thorough, however, as to lay an adequate foundation for further study. The chief idea of the author has been to lead the learner to conscious knowledge, to develop his faculty of deriving principles for himself. The habit of seeking out and explaining differences, and noting resemblances, between the foreign and the native idiom is of the utmost value, not only in training the judgment, but also in practically acquiring the language. Throughout this book these differences, in particular, are constantly dwelt upon, and various devices are employed to call attention to them in a striking manner. For this reason examples precede in every case the formulation of a rule. The learner, moreover, is constantly put on his guard against the stereotyped errors to which speakers of English are prone when attempting to express themselves in French. This comparative method is applied in all parts of the book, as well in the treatment of pronunciation as in inflection and syntax.

The French exercises consist usually of groups of sentences offering connected sense. The pupil is encouraged from the outset to learn to infer the meanings of words from the context, and to look them up rather as a confirmation or correction of, than as a substitution for, his own ingenuity. Hence the special vocabularies follow the exercises, as do also the notes that explain minor points.

The number of words used is unusually large for such

a book, but experience shows that mere vocabulary is rarely a difficulty, and the learner has the satisfaction of feeling that he is constantly acquiring words. The language used is actual spoken and written French. Rare or very peculiar idioms are avoided, but the learner is gradually led to acquire a sense of idiom.

The French exercises are adapted to dictation, and this form of instruction, which is of value in teaching any foreign tongue, is of the very greatest service in teaching French, because, in the case of this language, the written forms offer so many grammatical distinctions not apparent in the spoken words.

It is impossible to write a paragraph at dictation in French without grasping the meaning. The author believes it of supreme importance that the spoken and the written form should be inseparably linked in the mind of the learner, so that the one instantly suggests the other. This consideration has determined the omission of any system of phonetic spelling. Abundant dictation will achieve this association of sound and written form very rapidly.

A special endeavor has been made to present the matter of pronunciation systematically and adequately. Although placed at the beginning of the book, the portion treating of pronunciation can best be used after a start has been made in the lessons. It is hoped that the remarks and exercises beginning on page 25 will be of good service, and that the arrangement throughout the Introduction is so clear that any detail can be readily found.

The mode of treating conjugation which is here adopted has been found decidedly successful in actual practise, and the labor of mastering the irregular verbs is thereby reduced to a minimum.

The author is deeply indebted to his friend, Professor Henry A. Todd, of Columbia University, and to Dr. A. F. Nightingale, of Chicago, for many wise suggestions and much kindness in the preparation of the work.

# CONTENTS

---

## INTRODUCTION

LESSON	PAGE
PRINCIPLES OF PRONUNCIATION . . . . .	1
DIVISION OF WORDS INTO SYLLABLES . . . . .	20
SPECIAL REMARKS ON FRENCH PRONUNCIATION . . . . .	25
EXERCISES IN PRONUNCIATION . . . . .	27

## FIRST FRENCH BOOK

I. THE ARTICLES . . . . .	30
II. NOUNS . . . . .	32
III. PRESENT INDICATIVE OF <i>Être</i> . . . . .	34
IV. EXERCISE FOR REVIEW . . . . .	36
V. PREPOSITIONS . . . . .	37
VI. ADJECTIVES . . . . .	39
VII. EXERCISE FOR REVIEW . . . . .	42
VIII. AUXILIARY VERBS . . . . .	43
IX. AUXILIARY VERBS ( <i>continued</i> ) . . . . .	46
X. THE GENERIC ARTICLE . . . . .	48
XI. VERBS . . . . .	52
XII. POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES . . . . .	56
XIII. EXERCISE FOR REVIEW . . . . .	58
XIV. THE PARTITIVE AND DEFINITE ARTICLES . . . . .	60
XV. POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS . . . . .	63
XVI. EXERCISE FOR REVIEW . . . . .	66
XVII. DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS . . . . .	67
XVIII. EXERCISE FOR REVIEW . . . . .	70



LESSON	PAGE
XIX. AUXILIARY VERBS . . . . .	71
XX. PLURALS . . . . .	75
XXI. EXERCISE FOR REVIEW . . . . .	79
XXII. COMPARATIVE FORM OF ADJECTIVES . . . . .	80
XXIII. ADJECTIVES . . . . .	83
XXIV. ADJECTIVES ( <i>continued</i> ) . . . . .	87
XXV. ADVERBS . . . . .	91
XXVI. IMPERFECT INDICATIVE OF THE THREE CONJUGATIONS . . . . .	95
XXVII. INTERROGATIVE ADJECTIVES . . . . .	99
XXVIII. PAST DEFINITE OF THE THREE CONJUGATIONS . . . . .	102
XXIX. NEGATIVES . . . . .	105
XXX. PAST DEFINITE OF THE AUXILIARY VERBS . . . . .	108
XXXI. EXERCISE FOR REVIEW . . . . .	112
XXXII. PRESENT INDICATIVE OF REGULAR VERBS ENDING IN <i>er</i> . . . . .	113
XXXIII. THE CARDINAL NUMBERS . . . . .	117
XXXIV. THE CARDINAL NUMBERS ( <i>continued</i> ) . . . . .	122
XXXV. THE ORDINAL NUMBERS AND FRACTIONS . . . . .	127
XXXVI. THE FUTURE INDICATIVE OF THE THREE CONJUGATIONS . . . . .	132
XXXVII. FUTURE TENSE OF THE AUXILIARY VERBS . . . . .	136
XXXVIII. PRESENT INDICATIVE OF IRREGULAR VERBS ENDING IN <i>oir</i> . . . . .	140
XXXIX. PRESENT CONDITIONAL OF THE THREE CONJUGATIONS . . . . .	145
XL. THE PAST PARTICIPLE . . . . .	151
XLI. PERSONAL PRONOUNS . . . . .	155
XLII. REGULAR VERBS ENDING IN <i>ir</i> . . . . .	159
XLIII. IMPERATIVE OF AUXILIARY VERBS . . . . .	163
XLIV. THE DEFINITE ARTICLE . . . . .	168
XLV. THE PRONOUN <i>En</i> . . . . .	172
XLVI. SUBJUNCTIVE PRESENT OF THE THREE CONJUGATIONS . . . . .	176
XLVII. ADVERBS AND ADVERBIAL PRONOUNS . . . . .	180
XLVIII. SUBJUNCTIVE IMPERFECT OF THE THREE CONJUGATIONS . . . . .	184
XLIX. FORMATION OF THE FRENCH VERB . . . . .	189
L. REGULAR VERBS ENDING IN <i>er</i> . . . . .	192

LESSON	PAGE
LI. TENSE . . . . .	197
LII. RELATIVE PRONOUNS . . . . .	201
LIII. THE PASSIVE VERB . . . . .	206
LIV. FORMS OF THE PRONOUN <i>Lequel</i> . . . . .	210
LV. THE INTERROGATIVE <i>Qui</i> . . . . .	215
LVI. INTERROGATIVES . . . . .	220
LVII. REFLEXIVE VERBS . . . . .	225
LVIII. REFLEXIVE VERBS ( <i>continued</i> ) . . . . .	230
LIX. COMPOUND PERSONAL PRONOUNS . . . . .	234
LX. THE PRESENT PARTICIPLE . . . . .	238
LXI. THE VERB <i>Faire</i> (TO MAKE, TO DO, TO CAUSE) . . . . .	243
LXII. IRREGULAR VERBS ENDING IN <i>ir</i> . . . . .	248
LXIII. THE SUBJUNCTIVE . . . . .	253
LXIV. THE IMPERSONAL VERB . . . . .	257
LXV. THE IMPERSONAL VERB ( <i>continued</i> ) . . . . .	261
LXVI. <i>Résumé</i> OF VERBS REQUIRING THE SUBJUNCTIVE . . . . .	266
LXVII. RELATIVE CLAUSES . . . . .	270
LXVIII. PREPOSITIONS . . . . .	275
LXIX. VERBS ENDING IN <i>être</i> . . . . .	279
LXX. THE INFINITIVE . . . . .	284
LXXI. VERBS OF <i>Feeling, Hearing, AND Seeing</i> . . . . .	289
LXXII. <i>Se taire, Plaire, AND Obéir</i> . . . . .	294
LXXIII. <i>Devoir AND Falloir</i> . . . . .	298
LXXIV. <i>Pouvoir</i> (TO BE ABLE) . . . . .	303
LXXV. <i>Savoir</i> (TO KNOW HOW) . . . . .	309

## HINTS TO TEACHERS CONCERNING THE USE OF THE BOOK

The methods of using the book must necessarily vary according to the age and ability, and the previous training of the students, the size of classes and the time at their disposal. The author respectfully suggests the following points in addition to those contained in the Preface.

It is well to begin with Lesson I immediately, deferring until later the systematic study of pronunciation and the value of the letters. The younger the pupils, the more dependence can be placed upon mere imitation. Older pupils wish to understand why words are pronounced as they are.

In taking up the study of the pronunciation it is advisable to begin with the Exercises in Pronunciation beginning on page 27 and then give the students practice in pronouncing the words listed in divisions III and IV under Special Remarks on French Pronunciation. As the meaning of all these words is self-evident, attention can be concentrated upon the French way of uttering them and especially upon the contrast the French pronunciation offers with the English. Many students can learn by induction the value of the French letters and the peculiarities of French orthography merely through such exercises as these.

Later the rules laid down concerning the values of the letters may be taken up in order, but it is well to emphasize the more important points only and to pass over lightly or omit the less frequent exceptions. The latter are inserted for convenience of reference.

The book is divided into Lessons, but a Lesson is not necessarily one day's work. It should be divided into two or even three parts as occasion requires.

Teachers should always prepare the advance work or a large part of it with their students in class, and in the early stages of the work show them how to study.

It should be borne in mind always that the object of translation from French to English in an elementary book is to learn how the thing is said *in French*; too often the learner lets his mind rest when he has made out the meaning of a sentence which he grasps

# INTRODUCTION

## PRINCIPLES OF PRONUNCIATION

### THE ALPHABET AND THE SOUNDS OF THE FRENCH LANGUAGE

- 1 The French language is written and printed with the same letters as the English language.

**K** and **W** are found only in words borrowed from other languages.

- 2 The French names of the letters are as follows :

<b>A</b> a	a	<b>N</b> n	enne
<b>B</b> b	bé	<b>O</b> o	o
<b>C</b> c	cé	<b>P</b> p	pé
<b>D</b> d	dé	<b>Q</b> q	cu
<b>E</b> e	é	<b>R</b> r	erre
<b>F</b> f	effe	<b>S</b> s	esse
<b>G</b> g	gé	<b>T</b> t	té
<b>H</b> h	ache	<b>U</b> u	u
<b>I</b> i	i	<b>V</b> v	vé
<b>J</b> j	ji	<b>W</b> w	double vé
<b>K</b> k	ka	<b>X</b> x	iks
<b>L</b> l	elle	<b>Y</b> y	i grec
<b>M</b> m	emme	<b>Z</b> z	zède

No attempt is made to spell these names in English fashion. Such attempts are always misleading. It is not important to learn these names until later.

3 The French language employs three accent-marks over its vowels. They are :

- (´) the acute accent, l'**accent aigu** ;
- (` ) the grave accent, l'**accent grave** ;
- (^) the circumflex accent, l'**accent circonflexe**.

4 The acute accent is used only over the vowel **e**.

5 The grave accent is used over **a**, **e**, and **u**. Only in the case of **è** is the sound affected by this accent.

6 The circumflex accent is found with all the vowels except **y**. These vowels are then usually pronounced long.

7 The accents do *not* indicate stress.

8 Other marks used in French are :

1. The cedilla, **la cédille**, placed under *c* to show that it sounds like a hissing *s*. It is used when *c* has this sound before *a*, *o*, or *u*. Examples : *façade, leçon, conçu*.

2. The apostrophe, **l'apostrophe**, indicating the omission of a vowel.

3. The dieresis, **le tréma**, indicating that the vowel over which it is placed is pronounced separately from the preceding. Examples : *Saül, Moïse, naïf*.

4. The hyphen, **le trait d'union**, connects words, syllables, and the parts of many compound words.

9 **A, a.** 1. This vowel represents one of two sounds.

2. The first is the sound in **madame**.

(It is nearer the sound of *a* in the English *am*, *at*, than in **far**. Be careful not to prolong it or draw it.)

3. This sound is by far its most frequent sound.

Examples : *mal, patte, lac, garde*.

(Avoid the tendency to change this sound before an *r*, as is usual in English.)

4. The other sound is heard in **lâche**.

(It is nearer to the *a* of *father* than to any other English vowel.)

Examples : *grâce, pas, base, passe*.

It has this sound usually before a final *s*, often before *sse* final, in the common terminations *-ation*, *-asion*, *-assion*, and generally when

bearing the circumflex accent. It is generally *long* when it has this sound.

5. **A** is silent in *aout, curacao, Saône, taon*.

- 10 **E, e.** 1. This letter, unmarked by any accent and *terminating a syllable*, is called **e mute**. (In French, **e muet**.) See § 65.

The name is unfortunate; sometimes the letter is silent, sometimes not.

Examples: *ce, de, le, me, ne, que, se, te, jeta, retard, devenir, menu, table, rive, faire, terre, pâte*.

2. Its sound is somewhat like the vowel in *bun* or in *burn*. It is made with a closer rounding of the lips than the English vowels just mentioned.

3. This letter is also **e mute** before a final **s** and in the termination **ent** of the third person plural of verbs.

Examples: *je porte, tu portes, ils portent*.

Exceptions: the monosyllables *es, ces, des, les, mes, ses, tes*, which are pronounced with the sound *è*. (But usually, when not emphasized, *é*.)

4. In ordinary rapid speech the **e mute** becomes silent (even when it is the only vowel in the word), if no difficult combination of consonants results from its omission; in oratorical or emphatic utterance it may always have its full sound.

5. In the early stages of study the student will do best to pronounce this vowel, and learn to pass over it as he acquires the ability to read or speak faster.

6. The **e** after a vowel within a word is completely silent.

Examples: *dévouement, allaient, féerique, il nettoiera, nous jouerons*.

The **e** before a vowel is completely silent.

Examples: *Jean, geai, jugea, géôle, votre ami*.

7. The final **e** of all words is practically silent in ordinary speech. If a consonant precedes, this consonant is sounded *very forcibly* as compared with usual English utterance.

Examples: *vie, joue, armée, grande, petite, homme*.

8. The **e** in the first syllable of the following words, although before a doubled consonant, is the **e** mute.

a. *dessus, dessous*, and their compounds;

b. Many words beginning with *ress*, as *ressaisir, ressembler, ress-entir, ressource*.

NOTE.—The *s* is doubled in order that it may not be sounded as *z*, as it regularly is between vowels.

9. **E** sounds like the French *a*, § 9, 2, before the *mm* in *femme* and in all adverbs in *-emment*. It has the same sound before *nn* in *solennel* and in kindred words.

Examples: *évidemment, solennité*.

- 11 **É, é.** 1. The **e** surmounted by the acute accent always has the same sound. It is usually called *e* close, **e fermé**. (The nearest English equivalent is the *a* of *gate*. Be careful not to make a diphthong of the vowel, and especially do not prolong it.)

Examples: *répété, cédé, général*.

Exception: before a consonant followed by final *e* mute, as in *porté-je, dussé-je*. Here the sound is that of *è*, and the method of indicating the sound is anomalous.

2. The same sound is represented by **-er** final when the **r** is silent.

Examples: *danser, boucher, dernier*.

3. It is represented again by final **-ied** or **-ieds**.

Examples: *pied, j'assieds*.

4. It is also represented by the ending **-ez** when the **z** is silent.

Examples: *vous avez, chez, le nez*.

5. The word **et** is pronounced **é**. The **t** is always silent.

6. The **e** before **ff**, **sc**, **ss**, is pronounced **é** when an **e** mute does not follow these consonants.

Examples: *dessécher, dessin, effacer, essentiel, descendre*. But in words ending in **-ession** the **e** is sounded *è*.



7. The *e* in Latin words, or words borrowed from Italian, Spanish, and German, sounds *é* at the end of a syllable.

Examples: *alleluia, Credo, Montevideo, Weber.*

8. The *é* is never found separated by a consonant or consonants from a final *e* mute. In this position we always find *è*. (Exception, § 11, 1, above.)

Examples: *père, célèbre, Thérèse.*

- 12 *Ê, è*. 1. This letter represents the vowel sound in the English word *get* or *pared*. (It is usually called *the open e, e ouvert*.)

Examples: *père, algèbre, célèbre, j'achète.*

2. The unaccented *e* not ending a syllable is usually pronounced *è*.

Examples: *sel, terre, paresse, nette, respect, amer.*

3. It has the same sound before *x*, and before *s* + *consonant*.

Examples: *annexe, sexe, esprit, description.*

4. It has the same sound before *il* and *ille*.

Examples: *soleil, veille, corbeille.*

5. *Ê* is never written as a final vowel.

- 13 *Ê, ê*. The sound is that of *è*, but longer.

Examples: *bête, fête, même.*

(Be careful not to pronounce *é* or *éi* in lengthening this vowel.)

- 14 *I, i*. 1. The sound is that of *i* in **machine**.

(It never sounds as in *mill*.)

2. It is silent in *oignon* and in *encoignure*.

- 15 *O, o*. 1. This vowel is sometimes sounded close, as in **rose**; sometimes open, as in **folle**.

(The nearest English equivalent of the close sound is the *o* in *rose*, *low*, *pole*. Be careful not to make a *u* sound after it.

The open sound is not found in English. It is somewhat like the *o* in *not*, but nearing the *au* in *naught*.)

2. It is usually *close* when marked with the circumflex accent.

Examples: *rôle, Vendôme, hôte.*

3. It is *close* when it is the last sound in the word.

Examples: *abricot, escroc, écho, gros, sirop, trop*.

Exception: When not at the end of a clause or sentence, *trop* is pronounced with the open sound.

4. It is *close* before final **-se**, and often before a single **s** between vowels.

Examples: *chose, suppose, arroser, générosité*.

5. It is *close* in many words in **-ome**.

Examples: *atome, axiome, idiome*.

Important exceptions are: *astronome, économe, Rome*. (Open sound.)

6. It is *close* in words ending in **-otion**.

Examples: *dévotion, émotion*.

7. It is *close* before **ss** in many words.

Examples: *dossier, fosse, grosse, grossier*.

8. Except in the above cases, it is generally open.

9. It is silent in **paon, faon**, which are pronounced as though spelled *pan, fan*.

**16 U, u.** 1. The sound of this vowel is not found in English.

2. When the student fails to make it by imitation, he can generally produce it mechanically by pronouncing *oo* (as in *pool*), and then, with the lips fixed as for that sound, attempting to utter *ee* (as in *peel*).

Examples: *tu, cru, juste*.

3. **U** is usually silent after **q** and **g**.

Examples: *qui, qualité, fatigue, gui*.

The list of exceptions is very long, but the words wherein the *u* sounds after the *q* are generally learned, scientific, or foreign words.

**17 Y, y.** 1. When not combined with another vowel, its sound is that of French **i**.

Examples: *jury, crypte*.

2. Preceding a vowel, it is sounded like the *y* in *year*.

Examples: *les yeux, le yacht* (ht silent).

## SOUNDS OF VOWEL COMBINATIONS

18 **Ai.** 1. Terminating a verb, **ai** sounds like **é**.

Examples: *j'ai, je finirai, je portai.*

2. It sounds like **é** in *gai, geai, quai, je sais, tu sais, il sait.*

3. Elsewhere **ai** sounds like **è**. (But see § 52, 2.)

Examples: *anglais, chair, lait, il parlait, la baie, que j'aie, balai, fraîche, maison.*

19 **Au.** 1. **Au** usually has the sound of the close **o**. See § 15.

Examples: *au, audace, autre, saut.*

2. **Au** sounds like the open **o** in words ending in *aure* or *aur*, and in the verb *restaurer* and its derivatives.

Examples: *Minotaure, Maure, restaurant.*

3. **Au** is pronounced like open **o** in the future and conditional of **avoir** and **savoir**.

Examples: *j'aurai, il saurait.*

4. **Au** is open in **Paul**.

5. **Eau** is equal to **au**.

20 **Ay.** 1. **Ay** sounds like **è**, unless a vowel follows.

Example: *Douay.*

2. When a vowel follows, **ay** becomes equal to **ai-i**. **Payer** is therefore pronounced *pai-ier*, as though written *pè-yer*.

Examples: *essayant, nous payons.*

3. **Pays, paysan**, are pronounced as though written *péis, péisan*.

4. **Aye** in proper names equals **è**.

Example: *La Haye*, the Hague.

5. The **a** of **ay** keeps its proper sound in many words, generally foreign, and in proper names.

Examples: *Bayard, Bayonne, Lafayette, Mayence.*

21 **Ei.** 1. **Ei** is always like **è**.

Examples: *peine, Seine, neige.*

**22 Eu.** 1. **Eu** represents one of two simple vowel sounds: the first is heard in **peu**, the second in **peur**.

2. Neither of these sounds exists in English, although the sound in *peur* approaches that in *purrr*. The French vowel is made with the lips more closely rounded than the English vowel.

3. **Eu** in **peu** is the close sound, **eu** in **peur** is the open sound.

4. The close sound is heard when it is a final vowel sound or an initial vowel sound.

Examples: *je veux, cheveu, lieu, Europe, heureux*.

5. The open sound is heard before a final pronounced consonant.

Examples: *fleur, seul, neuf*.

6. The open sound is heard in the endings **-euble, -eugle, -eule, -eune, -euple, -eure, -euve**.

Examples: *le meuble, aveugles, ils veulent, jeune, le peuple, ils peuvent*.

But **eû** is close. Examples: *jeûne, jeûner*.

7. The word **gageure** is to be noted. It is pronounced as though written *gajure*. The **e** after the **g** merely marks the sound of the **g**.

8. **Eu** in all the forms of the verb **avoir** sounds **u** (§ 16).

**23 Ey.** **Ey** is treated like **ay**.

**24 Ia, ié, iè, io, iou, ieu, etc.**

**I** before a vowel becomes a semivowel like the **y** of **yes, year**.

[The cases where it is separated from the following vowel, so as to constitute a separate syllable, are recorded in any full treatment of French versification. This distinction may be neglected here.]

**25 Oe.** 1. In **moelle, moelleux, moellon**, **oe** sounds like **oi** in **moi**. See the next section on **oi**.

2. In **poêle, oê** sounds like **oi**. See the section on **oi**.

3. **Œ** sounds like open **eu** (see § 22) in *œil* and its derivatives.

4. **Œu** follows the rules of **eu**. See § 22.

Examples: *vœu, sœur*.

5. Note that **Œ, œ**, are written together in the last two cases.

6. **Æ** in words borrowed from Greek and Latin sounds like **é**.

Example: *œsophage*.

26 **Oi**. 1. This combination sounds like the *wa* in the English word *waft*.

Examples: *bois, froid*.

NOTE.—Orthoëpists distinguish two sounds of *oi*: one open, one close. The distinction may be neglected by the student.

27 **Ou**. 1. **Ou** has but one sound—that of *oo* in the English *pool*.

Examples: *fou, poule, trou, genou, ourdir*.

28 **Oy**. 1. **Oy** is equivalent to **oi**. If a vowel follows, the **y** counts twice. It combines with the **o** to produce the sound **oi** (§ 26), and then is sounded like **y** before the following vowel.

Examples: *aboyer, nettoyons, je croyais*.

29 **Ua, ué, uè, ui, uo**. 1. After **q** and **g**, **u** is generally silent.

Examples: *guerre, qui, quand, quête*.

2. There are a great many exceptions. A few important ones are here selected:

*a.* The *u* sounds (with its French sound, but very briefly, being equivalent to a semi-vowel or consonant) in

*aiguille* and its derivatives,  
*aiguiser* and its derivatives,  
*linguiste*,  
*jaguar*.

*b.* **Gua** at the beginning of Spanish and Italian words sounds as though written *Goua* (English *gwa*).

Examples: *Guadalquivir, Guatemala*.

*c.* **Qu** sounds as in English *aquatic* in many words. A few are given:

aquarelle,	aquatique,	équateur,	équation.
loquace,	quadragénaire,	quadrangle,	quadrupède.
quadruple,	quarto,	quartz,	aquarium.

*d.* In the following words the **u** has its French sound (see § 29, 2, *a*):  
*équestre, équilatéral, quintette, quintuple, ubiquité*.

3. **Uy** equals **ui-y** in words where a vowel follows.

Examples: *appuyer, essuyons, ennuyeux*.

4. **Ue** before the **l mouillée** (see § 52) sounds like the open **eu**.

Examples: *accueil, orgueil, cueillir*.

5. **Gue** and **que** final are mute syllables; the **u** is here silent.

Examples: *fatigue, unique*.

But when written **uë**, the **u** has its normal sound.

Examples: *il arguë, he argues; aiguë, feminine of aigu*.

### THE NASAL VOWELS

30 The French language has four nasal vowels. They are heard in the words **an**, **vin**, **on**, **un**.

31 These four sounds do not exist in English, and must be learned through the ear. Descriptions generally lead the learner to utter sounds like the English *rang, wrong*, which are altogether erroneous. This *ng* sound is unknown to French.

The first of the above sounds may be described as **a** uttered nasally, the second as **è** very open uttered nasally, the third as **o** (a little closer than open **o**) uttered nasally, and **un** as the open sound of **eu**, uttered nasally.

32 1. A vowel is nasal when the **m** or **n** following is *in the same syllable*. (See § 65.)

Examples: *grand, fin, long, main, parfum*.

But see § 39.

2. Hence the vowel in the following words is not nasal:

Examples: *graine, fine, fini, parfumer*.

3. Before **mm**, **nn**, and **mn** there is no nasality.

Examples: *nommer, automne (m silent), innocent*.

But see § 33.

**33** The sound **an** is expressed by **am, an, em, en**.

Examples: *plan, camp, temps, en, cent*.

1. **Em** generally keeps this sound when it is a prefix before **m**, as in *emmener*.

**En** as a prefix keeps this sound in many words. Examples are *ennui, ennoblir, enhardir, enivrer*. See Dictionary.

**34** 1. The sound **in** is expressed by **aim, ain, eim, ein, em, en, im, in, ym, yn**.

Examples: *faim, main, Reims, ceint, importe, injuste, sympathie, syntaxe*.

2. **En** final usually has this sound.

Examples: *bien, Italien, examen*.

3. **Em, en**, have this sound in a long list of words of foreign origin.

4. **Ien** in various parts of the verbs **venir, tenir**, offers the same sound.

**35** The sound **on** is also expressed by **om**.

Examples: *l'on, plomb, son, leçon, comte, prompt*.

**36** The sound **un** is also expressed by **um** and **eun**.

Examples: *un, lundi, parfum, à jeun, humble*.

**37** **Oin, ouin**. The sound of **in** is here preceded by the **w** sound.

Examples: *loin, moins, baragouin*.

**38** **Uin**. The sound of French **u** here precedes the nasal vowel.

Example: *juin*.

**39** 1. **M** and **n** in a great many words do not nasalize the preceding vowel. These are generally proper nouns or foreign words.

Examples are: *Amsterdam, Abraham, gentleman* (here the final **n** sounds), *amen, Jérusalem*.

2. Final **um** frequently sounds as **om**, the **m** being pronounced. (This occurs chiefly in Latin words.)

Examples: *album, maximum*.



## THE CONSONANTS

**40 1.** Final consonants are usually silent.

Examples: *grand, plomb, nez, sot, près, mets, paix.*

**2.** But **c, f, l, r**, are more usually sounded than silent.

Examples: *sec, vif, mal, fer, four.*

**41 B. 1.** Sounds as in English.**2.** Final **b** is sounded in a few words (generally foreign)

Examples: *baobab, club, nabab.*

**3. B** sounds like **p** before **s**.

Examples: *absoudre, absurde.*

**42 C. 1. C** sounds like **k** before **a, o, u**.**2. C** sounds like **k** before consonants.**3. C** sounds like **k** when pronounced at the end of a word.

Examples: *cas, côte, curieux, clé, accuse, avec.*

**4. C** has the hissing sound of **s** before **e, i, y**.**5. C** has the hissing sound of **s** when it has the cedilla.

Examples: *ce, ici, Cyrus, reçu, leçon, plaça.*

**6. C** has the sound of **g** in *go* in **second** and all its derivatives.

**7.** Final **c** is silent in *estomac, tabac, cric, accroc, escroc, broc, clerc, Saint-Marc* (of Venice), *marc, porc, franc, banc, blanc, flanc, jonc, tronc, je vains, tu vains, il vainc.*

**8.** In **instinct**, the final **ct** is silent.**43 Ch. 1. Ch** is generally sounded as *sh* in *shut*.

Examples: *chat, acheter, chef, chute.*

**2. Ch** sounds like **k** in many words from the Greek and in other foreign words.

Examples: *chrétien, chœur, écho, archéologie, orchestre.*

*a.* Exceptions are numerous. **Ch** is pronounced as in *machine* in the following, selected as important from a long list: *Achille, archevêque, architecte, architecture, chirurgien, hiérarchie, monarchie, Michel, patriarche, psyché, Don Quichotte.*

*b.* In **Michel-Ange** the **ch** sounds like **k**.

*c.* The **ch** in all words beginning with **archi** sounds as in **machine** except in the two words **archiépiscopal** and **archiépiscopat**.

**Ch** final is silent in **almanach**.

**44 D.** 1. **D** sounds as in English. It is perhaps more dental, that is, the tongue comes well against the teeth.

2. Final **d** is usually sounded in foreign names.

3. Final **d** is sounded in **sud**.

4. Final **d** is silent in **Madrid**, **Gounod**.

5. Final **d** is silent in the ending **-rd**, but is pronounced in **nord-est** and **nord-ouest**.

6. Final **d** is sounded in **George Sand**.

**45 F.** 1. Final **f** is silent in **clef**, often written as pronounced, *clé*.

2. **F** is silent in **chef-d'œuvre** and in **cerf-volant**.

3. **F** is sounded in the singulars **bœuf**, **œuf**, **nerf**, but is silent in the plurals **bœufs**, **œufs**, **nerfs**.

4. **F** is silent in **neuf**, meaning *nine*, before a consonant or an aspirate **h** of a word it multiplies.

Example: *neuf livres*, nine books.

**46 G.** 1. **G** sounds as in *go* before **a**, **o**, **u**, or a consonant.

Examples: *gant*, *gond*, *gué*, *glas*.

2. **G** sounds like *z* in *azure* before **e**, **i**, **y**.

Examples: *génie*, *gigot*, *gymnase*.

Both sounds are heard in **suggérer**, **suggestion**.

**47 Gn.** 1. **Gn** sounds much like *ni* in the English word *union*.

Examples: *digne*, *agneau*, *gagner*. In making this sound let the tongue touch the lower teeth.

2. There is a long list of exceptions. They are chiefly learned words. The **gn** sounds here as in the English *magnify*.

A few examples are chosen: *diagnostique*, *ignition*, *stagnant*, *stagnation*.

3. **G** is silent in **Regnard** (a comic poet) and **signet**.

4. Final **g** sounds in **joug**.

**48 H.** 1. The French distinguish between **h** mute and **h** aspirate (**h muette**, **h aspirée**).

2. Some Frenchmen pronounce the aspirate **h**, but it is generally silent.

3. The aspirate **h** prevents *elision* and *liaison*. See § 68.

4. For the words beginning with aspirate **h**, consult the Dictionary.

**49 J.** 1. **J** has always the same sound—that of *z* in *azure*.

Examples: *je, jour, jamais*.

**50 K.** **K** has always the sound of **k** in *kick*.

Example: *kilomètre*.

**51 L.** 1. **L** has two sounds, one as in *low* and the other like the *y* in *year*. This latter sound is called **l mouillée**.

2. **L** is silent in *fusil, chenil, cul, cul-de-sac, sourcil, outil, soûl, baril, pouls*.

3. **L** is silent in *gentil*, but sounds like *y* (**l mouillée**) when joined to the next word. See § 68.

4. **L** is silent in *fil*s, in names ending in *-auld, -ault*.

**52 L mouillée** has the sound of *y* in *yearn*.

1. The **l mouillée** is always preceded by *i*. It is oftenest expressed by *ill*, as in *bataille*.

2. The *il* has this sound in the terminations

*-ail, -eil, -eul, -ieil, -œil, -ouail, -ouil, -uail, -ueil*.

**A** before the **l mouillée** sounds like the **a** in *madame*, though sometimes like the **a** in *lâche*.

**Ue** in this position sounds like the open *eu*.

Examples: *ail, bail, corail, travail, conseil, soleil, sommeil, vieil fauteuil, seuil, accueil, orgueil, fenouil*.

3. The four words *avril, babyl, cil, and péril* are pronounced either with the normal sound of **l** or with the **l mouillée**. The former pronunciation tends to prevail.

4. *Il* beginning a word is never **mouillée**.

5. Preceded by a vowel, *ill* usually sounds as *y*.

Examples: *bataille, vieille, brouillard, grenouille*.

NOTE.—The syllables of *grenouille* are *gre-nou-ille*; the stress is upon *nou*.

6. **Ll** preceded by **i** usually has the sound of **l mouillée**.

Examples: *fille, artillerie, babiller, Bastille, billet, brillant, cédille, habiller, famille*.

Important exceptions to the above are the following, where the **l** has its normal sound:

*ville, Achille, billion, million, Lille, mille, osciller, pusillanime, village, tranquille, tranquillité*.

7. **Lh** has the sound of **l mouillée** in **gentilhomme** and in some proper names. In the plural, **gentilshommes**, the **l** is silent.

53 **M**. 1. **M** is pronounced as in English.

2. It is silent when it renders a preceding vowel nasal.

See § 32.

3. It is often pronounced when final. See § 39.

4. It is silent in **damner, condamner**, and their derivatives, and in the word **automne**.

54 **N**. 1. **N** is pronounced as in English.

2. It is silent when it renders a preceding vowel nasal.

See § 32.

But in words where **en** is a prefix, the **n** often nasalizes the preceding vowel and has its normal sound as well. See § 33.

Examples are *enivrer, enorgueillir*.

3. **N** is silent in **monsieur**.

4. **N** final is sounded in many words of foreign origin without rendering the vowel nasal.

Examples: *dolmen, spécimen*.

55 **P**. 1. **P** has the same sound as in English.

2. It is *not* silent in **psaume, psychologie, Ptolémée**, etc.

3. It is silent in **baptême, baptiser**, and others of the same family; in **compte** and its derivatives; in **temps, corps, exempt, exempter, prompt** and its derivatives; in **sculpter** and its derivatives; in **dompter** and its derivatives.

4. It is silent in **sept, septième, septièmement, dix-sept.** It is sounded in other words beginning with **sept.**

5. It is silent in all parts of the verb **rompre** and its compounds, when a consonant follows the **p.**

6. **Ph** sounds like **f.**

**56 Q.** 1. **Q** sounds as **k.**

2. Final **q** is pronounced.

But the **q** of **cinq** is silent before a consonant or aspirate **h** of a following word multiplied by it.

Examples: *cinq livres*, five books; *cinq hiboux*, five owls.

3. It is silent in the name **Cinq-Mars**, as is also the **s.**

**57 R.** 1. The sound of **r** is always a trill. It is made with the tip of the tongue, or with the uvula.

2. Final **r** is silent—

*a.* In all infinitives in **-er.**

*b.* In most polysyllabic nouns and adjectives in **-er.**

*c.* In **monsieur** and **messieurs.**

*d.* In **Alger, Tanger, Roger.**

*e.* In **volontiers.**

*f.* In all words in **-ier**, except **hier, avant-hier, fier** (adjective).

*g.* Important exceptions to *b* above are the following, wherein the **r** final is sounded: **amer, cancer, cuiller, enfer, éther, hiver, revolver, steamer, tender.**

NOTE.—In English, **r** after a vowel often changes the sound of the vowel, or adds a *vanish* to it. Nothing like this happens in French.

**58 S.** 1. **S** has two sounds, that in *sun* and that in *rose*.

2. It has the hissing sound at the beginning of a word or of part of a compound.

Examples: *sel, vraisemblable.*

It has this sound always when doubled.

Examples: *possession, tasse.*

3. **S** has the sound in *rose* when between vowels.

Examples: *rose, base, ils disent.*

*a.* Not, however, if the **s** begins part of a compound word, like *vraisemblable* (made of *vrai* + *semblable*).

4. **S**, if pronounced before or after a consonant, has the sound in *sun*.

Examples: *sarcasme, esprit, sceau, svelte, christianisme*.

5. **S**, if silent in a simple word, is silent before a consonant in the compound.

Examples: *mesdames, desquels*.

6. **S** is silent in a great many proper names where it stands before a consonant.

Example: *Du Guesclin*.

7. **S** sounds like **z** in

intransitif, transaction, transalpin, transatlantique, transiger, transigible, transit, transitif, transitoire, transition, Alsace, Alsacien.

8. Final **s** sounds in very many words, most of them borrowed from Greek, Latin, or other languages.

Examples: *atlas, biceps*.

Final **s** sounds in *bis, jadis, fils, mars, hélas, omnibus, ours, as, ès, laps, lis* (meaning a flower—the lily), *oasis, os* (in the singular), *sus, us, vis* (a screw).

9. *a.* In the word **gens** the **s** is sounded by some. The general usage seems to be to drop the **s** before a consonant, especially in set expressions like **gens de guerre, gens d'affaires, gens d'esprit**.

*b.* The **s** of **os** is generally heard in the singular and silent in the plural.

*c.* The final **s** of **sens** is usually sounded.

In **sens commun** it is silent, as it is also in **sens dessus dessous** (topsyturvy) and in **le bon sens**.

*d.* The **s** of **plus** is often sounded when terminating a phrase or sentence, or before the word **que** (than).

*e.* The **s** of **tous** is sounded when this word is a pronoun.

*f.* **S** is silent in **fleur-de-lis**.

59 T. 1. The normal sound of this letter is the same as that of the English *t* in *tell*. It is possibly more dental. (See § 44.)



2. **Th** is equal to **t**. (See § 59, 7.)

3. **T** often sounds like **s** in *see*.

*a.* The syllable **ti** sounds as though written **ci** in the combination **-tia**, in words in **-tiaux**, **-tiaire**, **-tiel**, **-tieux**, **-tio**, **-tion**, **-tium**, **-tius**, **-tien** (in proper names and adjectives), provided neither **s** nor **x** precedes the **t**; also in words in **-atie**, **-étie**, **-itie**, **-otie**, **-utie**, and in the words **ineptie**, **inertie**, **argutie**, **balbutier**, **différentier**, **initier**, **satiété**, **balbutiement**, **patient** and its derivatives.

Examples: *partial*, *partiel*, *portion*, *Latium*, *Egyptien*, *Titien*, *aristocratie*, *prophétie*.

*b.* Some exceptions are **chrétien** and its derivatives, **soutien**, **antienne**, **étioler**, and verbs where the ending **-tions** occurs.

In these words the **t** has its proper sound.

4. Final **t** sounds in many words.

Some important examples are *abject*, *abrupt*, *Christ* (not in *Jésus-Christ*), *chut*, *contact*, *correct*, *direct*, *dot*, *est* meaning *east*, *exact*, *fat*, *heurt*, *infect*, *intact*, *occiput*, *rapt*, *strict*, *tact*, *transept*, *ut*, *whist*, *net*.

(In all the above the consonant that precedes the final *t* is also pronounced.)

5. Usage varies in regard to the **t** of **but**, **distinct**, **fait** (the noun), **respect** (generally **ct** silent, and **c** joined before a vowel).

6. *a.* The **t** of **sept** and **huit** becomes silent before a consonant when they multiply the following word.

Examples: *sept livres*, *huit maisons*.

*b.* The **t** of **vingt** sounds in the numbers from 21 to 29 inclusive. The **t** of **quatre-vingt** is always silent.

7. Final **th** in **Goth**, **Ostrogoth**, **Visigoth** is silent.

60 **V.** Offers no difficulties.

61 **W.** 1. This letter generally sounds like **v**.

2. It sounds like **w** in many English proper names.

3. It sounds like **f** at the end of Russian names.



**62 X.** 1. This letter sounds like **ks** or **gz**.

2. It has one of these sounds even at the beginning of a word, usually that of **gz**.

Example: *Xavier* (sound *gz*).

3. **Ex** beginning a word and followed by a vowel sounds like **gz**.

Examples: *examen*, *exiler*.

Except *exécrable* and kindred words.

4. **X** equals **z** in *deuxième*, *dix-huit*, *dixième*, *dix-neuf*, *sixain*, *sixième*.

5. For final **x** in proper nouns consult dictionary, or a detailed work on pronunciation.

6. Final **x** in French words is usually silent.

7. The **x** of **six** and **dix** sounds like **s**.

It is silent before consonants when it multiplies the following word.

Examples: *six livres*, *dix maisons*.

**63 Z.** 1. **Z** sounds as in English.

Example: *zéro*.

2. Final **z** is usually silent.

3. Final **z** in proper names is sounded.

Examples: *Berlioz*, *Booz*.

In **ez** final in proper names and after a consonant it has the sound of **s**.

Examples: *Alvarez*, *Fritz*.

**64 Doubled consonants.**

*a.* In general, two like consonants together are pronounced as one.

Examples: *appeler*, *nettoyer*, *belle*, *essence*, *affaire*.

*b.* In elevated style a doubled consonant in certain words is often pronounced as two, or it is dwelt upon as in the English *home-made*, *wholly*, *hall-light*.

This is true of words beginning with *ill*, *imm*, as *illusion*, *immense*.

In general, this pronunciation of a doubled consonant is confined to rather rare and learned words, and is of secondary importance for the student.

## DIVISION OF WORDS INTO SYLLABLES

**65 a.** In pronouncing French words the syllables are made to begin with consonants and end with vowels as far as possible.

*b.* Therefore any single consonant is pronounced with the following vowel:

Examples: <i>di-vi-si-bi-li-té,</i>	<i>plai-re,</i>
<i>é-co-lier,</i>	<i>con-ti-nu-er,</i>
<i>li-ber-té,</i>	<i>trou-ver,</i>
<i>fro-ma-ge,</i>	<i>gé-né-reux,</i>
<i>Ca-na-da,</i>	<i>ma-tin.</i>

*c.* The division of **plai-re** and of **fro-ma-ge** for ordinary speech is merely theoretical. It applies in actual pronunciation only in singing and sometimes in declamation. But it is important to know that **plaire** is *never* pronounced like the English word **player**; there must be no vowel sound between the **ai** and the **r**. Again, the **ble** in the French word **table** does not sound as in the English word **table**. There must be no vowel sound between the **b** and **l**; the **e** *mute* may sound slightly *after* the **bl**.

*d.* **X** goes with the preceding vowel in dividing in print.

Examples: *ex-i-ler, ex-il.*

*e.* **Ch, ph, th, gn,** go with the following vowel.

Examples: *a-che-ter, a-pho-ne,*  
*a-thé-e, a-gneau.*

*f.* The groups consisting of **l** or **r** preceded by a consonant **gc** with the following vowel:

Examples: *dé-cla-ra-ti-on,*  
*é-prou-ver,*  
*ou-vri-er,*  
*ré-sou-dre,*  
*fa-ble.*

*g.* **Sph, str,** go with the following vowel:

Examples: *at-mo-sphère,*  
*in-strui-re.*

*h.* In printing, words are divided between doubled consonants, as *ap-pe-ler, bel-le*, but the first is not pronounced. See § 64.

In printing, again, **h** is sometimes made to begin a syllable, as in *bon-heur*; this word is composed of the two words, *bon* and *heur*. The division in pronunciation is *bo-nheur*, the **h** being silent.

i. Concerning the details of syllable division between vowels, it is best to consult a work on versification. The prose and poetry divisions do not always agree.

j. The **e mute** after a vowel, but not final, never constitutes a syllable.

Examples: *ai-maient,*                      *gaie-té,*  
                   *dé-voue-ment,*              *joue-ra.*

**66 Stress.** Here we have a fact of supreme importance in the acquisition of a pronunciation of French: **No syllable in a French word is pronounced very much more strongly than the others.** The syllables are pronounced very evenly, and the last (except it be **e mute**) is strong, but does not obscure the others.

The learner should be drilled in this even utterance, and continually cautioned against running over syllables or changing their sound as he speaks more rapidly.

**67 Quantity.** By quantity is meant the relative length of syllables. The distinction between long and short syllables exists in French, though less marked than in some languages. Long syllables are generally found only before a final **e mute** syllable.

a. A final vowel sound is short.

Examples: *fini, allons, grand, alla, matin, heureux, héros.*

b. Nasal vowels are long before a final **e mute** syllable.

Examples: *grande, prince, prompte, chance, grange.*

c. When the word ends in the sound of **r, z, j, v,** or the **l mouillée** (whether the **e mute** is written with it or not), the vowel preceding is long.

Examples: *vinrent, genre, gaze, cave, terre, juge, rose, bataille, rare, sérieuse,*

d. See § 6.

e. Before any final consonant sound **eu** and the close **o** are generally long.

Examples: *peur, meule, faute, fosse.*

f. Other vowels than the above are usually **short.**

Examples: *glace, madame, féroce, parole.*

**68 Liaison.** By *liaison* is meant the pronunciation of a final consonant usually silent, which is then joined to the initial vowel of the following word, as in *vous\_avez, ils\_ont\_eu, mon\_ami, le grand\_homme.*

This phenomenon is peculiar to French, and is of the greatest importance. Its full force and significance can be learned only by long experience in the language. The general principles are as follows :

1. *Liaison* occurs only **between words closely related**, and never occurs if a pause intervenes.

2. It is less frequent in familiar conversation than in reading, in serious, elevated diction, in declamation or in poetry.

3. There are, therefore, *liaisons* which are always made, and others which are made or not, at the choice of the speaker.

4. The consonants that are oftenest linked to the following word are **s** and **t**.

**B** and **m** are never so linked.

5. Change of sound in linking :

**d** sounds as **t** : *grand\_homme.*

**f** sounds as **v** : *neuf\_hommes.*

**g** sounds as **k** : *rang\_élevé.*

**s** sounds as **z** : *les\_enfants.*

**x** sounds as **z** : *je veux\_aller.*

6. Only the last consonant is linked.

In *des grands\_hommes* the **d** is silent. But see below under **T**.

7. There is no *liaison* before the aspirate **h**, or before **onze, onzième** : *les hiboux, les onze.*

8. **C.** The *liaison* of **c** is rare. The **c** of **respect** is joined.

**D.** An adjective in **-d** is joined to its noun :

*Un profond\_abîme.*

*Second\_étage.*

A noun in **-d** is generally not joined :

*Le nid a été enlevé.*

**D** after **r** is not joined, except between a verb and its pronoun :

*Un brouillard | épais.*

*Perd-il?*

**G.** The **g** of **long**, **rang**, **sang**, is generally linked to a closely related word :

*Un long\_hiver.*

**L.** In **gentil**, the **l** takes the sound of **l mouillée** in liaison, as in *un gentil\_enfant*. Otherwise a silent **l** remains silent.

**N.** The **n** of adjectives is joined to a following noun :

*En plein\_air, mon\_ami, le moyen\_âge, un\_arbre.*

The **n** of **on** is joined to its verb :

*On\_aime.*

The **n** of **en** is joined to a verb after it :

*Il en\_a.*

The **n** of the preposition **en** is joined :

*En\_Italie.*

The **n** of **non**, **bien**, **rien**, when closely related to the next word, is joined :

*Non\_venu, bien\_élevé, il n'a rien\_appris.*

The **n** of a *noun* is never joined.

**P.** **Beaucoup** and **trop** are sometimes joined.

**Q.** The **q** of **cinq** is joined.

**R.** The **r** of infinitives ending in **-er**, and of adjectives ending in **-er**, is joined in more elevated styles, sometimes also in ordinary conversation :

*Le premier\_homme.*

*Aimer\_à\_jouer.*

**S.** **S**, **x**, **z**, are usually joined to the next word.

**T.** a. This consonant is the most difficult to give an account of. Examples of liaison are given :

<i>Il avait</i> eu.	<i>Le fait</i> est certain.
<i>Ils sont</i> heureux.	<i>Maint</i> exploite.
<i>Causant</i> entre eux.	<i>Devant</i> un verbe.
<i>Il faut</i> y aller.	<i>De haut</i> en bas.
<i>Il vint</i> à deux heures.	<i>Accent</i> aigu.
<i>Un moment</i> après.	<i>Un excellent</i> artiste.
<i>Extrêmement</i> occupé.	<i>Cet</i> homme.
<i>Il est</i> heureux.	<i>C'est</i> un ami.
<i>Prêt</i> à tout.	<i>Il peut</i> aller.
<i>Petit</i> à petit.	<i>Point</i> interrogatif.
<i>Elle croit</i> en Dieu.	<i>Prompt</i> à parler.
<i>Tôt</i> ou tard.	<i>Tout</i> à l'heure.

b. **T** after **r** is usually not joined :

*Une mort* | affreuse.

But the **t** of verbs is always joined to its pronoun :

*Sert-il* ?

The adverb *fort* is joined :

*Fort* à plaindre.

c. In the word **respect** the **c** is linked, and not the **t**.

Example : *respect* humain.

9. Any final consonant regularly pronounced is joined to the next word if it begins with a vowel sound and the words are closely related.

This is a striking peculiarity of French as compared with English. Compare the two ways heard in English of pronouncing *not at all*. Some say *not* *at* *all*, others *not* | *at* | *all*. The French incline always to link words.

Examples :

<i>leur</i> ami,	<i>il</i> est,
<i>avec</i> un ami,	<i>style</i> animé,
<i>la robe</i> est faite,	<i>vieillard</i> aimable,
<i>la mer</i> était,	<i>le père</i> à eu,
<i>regard</i> insolent,	<i>lourd</i> à porter.

In the above examples, remember that **d** after **r** is silent.

**69 Elision.** 1. Before a word beginning with a vowel or **h** mute the **e** of the pronoun **ce**, of **de**, **je** (before its verb), **le**, **me**, **ne**, **que**, **se**, **te** is elided, and an apostrophe written to mark the omission :

*c'est, d'amis, j'ai, l'ami, m'aime, n'est pas, qu'a-t-il, s'accorde, t'aime.*

The **i** of **si** is elided only before **il** and **ils** : *s'il.*

The **a** of **la** is elided : *l'orange, l'aime.*

2. But the **e** mute is *always* elided in pronunciation (even when it is not in writing) when the next word begins with a vowel or silent **h** and there is any close relation between the words. The last consonant is then linked.

Examples: <i>votre oncle</i>	= <i>votroncle.</i>
<i>elle entend</i>	= <i>ellentend.</i>
<i>l'homme est bon</i>	= <i>l'homme<b>st</b> bon.</i>
<i>de bonne heure</i>	= <i>de boneure.</i>
<i>grande influence</i>	= <i>grandinfluence.</i>

3. Before **onze** and **onzième** there is no elision : *Le onze.*

## SPECIAL REMARKS ON FRENCH PRONUNCIATION

In learning the pronunciation of the French language, nothing can be substituted for constant and careful imitation. Students may, however, be greatly aided in this effort to imitate if they will strive to avoid *consciously* certain tendencies of utterance natural to them as speakers of English. Most learners unconsciously and instinctively substitute the nearest English sounds for the French sounds they are trying to produce, and especially do they fall back into the English manner of pronouncing a succession of syllables. With those students, therefore, who do not succeed in imitating the teacher, the following points should be dwelt upon :



## I

Most speakers of English pronounce *fare, fail, for, fool, pure, poor, pole*, as though they were words of two syllables, or as though the vowel were in each a diphthong. This sound occurring after the main vowel sound has been called a *vanish*.

The French vowels never have the vanish of the English vowels.

Mark the contrast between

dé and <i>day</i> ,	l'eau and <i>low</i> ,
père and <i>pear</i> ,	Rhône and <i>roan</i> ,
pour and <i>poor</i> ,	mort and <i>more</i> ,
frêle and <i>frail</i> ,	dire and <i>dear</i> . <i>deer</i>

## II

The French consonants are pronounced more firmly than those of the English language. This is to be noticed especially at the end of words. The word *grand* in English has one syllable. *Grande* in French has two. The *e* may be nearly silent, but the *d* sounds with force.

## III

The consonants are pronounced with the *following* vowels when possible, and *not* with the preceding ones.

Mark the contrast between the syllable division of the

<i>French</i>	and the	<i>English</i>
a-ni-mal,		<i>animal.</i>
di-vi-si-bi-li-té,		<i>divisibility.</i>
présent,		<i>present.</i>
in-fi-ni-tif,		<i>infinitive.</i>
A-mé-ri-que,		<i>America.</i>
cou-sin,		<i>cousin.</i>
pu-blic,		<i>public.</i>
pu-bli-ci-té,		<i>publicity.</i>
gé-o-gra-phie,		<i>geography.</i>
gé-né-ro-si-té,		<i>generosity.</i>

## IV

The strongest tendency of English-speaking students is to slur the unstressed French vowels. This is especially likely to happen at the *middle* one of a group of three syllables.

## Contrast

gé-né-ral	and	<i>general,</i>
car-di-nal	and	<i>cardinal,</i>
a-go-nie	and	<i>agony,</i>
é-pau-lette	and	<i>epaulette,</i>
en effet	and	<i>in effect,</i>
na-tu-rel	and	<i>natural,</i>
La-fa-yette	and	<i>Lafayette,</i>
re-la-tif	and	<i>relative.</i>

An excellent exercise is to pick out the vowels, sound them separately, and then pronounce the word. For example :

é, é, a : général.  
 a, a, è : Lafayette.  
 e, a, i : relatif.

## V

English-speaking students have an exceedingly strong tendency also to mispronounce the *e* before *r*. Constant reiteration is required to overcome it in such words as *verbe*, *adverbe*, *superlatif*, *perdu*.

## EXERCISES IN PRONUNCIATION

The words in the following exercises have been chosen with a view to drilling the student in the relation between the written and spoken forms of the French vowel. The lists comprise only words whose meaning is sufficiently apparent.

## I

*Exercise in syllable-division.*

réalité	protecteur	murmuré	Paul
paradis	honneur	humidité	Saül
absorbé	receveur	végétal	affectueux
succès	glorieux	aloï	minéral
curiosité	animal	répété	trésor
curieux	beauté	public	bouquet
Portugal	Paris	gaieté	regret
vanité	détail	naïf	liqueur
naturel	détaillé	Moïse	supérieur
criminel	décisif	Ivanhoé	Crusoé
adieu	désespéré	capital	manuel

## II

*Exercise on words containing the e mute.*

Russie	tannerie	Suède	théâtre	forteresse
Asie	Norvège	Afrique	Achille	Espagne
			(§ 52, 6)	
idée	fidèle	aide	Catherine	Autriche
idées	extrême	acte	Madeleine	Europe
joie	cruelle	famille	Marguerite	bataille
		(§ 52, 6)		
Italie	hommage	horrible	Suisse	superbe
folie	spectacle	noble	rôle	orchestre
				(§ 43, 2)
vue	juge	sûreté	robe	ligne
revue	république	religieux	reconnaître	signe
Turquie	omelette	religieuse	juste	table
Australie	refuge	Belgique	rose	règne
artillerie	Prusse	Amérique	peuple	remède
(§ 52, 6)				
menace	menu	énergie	catéchisme	degré
refus	ressemble	calme	méthode	queue

## III

*Exercise on words containing a nasal vowel.*

Anglais	demande	patient	comédien
Angleterre	danger	patiente	comédienne
Irlande	dangereux	patience	serein
France	justement	silence	sereine
Hollande	jugement	italien	saint
chance	tremblement	italienne	sainte
chancelier	strictement	Saint-Denis	instinct
ambigu	évident	singulier	satin
champagne	évidemment	masculin	melon
mangeoire	galement	féminin	long

## IV

*Nasal vowels continued.*

triomphe	ancien	cousin	parfum
triomphant	ancienne	cousine	parfumerie
triomphante	humble	ressemblance	examen
syntaxe	humilité	fin	examiné
sympathie	humiliation	fine	inquiet
peintre	ignorant	immense	iniquité
feint	ignorante	innocent	joint
camp	ignorance	automne	point
chant	intelligent	féminin	pointe
certain	inintelligent	féminine	Blanche.
certaine	combinaison	décemment	ennemi

## V

*The letter r. See § 57.*

rare	serve	paternel	affirme
rareté	herbe	terreur	conforme
départ	martyr	meurtre	source
arbitraire	ferveur	histoire	nature
art	ferme	genre	usurpe
perfection	vertu	descendre	port
service	déterminé	myrte	exporté

# A FIRST FRENCH BOOK

---

## LESSON I

1. The father, **le père**.      The mother, **la mère**.  
The son, **le fils** (§ 51, 4, and § 58, 8).      The daughter, **la fille** (§ 52, 6).  
The brother, **le frère**.      The sister, **la sœur** (§ 25, 4).  
The cousin, **le cousin**.      The cousin, **la cousine**.  
The fathers, **les pères**.  
The mothers, **les mères**.  
The brothers, **les frères**.  
The sisters, **les sœurs**.

The Definite Article is **le** before a singular masculine noun, **la** before a singular feminine noun, **les** before any plural noun. That is to say—

The *Definite Article* agrees with the noun in number and in gender.

2. The letter **s** is added to form the plural of most nouns.

NOTE.—As this **s** is silent, we distinguish *le père* from *les pères*, in listening, only by the sound of the article.

### MASCULINE

### FEMININE

3. The friend, **l'ami**.      The friend, **l'amie**.  
The uncle, **l'oncle**.      The aunt, **la tante**.  
The man, **l'homme**.      The hostess, **l'hôtesse**.

Both **le** and **la** are changed to **l'** before a vowel or silent **h**. Note that the apostrophe is not a sign

of separation in sound, but of union : l'ami is pronounced as though written lami.

4. The friends, les amis. The men, les hommes.

The s of the article les before a word beginning with a vowel sound, is pronounced with the sound of z and joined to the following word. See § 68.

5. A judge, un juge. A woman, une femme (§ 10, 9).  
An officer, un officier. A lady, une dame.  
(§ 11, 2).

The *Indefinite Article* agrees with its noun in gender.

See § 68, 8.

6. To have, **Avoir**

#### INDICATIVE PRESENT OF **Avoir**

I have, j'ai.	we have, nous avons.
thou hast, tu as.	you have, vous avez.
he has, il a.	they have, ils ont.

7. **Tu** does not correspond exactly to *thou*. It is used by the French in addressing very intimate friends, schoolmates, or young children. It is also used between members of the same family.

In poetry its use corresponds to the English use of *thou*.

Hence the translation of **tu as** is usually *you have*.

Exercise for pronunciation, translation, and dictation :

1. J'ai un père. 2. Avez-vous une mère? 3. Nous avons une mère. 4. Avez-vous une sœur? 5. J'ai une sœur et deux frères. 6. As-tu un oncle? 7. Oui, monsieur. 8. Avez-vous vu l'homme? 9. Nous avons vu l'homme. 10. Les amis ont une tante. 11. Les cousins ont une sœur. 12. L'hôtesse a un fils. 13. Les fils ont un ami. 14. La tante a une amie. 15. J'ai vu le frère.

## VOCABULARY

oui, monsieur, yes, sir.

deux, two.

et, and (§ 11, 5).

vu, seen.

## NOTES

7. In *monsieur*, the *n* and the *r* are silent.

13. The plural of *le fils* is *les fils*. When the singular ends in *s*, no *s* is added for the plural.

The sign *—* is used in this book to indicate the *liaison*. See § 68.

## LESSON II

- |                             |  |
|-----------------------------|--|
| 1. The earth is a globe,    | <i>La terre est un globe.</i>                  |
| The moon shines in the sky, | <i>La lune brille dans le ciel</i><br>(52, 6). |

All French nouns are either masculine or feminine.

*a.* Names of male beings are masculine; names of female beings are feminine.

*b.* The gender of French nouns whose English equivalents are neuter is learned chiefly by experience. Learn each noun with its article.

2. Present Indicative of *Avoir*, interrogatively:

ai-je? have I?

avons-nous? have we?

as-tu? hast thou?

avez-vous? have you?

a-t-il? has he?

ont-ils? have they?

3. When the pronoun subject is placed after the verb, a hyphen is placed between the verb and pronoun.

4. The *t* in *a-t-il* is called the euphonic *t*. It is used before *il*, *elle*, when the third person sing. of the verb ends in *a* or *e*.



5. Has he a brother? A-t-il un frère?  
 Has John a brother? Jean a-t-il un frère? (§ 10, 6.)  
 Have the boys understood the lesson? Les garçons ont-ils compris la leçon?

Note the form of interrogation. If the subject is a noun it begins the sentence, and the pronoun representing it appears after the verb.

## EXERCISE

1. La terre est une planète. La terre a la forme d'une sphère. La lune est le satellite de la terre. Le soleil et les planètes forment le système solaire.

2. Avez-vous une carte de France? Oui. Montrez-nous Paris. Paris est ici. Paris est la capitale de la France. La rivière qui traverse Paris est la Seine. Paris est donc situé sur la Seine.

3. J'ai ici une fleur. J'ai une rose. La rose est une fleur. Nommez-moi une autre fleur. La tulipe est une fleur. Louis a-t-il une rose? Oui, il a une rose et aussi un lis. Henriette a un bouquet.

4. Comprenez-vous la leçon? Oui, la leçon est facile. Joseph a-t-il aussi compris la leçon? Il dit que la leçon est très facile. Il a compris la leçon.

## VOCABULARY

autre, *other*.

aussi, *also*.

donc, *therefore*.

il dit que, *he says that*.

facile, *easy*.

le lis, *the lily* (§ 58, 8).

qui traverse, *which crosses*.

le soleil, *the sun*.

comprenez-vous? *do you understand?*

la carte, *the map*.

la fleur, *the flower*.

ici, *here*.

montrez-nous, *show us*.

nommez-moi, *name me, name for me*.

très, *very*.

## NOTES

1. **De, of,** becomes **d'** before a vowel sound. **Forment:** Remember that **ent** in the third plural of a verb is a mute syllable. See § 10, 3.

The **liaison** (linking) will be indicated hereafter for the first two sentences or groups of sentences only.

## LESSON III

- |                     |                         |
|---------------------|-------------------------|
| 1. Has she a knife? | A-t-elle un couteau?    |
| Where is your book? | Où est votre livre?     |
| It is on the table. | Il est sur la table.    |
| Where is the pen?   | Où est la plume?        |
| It is in the box.   | Elle est dans la boîte. |

*It* in the nominative case is translated by *il* when it stands for a masculine noun, and by *elle* when it stands for a feminine noun.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 2. Where are the books?                  | Où sont les livres?                      |
| They are on the chair.                   | Ils sont sur la chaise.                  |
| And the pens?                            | Et les plumes?                           |
| They are in the drawer.                  | Elles sont dans le tiroir.               |
| Have you seen the pens<br>and the paper? | Avez-vous vu les plumes et le<br>papier? |
| They are on the table.                   | Ils sont sur la table.                   |

*They* is translated by *ils*, if any one of the nouns it represents is masculine; by *elles*, if they are all feminine.

## 3. To be, Être

## PRESENT INDICATIVE OF Être

I am,	je suis.	we are,	nous sommes.
thou art,	tu es.	you are,	vous êtes.
he is,	il est.	they are,	ils sont.

NOTE.—Be careful about the difference in sound of *tu as* and *tu es*; of *il a* and *il est*; and especially of *ils ont* and *ils sont*. (§ 68, 5.)

## 4. Present Indicative of être, interrogatively

suis-je ?

sommes-nous ?

es-tu ?

êtes-vous ?

est-il ?

sont-ils ?

## EXERCISE

1. Venez ici. Où êtes-vous ? Je suis près de la fenêtre. Voyez-vous la tour Eiffel ? Elle est là. Je vois la tour maintenant. Elle est à peine visible.

2. Georges et Henri, où sont-ils ? Ils sont dans le jardin. Venez, Georges, venez, Henri. Le déjeuner est-il prêt ? Il est prêt. Henri, êtes-vous prêt ? Oui, monsieur, je suis prêt. Donnez-moi un couteau, s'il vous plaît.

3. Charles, où êtes-vous ? Je suis ici dans le jardin avec André. Avez-vous étudié votre leçon ? Non, monsieur. Venez donc ici. Écrivez votre leçon. Elle est très facile.

4. Avez-vous votre livre ? Non ? Où est-il ? Il est sur la chaise. Prenez votre plume et copiez les phrases dans votre cahier. Où sont les plumes ? Elles sont dans la boîte.

## VOCABULARY

venez, *come*.étudié, *studied*.donnez-moi, *give me*.la fenêtre, *the window*.voyez, *see*.la tour, *the tower*.écrivez, *write*.la phrase, *the sentence*.prenez, *take*.là, *there*.le déjeuner, *the breakfast*.près de, *near*.le cahier, *the copy-book* (*h* mute).maintenant, *now*.je vois, *I see*.à peine, *hardly*.le jardin, *the garden*.prêt, *ready*.s'il vous plaît, *if you please*.avec, *with*.

NOTE.—After *où* and one or two other interrogative adverbs, the subject-noun may follow the verb.

## LESSON IV

**EXERCISE FOR A REVIEW***Put into French*

1. Have you a sister? I have a sister and a brother.
2. Has the man a son? Yes, he has a son.
3. Have you seen the son? We have seen the son.
4. Have they a daughter? They have two daughters.
5. The sun shines in the sky. The sun is hardly visible.
6. Louise has a bouquet. She has a bouquet of roses.

The rose is a flower. Name me another flower. The tulip is a flower. The lily is a flower.

7. Have you understood the lesson? Yes, the lesson is easy. Has Louis also understood the lesson? Louis says that the lesson is very easy.

8. Paris is the capital of France. The Seine passes through Paris. Paris is situated on the Seine. The Seine is a river.

9. Where is your pen? It is here on the table. Has your brother a pen? Write the sentence. Copy the sentences in your copy-book.

10. Where is your knife? It is on the table.

11. Where are the pens? They are in the drawer.

12. Joseph, where are you? Do you see your brother? Come here. Take your pen. Write your lesson.

13. Are you ready? Yes, sir. Is breakfast ready? Breakfast is ready now, sir.

14. Do you see the moon? She is hardly visible. I see the moon now. Is the moon near the earth?

15. Are we near the Eiffel Tower? Have you seen the Eiffel Tower?

---

LESSON V

1. I have spoken of you,      j'ai parlé **de** vous.  
 We have written to John,   nous avons écrit **à** Jean.

The preposition **à** has a grave accent, **a** the verb has none. The two sound alike ; the accent merely serves to distinguish them in writing.

2. The first page of the    la première page du livre.  
     book,  
 The palace of the king,    le palais **du** roi.  
 The inhabitants of the    les habitants **du** pays (*h* mute).  
     country,                      See § 20, 3.

The preposition **de** blends with the article **le** into the form **du**. This contraction is *always* made.

3. He spoke of the men,      il a parlé **des** hommes.  
 He spoke of the women,    il a parlé **des** femmes.  
 In like manner **de les** contracts into **des**.

4. I have written to the    j'ai écrit **au** médecin.  
     doctor,

The preposition **à** blends with the article **le** into the form **au**.

5. He gave the meat to the    il a donné la viande **aux**  
     dogs,                            chiens.  
 He sent a present to the    il a envoyé un cadeau **aux**  
     ladies,                            dames.  
**A + les** contracts into **aux**.

6. Of the woman,                **de la** femme.  
 Of the man,                      **de l'**homme.  
 Of the emperor,                **de l'**empereur.

To the house,	à la maison.
To the queen,	à la reine.
To the empress,	à l'impératrice.

No contraction is made with *la*, or when the article is followed by a vowel sound.

7 There is one tree in the garden, *Il y a un arbre dans le jardin.*

There are two trees in the garden, *Il y a deux arbres dans le jardin (§ 68, 5).*

The real meaning of *il y a* is not *there is* or *there are*, but *it has there*. Therefore the *il* is always singular. This is called an impersonal verb. A verb in French that can have *il* only for its subject is called impersonal. In the above sentences *arbre* and *arbres* are the *objects*, not the *subjects* as in English.

8. Is there? *Y a-t-il?* Are there? *Y a-t-il?*

#### EXERCISE

1. Le maître a parlé aujourd'hui du soleil et des planètes. Il a dit que le soleil est le centre du système solaire. La terre tourne autour du soleil et la lune tourne autour de la terre. La lumière de la lune vient du soleil.

2. Il a parlé ensuite de la mer et des marées. Il a dit que l'attraction de la lune est la cause des marées. Le soleil exerce une influence sur les marées. Avez-vous compris la leçon d'aujourd'hui? Oui, madame. J'ai copié la leçon sur une page du cahier.

3. Voyez-vous le jardin? Il y a un pommier dans le jardin. Y a-t-il aussi un poirier? Oui, il y a un jeune poirier. Il est dans le coin près du mur. Venez dans le jardin. Parlez au jardinier. Voyez-vous le jardinier? Oui, monsieur. Il parle aux dames. Il parle des fleurs et des fruits.

4. Nous avons visité le palais du roi. Nous avons vu les appartements du roi et de la reine. Avez-vous aussi visité le jardin du palais? Oui, il y a une fontaine magnifique dans le jardin.

5. J'ai parlé aujourd'hui à l'ami du jardinier. Il est très intelligent. Il a donné un bouquet de roses à notre sœur. Elle a dit que la rose est la reine des fleurs.

VOCABULARY

aujourd'hui, <i>to-day</i> .	le pommier, <i>the apple-tree</i> .
le coin, <i>the corner</i> .	autour de (prep.), <i>around</i> .
ensuite (adv.), <i>next, afterward</i> .	il a dit que, <i>he said that</i> .
le mur, <i>the wall</i> .	jeune, <i>young</i> .
le maître, <i>the teacher, master</i> .	la lumière, <i>the light</i> .
notre, <i>our</i> .	la mer, <i>the sea</i> .
le poirier, <i>the pear-tree</i> .	la marée, <i>the tide</i> .
	il vient, <i>he comes</i> .

NOTES

3. **Il parle.** This is the pres. indicative. Translate here, *he is speaking*. Translate **a parlé** by *spoke, has spoken, or did speak*, according to the use of the English language in the particular case.

DRILL ON THE FORMS

1. Of the man,	to the man.
2. Of the men,	to the men.
3. Of the book,	of the physician.
4. Of the moon,	of the king.
5. To the lady,	to the girl.
6. To the women,	to the aunts.
7. To the houses,	to the friend.
8. To the friends,	to the inhabitants.

LESSON VI

1. The sky is blue.	Le ciel est bleu.
The sea is blue.	La mer est bleue.
The ox is strong.	Le bœuf est fort (see § 45, 3).
The oxen are strong.	Les bœufs sont forts (see § 45, 3).



The tree is high.	L'arbre est haut ( <i>h aspirée</i> ).
The house is high.	La maison est haute.
The trees are high.	Les arbres sont hauts.
The houses are high.	Les maisons sont hautes.

a. The adjective agrees with the noun it qualifies in gender and in number.

b. The feminine singular is usually formed by adding *e mute* to the masculine singular.

c. The plural of adjectives is usually formed by adding *s* to the singular.

<b>2.</b>	<b>Petit, small.</b>	<b>Grand, tall, large.</b>
	SING. PLURAL	SING. PLURAL
	Masc. petit petits	grand grands
	Fem. petite petites	grande grandes

For the ear the difference between the masculine and the feminine is often that the last consonant sound heard in the feminine is not heard in the masculine.

<b>3.</b> A rich man.	Un homme riche.
A rich woman.	Une femme riche.

If the masculine ends in *e mute*, the feminine form is identical with it.

<b>4.</b> The man's book.	Le livre de l'homme.
Mary's father.	Le père de Marie.
The king's son.	Le fils du roi.
The nation's honor.	L'honneur de la nation (§ 59, 3).

The possessive case of the English noun is rendered in French as above. The name of the possessor follows the name of the thing possessed.

5. He spoke to Lucy and Il a parlé à Lucie et à Henrietta.  
Henrietta. riette.

We saw the brother of Nous avons vu le frère de Lucie  
Lucy and Henrietta. et d'Henriette.

A and de are repeated before each noun they govern.

1. L'herbe est verte. Les feuilles des arbres sont vertes. Les Chinois sont jaunes. La race jaune habite l'Asie. Aujourd'hui la mer est bleue. Le ciel de l'Italie est toujours bleu.

2. Connaissez-vous la sœur de notre ami? Elle est très aimable et très intelligente. Elle vient ici assez souvent. Elle a un petit fils qui est aussi très intelligent. La mère est donc contente. La mère et le fils sont très aimables.

3. Marie est petite mais Louise est très grande. Le père de Marie et de Louise est riche. Il a une grande maison ici et une autre à la campagne. Les pères des autres filles sont pauvres. Les pauvres sont souvent contents, et les riches sont souvent tristes.

4. Aujourd'hui le maître a parlé des montagnes. Il y a une montagne très haute qui s'appelle le Mont Blanc. Le sommet du Mont Blanc est toujours couvert de neige. Les hautes montagnes sont souvent couvertes de neige. Les Alpes sont les principales montagnes de l'Europe. Elles sont très hautes.

## VOCABULARY

L'herbe, *the grass.*

vert, *green.*

connaissez-vous? *do you know?*

souvent, *often.*

content, *glad, happy.*

triste, *sad.*

pauvre, *poor.*

la feuille, *the leaf* (§ 52, 5).

toujours, *always.*

il s'appelle, *he is called, his name is.*

assez souvent, *quite often.*

mais, *but.*

la campagne, *the country*  
(§ 47, 1).

la neige, *the snow.*

## NOTES

3. *La campagne* is the country as distinguished from the city. *Le pays* is equivalent to *region, land, nation*.

4. The *c* in *blanc* is silent. What shows above that *Les Alpes* is a feminine noun?

---

## LESSON VII

## REVIEW EXERCISE

*Put into French*

1. Did your father speak of Louis? No.

2. Have you written to your father? Yes. We have also written to your cousin.

3. Copy the first lesson on the first page of your copy-book. The first lesson of the book is easy.

4. Did your teacher speak of the sun to-day? He spoke of the sun, moon, and tides. He said that the moon turns about the earth, that the earth turns about the sun. He said also that the sun is the center of the solar system.

5. Have you written to the doctor? Yes, he is coming to-day. Give the doctor a pen.

6. Louis sent a present to the lady. John spoke to the ladies. The ladies have sent a present to John.

7. Is there a pen in the drawer? There is a pen in the drawer. There are two pens in the drawer. Take a pen and copy your lesson.

8. Does the light of the moon come from the sun? Yes. The light of the planets comes from the sun.

9. There are two trees in the garden, an apple-tree and a pear-tree. The apple-tree is near the house. The leaves of the trees are yellow now.

10. The rose is the queen of the flowers. The gardener gave a bouquet of roses to the lady.

11. Is the sky blue? To-day the sky is blue and the sea is blue too.

12. Your house is very small. The garden is large. The houses are small.

13. Is the man rich? He is rich. Are the men rich? They are poor.

14. We have written to Louis and Charles. We have also written to Louis' cousins.

15. We have seen the king's palace. We visited the king's apartments.

16. Do you know M. Dubois? He is very intelligent. M. Dubois' brother is also very intelligent. The two brothers are very amiable.

17. The Alps are very high. The summits of the Alps are covered with snow. There is in the Alps one mountain which is very high. It is called Mont Blanc.

#### NOTE

16. Before a gentleman's name **M.** is the abbreviation for **Monsieur**. It is to be so read, and not as though it were an initial.

### LESSON VIII

#### 1. THE PAST INDEFINITE TENSE

I have spoken,	j'ai parlé.
thou hast spoken,	tu as parlé.
he has spoken,	il a parlé.
we have spoken,	nous avons parlé.
you have spoken,	vous avez parlé.
they have spoken,	ils ont parlé.
I have gone,	je suis allé.
thou hast gone,	tu es allé.
he has gone,	il est allé.
we have gone,	nous sommes allés.
you have gone,	vous êtes allés.
they have gone,	ils sont allés.

*a.* A verb signifying *to go* or *to come* forms its compound tenses with **être**, to be, and not with **avoir**.

Hence, to form the past indefinite of such verbs, use the present tense of **être** as the auxiliary.

*b.* In these verbs the past participle agrees in gender and in number with the subject.

*c.* The participle forms its feminine and its plural like an adjective.

*d.* Agreement with **vous**. The participle agrees with the *real meaning* of **vous**. To a lady we write, Êtes-vous revenue? To several ladies, Êtes-vous revenues?

## 2. The following verbs are conjugated with *être*:

Aller,	il est allé à Paris,	he went to Paris.
Partir,	elle est partie,	she has started, she has gone away, she has left.
Sortir,	nous sommes sortis,	we went out.
Monter,	je suis monté,	I went up.
Descendre,	ils sont descendus,	they came down, they went down.
Entrer,	êtes-vous entré?	did you go in?
	sont-elles entrées?	have they gone in?
Rentrer,	il est rentré,	{ he has come in again. { he has gone in again.

3. Partir, monter, descendre, entrer, are simple, everyday words. Avoid translating them by *depart*, instead of *go away*, *start off*, or *leave*; by *mount*, instead of *go up*; by *descend*, instead of *come down*, etc., unless, of course, the style demands the more dignified expression.

## EXERCISE

1. La bague de notre mère a disparu. Elle croit qu'un voleur est entré dans la maison pendant notre absence.

Ce matin nous sommes allés au parc. Nous sommes partis de bonne heure, et nous sommes rentrés à l'heure du dîner. La bonne est aussi sortie.

2. Les dames sont-elles sorties? Oui, Madame. Elles sont allées au concert, je crois. Et Gaston, où est-il? Il est descendu dans le jardin. Voyez-vous? Il est là derrière l'arbre.

3. Louis a retrouvé la bague de notre mère. Lorsqu'il est rentré, il est monté dans la petite chambre du second étage, et là dans un coin, il a vu la bague. Ma mère est très contente.

4. Où êtes-vous allés ce matin? Nous sommes allés au Louvre, nous avons vu la galerie de sculpture. Ensuite nous sommes allés à l'Hôtel de Ville, qui est près du Louvre. Nous avons trouvé l'Hôtel de Ville superbe. Après, nous sommes entrés dans un bon restaurant près de là, nous avons mangé quelque chose, et nous sommes rentrés assez tard.

## VOCABULARY

disparu, *disappeared*.  
il croit, *he believes*.  
un voleur, *a thief*.  
un étage, *a story, a floor*.  
ce matin, *this morning*.  
derrière, *behind*.  
pendant, *during*.  
bon, bonne, *good*.  
mangé, *eaten*.  
retrouvé, *found*.

la bague, *the ring*.  
une heure, *an hour* (h muette).  
de bonne heure, *early* (adv.).  
la bonne, *the maid, the servant*.  
quelque chose, *something*.  
après, *afterward*.  
tard, *late*.  
assez tard, *pretty late*.  
là, *there*.  
lorsque, *when*.

NOTES.—1. **Que** becomes **qu'** before a vowel sound; so **lorsque** becomes **lorsqu'**. *When* is translated by **lorsque** or by **quand**. **Quand** may be used interrogatively, but not **lorsque**. **Entrer** is regularly followed by **dans**. 3. **Trouver** is the word for the general idea *to find*; **retrouver** is to recover a lost article. 4. **Sculpture**. See § 55, 3.

## LESSON IX

1. The following verbs also form their compound tenses with *être* :

<b>Venir,</b>	elle est <b>venue,</b>	she came.
<b>Revenir,</b>	il est <b>revenu,</b>	he came back.
<b>Devenir,</b>	ils sont <b>devenus,</b>	they became.
<b>Rester,</b>	je suis <b>resté,</b>	I stayed, I remained.
<b>Tomber,</b>	elles sont <b>tombées,</b>	they fell.
<b>Arriver,</b>	nous sommes <b>arrivés,</b>	we arrived.
<b>Mourir,</b>	il est <b>mort,</b>	he died, <i>also</i> he is dead.
	elle est <b>morte,</b>	she died, <i>also</i> she is dead.

NOTE.—**Rester** means to *remain*, not to *rest*.

2. He came back a week ago, Il est revenu il y a une semaine.

They started off twenty minutes ago, Ils sont partis il y a vingt minutes.

Observe the translation of expressions with *ago*.

3. I have written a letter,	J'ai écrit une lettre.
I wrote a letter,	J'ai écrit une lettre.
When did he come back?	Quand est-il revenu?
He came back yesterday.	Il est revenu hier.

a. In French the tense formed with the Present Indicative of the auxiliary verb and the Past Participle is called the **Past Indefinite**.

b. The Past Indefinite is rendered in English by the Perfect Tense with *have*, or by the simple Past Tense.

c. Hence, to state either *what happened*, or *what has happened*, use the **Past Indefinite**.

## EXERCISE

1. Les amis du colonel sont arrivés ce matin. Il est très content. Ils sont partis de Paris hier soir. Ils ont



pris un train express. A Lyon ils sont montés dans un autre train. Ils ont trouvé notre voiture à la gare.

2. Notre pauvre tante est morte il y a une semaine. Nous avons reçu la mauvaise nouvelle ce matin de bonne heure. Notre mère est partie à l'instant. Nous sommes allés à la gare avec elle.

3. Où est Marie? Elle est restée dans la salle à manger, je crois.

4. Votre sœur est-elle revenue de Marseille? Oui, elle est arrivée il y a une heure. Elle est devenue une grande fille. Elle est très contente d'être ici. Nous aussi nous sommes contents, car Marie est très aimable.

5. Louis est-il sorti? Oui, il est sorti ce matin avec un ami qui est venu passer les vacances avec nous.

### VOCABULARY

le soir, *the evening*.

mauvais, mauvaise, *bad*.

car (conj.), *for*.

reçu, *received*.

pris, *taken*.

la voiture, *the carriage*.

la gare, *the railway station*.

la nouvelle, *the news*.

la salle à manger, *the dining-room*.

NOTES.—1. **De** means *from* as well as *of*.

**A Lyon.** *In, at, to*, are all expressed by **à** before the name of a town.

4. The adjective **content** requires **de** before the following infinitive.

5. Notice that **vacances** is plural in the meaning of *vacation*. It is a feminine noun.

### *Translate into French*

1. Where did Mary go? She went down into the dining-room. Where is your sister now? She went out two minutes ago.

2. Has your mother come down? No, Sir.

3. Where are the boys? They have gone into the house. The girls have stayed in the garden. They are there, behind the apple-tree.

4. The house fell. The tree fell. We fell.

Did you fall? Where did she fall? The men fell.

5. Has your aunt come back? When did she come back? She came back yesterday. She is in the garden, I think.

6. The doctor's friends have gone away. When did they go away? They went away two weeks ago. Where did they go? They went to Paris.

7. The colonel is dead. When did you get the news? We got the news two weeks ago. Where did he die?

8. We started from Paris this morning early. We took an express train. We got into another train at Lyons. We arrived at Lyons an hour ago. Where are we now?

9. Did you go to the park this morning? Yes, we started early; we stayed in the park an hour, and then we came home again. We went out early, you see, and we got back early. Your uncle has come during your absence.

## LESSON X

1. Money is the sinew of war. L'argent est le nerf de la guerre (§ 45, 3).

Time is precious. Le temps est précieux.

Hypocrisy is a homage that vice renders to virtue. L'hypocrisie est un hommage que le vice rend à la vertu.

He likes animals. Il aime les animaux.

Men are mortal. Les hommes sont mortels.

Flies buzz. Les mouches bourdonnent.

When a noun is taken in its general sense, it is accompanied in French by the definite article. The article so used is often called the **Generic Article**.

A noun is used in this way when its meaning has its widest application. When we say "*He likes dogs*," we mean dogs as such, not specifying any kind or class of dogs.

2. The verb **Porter**, to carry.

Infinitive present.	<b>Porter</b> , to carry.
Present participle.	<b>Portant</b> , carrying.
Past participle.	<b>Porté</b> , carried.

PRESENT INDICATIVE

je porte,	nous portons,
tu portes,	vous portez,
il porte.	ils portent.

a. A French verb is conjugated partly by changes of ending, partly by means of an auxiliary verb.

b. In **porter**, **port-** is the *stem*, or part that remains unchanged throughout, **-er** is therefore the termination or ending of the infinitive.

c. The present participle of all French verbs ends in **-ant**, just as the corresponding English participle ends in **-ing**.

d. **Porter** the infinitive, and **porté** the past participle, are pronounced alike.

e. When the first person singular of any tense ends in **-e**, the second always ends in **-es**, the third in **-e**. So we

have  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{-e,} \\ \text{-es,} \\ \text{-e,} \end{array} \right.$

f. The first person plural of all regular verbs ends in **-ons** (except in one tense to be learned later).

g. The second person plural of all regular verbs ends in **-ez** (same exception as in f).

h. The third person plural always ends in **-ent** or **-ont**.

### 3. IMPERATIVE MOOD, PRESENT TENSE

Second singular,	porte,	carry.
First plural,	portons,	let us carry,
Second plural,	portez,	carry.

### 4. Meaning of the present indicative.

The present indicative states either what is generally true, *ships carry freight*, or what is going on at the moment of speaking, *I am carrying a pail of water*.

*I carry, I do carry, I am carrying*, are all rendered in French by the one form, *je porte*.

### 5. Conjugate like porter :

<i>passer, to pass.</i>	<i>fermer, to shut.</i>
<i>marcher, to walk.</i>	<i>parler, to speak.</i>

### EXERCISE

1. La guerre est une chose terrible. J'aime la paix. Le colonel a dit que les hommes aiment la guerre. Il dit que l'histoire des nations prouve qu'ils aiment la guerre.

2. Le temps passe vite; il passe trop vite. Comment passez-vous le temps ici? Nous étudions. Nous étudions la botanique. Nous aimons les plantes et les fleurs. Jean aime l'étude. Il étudie toujours quelque chose. Il aime les langues. Maintenant il étudie le latin et le français.

3. Parlons des poissons. Les poissons vivent dans l'eau. Les autres animaux, qui vivent sur la terre, respirent l'air. L'air est nécessaire à la vie. L'eau est aussi nécessaire à la vie. Aimez-vous le poisson? Oui, mais j'aime mieux la viande.

4. Fermez la porte, il y a un courant d'air. Les courants d'air sont dangereux. J'ai fermé la porte et la fenêtre. Les mouches sont entrées par la fenêtre de la salle à manger.

5. Avez-vous étudié la leçon? Oui, elle est facile. Les verbes sont-ils difficiles? Les verbes français sont assez difficiles. Copiez les verbes dans votre cahier.

6. Le nom *eau* est féminin. *Air* est un nom masculin.

## VOCABULARY

aimer, <i>to love, to be fond of.</i>	la paix, <i>peace.</i>
vite, <i>quickly.</i>	une étude, <i>a study.</i>
trop, <i>too.</i>	une langue, <i>a tongue, a language.</i>
comment, <i>how.</i>	la vie, <i>life.</i>
toujours, <i>always.</i>	ils vivent, <i>they live.</i>
mieux (adv.), <i>better.</i>	la porte, <i>the door, the gate.</i>
difficile, <i>difficult.</i>	par, <i>through.</i>
étudier, <i>to study.</i>	respirer, <i>to breathe.</i>
le poisson, <i>the fish.</i>	l'eau, <i>the water.</i>
la chose, <i>the thing.</i>	

NOTE.—3. Notice that the adverb **mieux** is placed immediately after the verb. This is a general rule as to the place of the adverb.

## EXERCISE

1. He likes money. They are fond of money. They are too fond of money. I am fond of dogs.

2. Dinner is ready. Do you like fish? I like meat better.

3. Men breathe air. Air is necessary to life. Air and water are necessary to the life of animals. Men and animals are mortal.

4. Fish live in water. Do they breathe air? They breathe the air that is (*qui est*) in the water.

5. Let us carry the flowers into the house.

6. Have you studied history? Yes, sir. Do you like history? I like history.

7. The teacher said to-day that war is a terrible thing.

8. Are you studying French? We are studying French. The other boys are studying Latin. I like Latin; I am

fond of languages. John likes botany better. He likes plants and flowers. He came in an hour ago, and now he is in the garden. He is talking to the gardener.

9. The lady says there is a draft. Shut the window. She says that drafts are dangerous.

10. Have you studied the verbs in to-day's lesson? Yes, they are quite easy. We copy the verbs in a copy-book.

## LESSON XI

1. My book,	<b>mon</b> livre.	My pen,	<b>ma</b> plume.
My books,	<b>mes</b> livres.	My pens,	<b>mes</b> plumes.
Thy father,	<b>ton</b> père.	Thy mother,	<b>ta</b> mère.
Thy parents,	<b>tes</b> parents.	Thy sisters,	<b>tes</b> sœurs.
Our garden,	<b>notre</b> jardin.	Our house,	<b>notre</b> maison.
Our books,	<b>nos</b> livres.	Our lessons,	<b>nos</b> leçons.
Your friend,	<b>votre</b> ami.	Your aunt,	<b>votre</b> tante.
Your friends,	<b>vos</b> amis.	Your cousins,	<b>vos</b> cousines.

*a. My, thy, our, your,* in English are usually classed as pronouns. The corresponding French words are classed as Possessive Adjectives.

*b. The Possessive Adjective* agrees in gender and in number with the name of the thing possessed.

2. The Verb : **Finir**, *to finish*.

Inf. pres.	Finir,	to finish, to end.
Part. pres.	Finissant,	finishing.
Part. past,	Fini,	finished.

### INDICATIVE PRESENT

je finis,	nous finissons,
tu finis,	vous finissez,
il finit,	ils finissent.

## IMPERATIVE

finis,  
finissons,  
finissez.

*a.* Verbs that have the infinitive in **-er** are called verbs of the First Conjugation.

*b.* Verbs that have the infinitive in **-ir** are called verbs of the Second Conjugation.

NOTES.—*a.* **Fin-** is taken as the stem of the verb **finir**. *b.* The stem of the present participle of verbs like **finir** always adds **iss** to the verb-stem.

*c.* When the first person singular of any tense ends in **-s**, the second singular ends in **-s**, the third singular in **-t**. So we have

**-s,**  
**-s,**  
**-t.**

*d.* The plural of the present indicative is formed by changing **-ant** of the present participle into

**-ons,**  
**-ez,**  
**-ent.**

*e.* The imperative is formed from the present indicative by dropping the subjects.

3. I often finish my lessons    Je finis **souvent** mes leçons  
before you.    avant vous.

You always finish your    Vous finissez **toujours** votre  
work before us.    travail avant nous.

The adverb is usually placed *after* the verb, not before it, as in English.

4. The tree is in front of    L'arbre est **devant** la maison.  
the house.



**Avant** means *before* in point of time. It denotes priority, and corresponds to **après**, *after*.

**Devant**, *before* or *in front of*, relates to position. It corresponds to **derrière**, *behind*.

## 5. Conjugate like **finir**:

**punir**, *to punish*.

**chérir**, *to cherish*.

**choisir**, *to choose*.

**rougir**, *to blush*.

## EXERCISE

1. Les lions rugissent. Les bœufs mugissent. Les bœufs mangent de l'herbe. Les lions mangent quelquefois les bœufs.

2. Charles est sourd à mes conseils. Il est devenu très indépendant. Le maître a dit l'autre jour à ma mère qu'il est peu content de la conduite de Charles. Il punit bien rarement les élèves, mais il punit mon frère assez souvent.

3. J'étudie le latin, mon frère a choisi le français, et ma sœur l'allemand. Chacun étudie donc une langue différente.

4. Ta sœur a-t-elle pris mon livre de musique? Mais non, ton livre de musique est là près du piano. Il est tombé, probablement, lorsque Gustave a ouvert le piano.

5. Nous chérissons nos enfants.

Le maître a dit aujourd'hui aux élèves: Chérissez toujours vos parents.

6. Choisissez quelques-unes des pommes qui sont là. Elles sont mûres, je crois. Oui, elles sont très bonnes.

7. Vous rougissez. Pourquoi rougissez-vous? Louis rougit facilement. Il est très timide. Chaque fois que le maître adresse une question à Louis, il rougit.

Mais nous aimons beaucoup Louis.

## VOCABULARY

<i>rugir, to roar.</i>	<i>sourd, sourde, deaf.</i>
<i>mugir, to low, to bellow.</i>	<i>peu (before an adj.), not very.</i>
<i>chacun, each one, every one.</i>	<i>bien (before an adj. or an</i>
<i>chaque fois, each time, every</i>	<i>adv.), very.</i>
<i>time.</i>	<i>la musique, music.</i>
<i>quelquefois, sometimes.</i>	<i>la pomme, the apple.</i>
<i>quelqu'un, some one.</i>	<i>ouvert, ouverte, open, opened.</i>
<i>quelques-uns, quelques-unes,</i>	<i>mûr, mûre, ripe.</i>
<i>a few.</i>	<i>beaucoup, very, very much.</i>
<i>le conseil, the advice, counsel</i>	<i>timide, bashful.</i>
<i>(§ 52, 2).</i>	<i>pourquoi, why, what for.</i>
<i>le jour, the day.</i>	<i>un enfant, }</i>
<i>un élève, a pupil.</i>	<i>une enfant, }</i>
<i>l'allemand (masc.), German.</i>	<i>a child.</i>

NOTES.—2, 4, 7. Adverbs are formed from adjectives very commonly by adding **-ment**. This ending corresponds to the *ly* of English adverbs.

4. The use of **ton** corresponds to that of **tu**.

6. La pomme, <i>the apple.</i>	Le pommier, <i>the apple-tree.</i>
La poire, <i>the pear.</i>	Le poirier, <i>the pear-tree.</i>
La cerise, <i>the cherry.</i>	Le cerisier, <i>the cherry-tree.</i>

Observe the force of the ending **-ier** added to the name of a fruit.

**Mûr**, *ripe*, has a circumflex accent. **Le mur**, *the wall*, has none.

7. Notice the spelling of **adresser** and of **address**.

**Question.** Nouns in **-tion** are feminine. In this word the **t** has its normal sound, that in **tu**.

## DRILL ON VERB FORMS

- |                    |                    |
|--------------------|--------------------|
| 1. Finishing.      | 2. Let us choose.  |
| Choosing.          | We choose.         |
| Carrying.          | You choose.        |
| Speaking.          | Does he choose?    |
| 3. Chosen.         | 4. He is blushing. |
| Spoken.            | They are blushing. |
| Has he punished?   | Is he blushing?    |
| Have you punished? | Are they blushing? |

- |                     |                  |
|---------------------|------------------|
| 5. I study.         | 6. I choose.     |
| We study.           | Have you chosen? |
| Let us study.       | Choose.          |
| Study.              | Let us punish.   |
| 7. Do they' choose? | 8. He punishes.  |
| Do they punish?     | He is punishing. |
| They cherish.       | He does punish.  |
| We cherish.         | We do punish.    |

## LESSON XII

- |              |                    |                |                      |
|--------------|--------------------|----------------|----------------------|
| 1. His son,  | <b>son</b> fils.   | His daughter,  | <b>sa</b> fille.     |
| His sons,    | <b>ses</b> fils.   | His daughters, | <b>ses</b> filles.   |
| Her son,     | <b>son</b> fils.   | Her daughter,  | <b>sa</b> fille.     |
| Her sons,    | <b>ses</b> fils.   | Her daughters, | <b>ses</b> filles.   |
| Its fruit,   | <b>son</b> fruit.  | Its flower,    | <b>sa</b> fleur.     |
| Its fruits,  | <b>ses</b> fruits. | Its flowers,   | <b>ses</b> fleurs.   |
| Their nest,  | <b>leur</b> nid.   | Their niece,   | <b>leur</b> nièce.   |
| Their nests, | <b>leurs</b> nids. | Their nieces,  | <b>leurs</b> nièces. |

*a.* The French language has only one possessive adjective for the third person singular. Like those in the preceding lesson, it agrees with the name of the *thing possessed*, without regard to the gender of the **possessor**. Hence, the pupil must be on his guard against saying **sa livre** for "her book" or **son mère** for "his mother."

*b.* Observe that **leur** does not add an *e* for the feminine.

2. A friendship, Une amitié.  
 My friendship, **Mon** amitié.  
 Her friendship, **Son** amitié.

**Mon, ton, and son, and not ma, ta, sa,** are used before feminine nouns if a vowel sound follows them.

- His sister, is *sa sœur*.  
 But  
 His amiable sister, is **son** *aimable sœur*.

## EXERCISE

1. Aimez-vous les enfants? Une mère aime toujours ses enfants. Ma mère a toujours aimé son fils. Un bon fils aime et respecte sa mère. Respectons toujours nos parents. Honore ton père et ta mère. La pauvre Henriette a perdu ses deux parents, et il y a un an elle a perdu son frère.

2. Finissons nos leçons. Georges a-t-il fini sa leçon? Il a fini sa leçon de français, mais il étudie maintenant au piano. Il étudie avec sa sœur un joli morceau. Finissez vite, Georges, et venez avec nous.

3. Mon cahier et mes plumes sont sur la table dans ma chambre. Louis a laissé son cahier et ses livres dans le jardin. Venez, mes enfants, prenez vos livres et finissez vos exercices. Oh, j'ai fini mon exercice il y a longtemps.

4. Écrivez la phrase suivante :

Les hirondelles bâtissent leurs nids dans les cheminées des maisons.

Écrivez une autre phrase :

Les animaux nourrissent leurs petits.

Pourquoi mettez-vous les lettres *ent* à la fin du verbe *bâtissent*? Parce que la troisième personne du pluriel a la terminaison *ent* au présent de l'indicatif.

5. Connaissez-vous le proverbe : Tout est bien qui finit bien?

6. Récitez le verbe *porter* au présent de l'indicatif.

Récitez l'impératif de *chérir*.

Dites-moi le participe présent de *choisir*.

Traduisez la phrase en français. Traduisez la phrase en anglais.

NOTE.—1. **Parents.** This word means *relatives* as well as *parents*.  
2. *To practise*, is also *étudier*. 3. The *x* in *exercice* = *gz*.

## VOCABULARY

<b>un an</b> , <i>a year.</i>	<b>perdu</b> , <i>lost.</i>
<b>un morceau</b> , <i>a piece.</i>	<b>laisser</b> , <i>to leave.</i>
<b>suivant</b> , <i>following.</i>	<b>longtemps</b> , <i>long (adv.).</i>
<b>parce que</b> , <i>because.</i>	<b>une hirondelle</b> , <i>a swallow.</i>
<b>bien</b> , <i>well.</i>	<b>la fin</b> , <i>the end.</i>
<b>dites</b> , <i>tell (imperative).</i>	<b>troisième</b> , <i>third.</i>
<b>traduisez</b> , <i>translate (imperative).</i>	<b>traduit</b> , <i>translated (participle).</i>
<b>tout</b> , <i>everything, all.</i>	<b>bâtir</b> , <i>to build.</i>
<b>en anglais</b> , <i>into English.</i>	<b>nourrir</b> , <i>to feed, nourish.</i>
<b>mettez-vous</b> , <i>do you put?</i>	<b>le nid</b> , <i>the nest.</i>

## LESSON XIII

## REVIEW

*Translate into French*

1. Choose a flower. I choose the rose. Have you chosen a flower, Henriette? Now choose a fruit. I choose a cherry. Louis chooses a pear. The girls are choosing a flower, the boys are choosing a fruit.

2. Your brother arrived before us. Oh, yes, he started early this morning.

3. You sometimes finish your lessons before your brother. The teacher often punishes Louis. Does he often punish the other pupils?

4. Each time that I went to Paris I visited the Louvre.

5. I have finished each one of my lessons. Some of my lessons are very difficult.

6. There is a boy behind the apple-tree. There is a boy behind each tree.

7. Are the cherries ripe? I am very fond of cherries. Our large cherry-tree fell the other day.

8. My little boy, have you lost your pen? Have you eaten your apples? Where is your mother?

(Use the proper pronoun and possessive adjective in addressing the little boy.)

9. The lion roars, the ox lows.

10. Has the doctor come? Yes, he came long ago. Did you see the doctor, Louis? No, sir, he came during my absence.

11. Marie loves her father. Little girls love their father. Parents love their children. Animals love their little ones.

12. Antoinette is at the piano. She is practising a very pretty piece. She always practises an hour. To-day she has practised two hours.

13. Where does the swallow build its nest? Swallows build their nests in chimneys. A swallow is building its nest in our chimney.

14. Always respect your parents. Let us always honor our parents. Love your friends. Cherish your friends. Let us cherish her friendship. I cherish his friendship.

15. Yesterday they lost their books. To-day they have lost their copy-books. Children are terrible. Where has Louise left her copy-book?

16. She has lost her son. He has lost his pen. He has lost his pens. He has lost my friendship.

17. The flowers are falling. The flowers have fallen. Flowers perish quickly. The tree has lost its leaves.

NOTE.—Many English verbs in *-ish* come from the French language :

finir, <i>finish</i> .	périr, <i>perish</i> .	bannir, <i>banish</i> .
chérir, <i>cherish</i> .	fleurir, <i>flourish</i> .	fournir, <i>furnish</i>
		(meaning to supply).
punir, <i>punish</i> .	brandir, <i>brandish</i> .	polir, <i>polish</i> .

---

## LESSON XIV

1. Have you paper?                   Avez-vous du papier?  
 Do you want any paper?   Voulez-vous du papier?  
 I have some paper.           J'ai du papier.

*a.* Here the noun *paper* is not taken in the general sense. When an English noun is accompanied by *some* or *any*, or when its meaning would be unchanged by prefixing *some* or *any*, we have a noun in the Partitive Sense.

*b.* In French the noun in the Partitive Sense is preceded by the Partitive Article.

This article is identical in form with *de* + the Definite Article. So we have

Before a masculine singular noun beginning with a  
 consonant, . . . . . du.

Before a feminine singular noun beginning with a  
 consonant, . . . . . de la.

Before any singular noun beginning with a vowel  
 or silent *h*, . . . . . de l'.

Before any plural noun, . . . . . des.

Butter,           du beurre.

Meat,           de la viande.

Air,           de l'air.

Eggs,           des œufs (*f*s both silent).

2. Des may be considered a plural of *un* :

I have an egg.                   J'ai un œuf (*f* pronounced).

I have eggs.                   J'ai des œufs.

3. Give me an apple.           Donnez-moi une pomme.

Give me a few apples.       Donnez-moi quelques pommes.

If *some* is equivalent to *a few*, it is translated by the adjective *quelque* in the plural.



4. The verb **Rendre**, to give back.

Inf. pres.,	rendre,	to give back.
Part. pres.,	rendant,	giving back.
Past part.,	rendu,	given back.

## PRESENT INDICATIVE

je rends,	nous rendons,
tu rends,	vous rendez,
il rend,	ils rendent.

## IMPERATIVE

rends,  
rendons,  
rendez.

*a.* Verbs that have the infinitive in **-re** are called verbs of the third conjugation.

*b.* Notice that in the third singular **t** is not added when the stem ends in **d**. Most of the verbs of this conjugation have the stem in **d**. This **d**, when joined before a word beginning with a vowel, has the sound of **t**. See § 68.

*c.* **Rompre**, to break, adds the **t** in the third person :

je romps, tu romps, il rompt.

## 5. In like manner conjugate :

<b>vendre</b> , to sell.	<b>attendre</b> , to wait for, to expect.
<b>perdre</b> , to lose.	<b>entendre</b> , to hear.
<b>répondre</b> , to answer.	<b>interrompre</b> , to interrupt.

NOTE.—Be careful to sound the first **e** in **interrompre** as **è**.

6. Trees have branches and leaves. **Les arbres ont des branches et des feuilles.**

Fishes have fins. **Les poissons ont des nageoires**  
(§ 10, 6).

Kings are men like us. **Les rois sont des hommes**  
comme nous.

Note the generic and partitive nouns above.

7. The boy and girl are      Le garçon et la fille sont  
here.                              ici.

The article must be expressed with each noun, and *not* left to be understood, as it often is in English.

### EXERCISE

1. Les libraires vendent des livres et du papier à écrire ; nous vendons des journaux et pas autre chose.

Les bouchers vendent de la viande.

Le boulanger vend du pain.

2. Il y a des gens qui sont toujours contents ; ils sont rares.

Y a-t-il des roses dans votre jardin ? Mais oui, il y a des roses et des fleurs de toutes sortes.

3. Les hommes ont des mains et des pieds. Les chats et les chiens ont des pattes. Les oiseaux ont des ailes. Les arbres fruitiers sont des arbres qui portent des fruits.

4. Je vends du beurre, du lait, et des œufs. Mon frère est marchand de vins. Il vend du vin et des liqueurs françaises.

5. Répondez à ma question. Vous répondez mal. Jean répond très bien à toutes mes questions. Il a étudié sa leçon.

6. Nous répondons toujours à vos lettres. Avez-vous répondu à la carte postale de votre ami ? Mais oui, il y a bien longtemps. Maintenant j'attends une réponse.

7. Attendons votre frère. Où est-il ? Il est monté dans sa chambre. Mon frère interrompt toujours la leçon. Il a perdu quelque chose. Il perd toujours quelque chose. J'entends le pauvre garçon ; il descend maintenant.

8. J'ai fini ma leçon il n'y a pas longtemps.

## VOCABULARY

le libraire, <i>the bookseller.</i>	autre chose, <i>something else.</i>
papier à écrire, <i>writing-paper.</i>	pas autre chose, <i>nothing else.</i>
les journaux, <i>the newspapers.</i>	les gens, <i>people, folks.</i>
le pied, <i>the foot</i> (§ 11, 3).	la main, <i>the hand.</i>
le chat, <i>the cat.</i>	la patte, <i>the paw.</i>
un oiseau, <i>a bird.</i>	une aile, <i>a wing.</i>
le lait, <i>the milk.</i>	le pain, <i>the bread.</i>
le vin, <i>the wine.</i>	tout, toute, } <i>all.</i>
mal, <i>badly.</i>	tous, toutes, }

NOTES.—3. Notice that the plural **fruits** is used where the English often has the singular.

7. **Attendre**, to wait for. The preposition *for* is not expressed by a preposition in French after **attendre**.

To answer is **répondre à**; just as we say *reply to*.

## LESSON XV

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. I have your book and<br>you have mine.<br>John has his. | J'ai votre livre et vous avez<br>le mien.<br>Jean a le sien. |
|--|--|

As *mine, thine, his, hers, its, ours, yours, theirs*, stand instead of the thing possessed, they are possessive pronouns.

## 2. TABLE OF THE POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS

SING.	PLURAL.		SING.	PLURAL.	
M. le mien,	les miens,	} <i>mine.</i>	le nôtre,	les nôtres,	} <i>ours.</i>
F. la mienne,	les miennes,		la nôtre,	les nôtres,	
M. le tien,	les tiens,	} <i>thine.</i>	le vôtre,	les vôtres,	} <i>yours.</i>
F. la tienne,	les tiennes,		la vôtre,	les vôtres,	
M. le sien,	les siens,	} <i>his,</i> <i>hers,</i> <i>its.</i>	le leur,	les leurs,	} <i>theirs.</i>
F. la sienne,	les siennes,		la leur,	les leurs,	

3. The possessive pronoun agrees in gender and number with the noun it represents. [It agrees, therefore, with the name of the thing possessed.]

Note the difference between the adjective **notre** and the pronoun **le nôtre**. **Notre** and **votre** are pronounced with the open sound of **o**, **le nôtre** and **le vôtre** with the close sound of **o**.

- |                              |   |
|------------------------------|---|
| 4. This toy is very fragile. | <b>Ce</b> joujou est bien fragile.      |
| Who planted this tree?       | Qui a planté <b>cet</b> arbre?          |
| This house is not solid.     | <b>Cette</b> maison n'est pas solide.   |
| These toys are very fragile. | <b>Ces</b> joujoux sont bien fragiles.  |
| Who planted these trees?     | Qui a planté <b>ces</b> arbres?         |
| These houses are not solid.  | <b>Ces</b> maisons ne sont pas solides. |

#### THE DEMONSTRATIVE ADJECTIVE

- Ce** is used before a noun masculine singular beginning with a consonant.
- Cet** is used before a noun masculine singular beginning with a vowel or **h** mute.
- Cette** is used before a noun feminine singular.
- Ces** is used before a noun plural.

*This* and *that* are both rendered by **ce**, etc., when there is no special distinction between two objects.

- |                    |                                  |
|--------------------|----------------------------------|
| 5. I speak.        | Je parle.                        |
| I do not speak.    | Je <b>ne</b> parle <b>pas</b> .  |
| He is singing.     | Il chante.                       |
| He is not singing. | Il <b>ne</b> chante <b>pas</b> . |

*Not* is expressed by the word **ne** placed before the verb, and **pas** placed after it.

a. The true negative word is **ne**. **Pas** (meaning *step*) is a completing word, as when we say in English *he wouldn't go a step, he doesn't like it a bit, he doesn't care a straw*.

There are other words besides *pas* used to complete the negation in French, and there are cases where no completing word is necessary.

## EXERCISE

1. Donnez-moi ce cahier, s'il vous plaît. Comment! n'avez-vous pas le vôtre? Le mien est en haut, dans ma chambre. Alors, je refuse. Je ne donne pas mon cahier à un garçon paresseux. Allez chercher votre cahier.

2. Prêtez-moi votre plume, la mienne est mauvaise. Je gâte mes plumes très vite. Et alors vous prenez les plumes de vos amis. C'est très gentil!

3. Admirez-vous cette maison? Oui, et j'admire la vôtre, mais je n'aime pas la mienne. Pourquoi donc? Parce qu'elle n'est pas assez grande.

4. Avez-vous apporté vos livres? Oui, Mademoiselle, et les autres ont apporté les leurs, excepté Louis qui a perdu le sien. Puisque vous avez deux livres, François, prêtez un des vôtres à Louis. Merci, François.

5. Le maître a loué l'exercice de mon frère, mais il n'a pas parlé du mien. Le mien n'est pas très bon, je suppose.

6. Louise joue avec ses amies et Charlotte avec les siennes. Comment! n'ont-elles pas les mêmes amies? Oh, non, Charlotte est trop jeune pour jouer avec les amies de sa sœur.

## VOCABULARY

comment! <i>how, what's that.</i>	paresseux, <i>lazy.</i>
c'est, <i>that's.</i>	en haut, <i>up-stairs</i> (§ 68, 7).
chercher, <i>to look for, seek,</i>	gentil, <i>nice</i> (§ 51, 3).
<i>get.</i>	puisque, <i>since.</i>
prêter, <i>to lend.</i>	même, <i>same.</i>
gâter, <i>to spoil.</i>	merci, <i>thanks.</i>
apporter, <i>to bring.</i>	louer, <i>to praise.</i>
jouer, <i>to play.</i>	

NOTE.—6. Pour jouer. The infinitive used as explanatory of *trop* is preceded by *pour*.

## LESSON XVI

## REVIEW

1. Do you want any eggs? Give me one egg. Take some meat. Have you any bread? I have some bread, thank you. Give me some butter, if you please.

2. Men are animals. Apples are fruits. The apple is a fruit. The names of fruit-trees often have the ending *-ier*.

3. Do you want some water? Do you put water in your wine? Give your brother some wine.

4. Have you friends in Paris? I have a few friends in Paris.

5. Have you lost any money? My brother is always losing money.

6. John interrupted the teacher and the teacher punished John. Do not interrupt people.

7. Give me some writing-paper, if you please. Do you want anything else? That's all, thank you.

8. We are expecting friends. Haven't they come?

9. Is there a baker near here? We want some bread.

10. The bookseller sells books, newspapers, and writing-paper.

11. He answered all my questions. He always answers well, because he studies his lessons.

12. This dog is very intelligent. Mine is not intelligent. Is yours intelligent?

13. Give Mary your book; John has hers. The other girls have theirs.

14. These plants are very pretty. Does your gardener sell all these pretty plants? Yes, these plants are his. He does not sell ours.

15. Does your sister sing? Yes; her teacher says that she sings very well.

16. Do you know that man? Yes; he came back from Paris with my brother.



17. You have my copy-book. Where is mine? You left yours upstairs.

18. I do not admire these houses; I like the others better. Do you like your aunt's house? Yes, I like hers. From her windows she sees the park. She sees trees, grass, and flowers.

---

## LESSON XVII

- |                        |                      |
|------------------------|----------------------|
| 1. Whose book is that? | A qui est ce livre?  |
| It is mine.            | Il est à moi.        |
| Who is there?          | Qui est là?          |
| It is your brother.    | C'est votre frère.   |
| Who are those men?     | Qui sont ces hommes? |
| They are our friends.  | Ce sont nos amis.    |

*a. Ce* is also a pronoun. It is oftenest found as the subject of the verb *être*.

*b. He is, she is, it is*, are translated by *c'est* before a determinate noun in the singular, or before a singular pronoun.

*c. They are, it is*, are translated by *ce sont* before a determinate noun in the plural, or before a plural pronoun in the third person.

By a determinate noun is meant one determined by an article, a demonstrative adjective, or a possessive adjective.

2. He is a soldier. Il est soldat.  
It is the soldier who was wounded. C'est le soldat qui a été blessé.

*Il est soldat* answers the question, *What is his calling?* or *To what class of men does he belong?* In French a predicate noun used like an adjective has no article.

*C'est un soldat* answers the question, *Who is it?* or *Who is he?*



3. Is it my pencil that you have there? Est-ce mon crayon que vous avez là?  
It is John's. C'est celui de Jean.

Here *John's* is used to mean *John's pencil*. We might in French say, *c'est le crayon de Jean*, but we avoid repeating the noun by using the demonstrative pronoun **celui**.

4. TABLE OF THE DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUN **celui**.

Masc. Sing.	<b>celui</b> ,	Masc. Plur.	<b>ceux</b> ,
Fem. Sing.	<b>celle</b> ,	Fem. Plur.	<b>celles</b> .

5. Have you a pen? Avez-vous une plume?  
The one I have is bad. Celle que j'ai est mauvaise.  
Take Frank's. Prenez celle de François.  
Take those which are on the table. Prenez celles qui sont sur la table.  
Those who are absent have missed the lesson. Ceux qui sont absents ont manqué la leçon.

Like all pronouns, **celui** agrees in gender and in number with the noun it stands for.

NOTE.—Be careful to pronounce *ce-lui*, not *cèllui*.

EXERCISE

1. Ce monsieur qui est là près de la fenêtre, c'est Monsieur votre oncle, n'est-ce pas? Non, Monsieur, ce n'est pas lui, il ne ressemble même pas à mon oncle. C'est quelqu'un que je ne connais pas. Mon oncle n'est pas ici en ce moment.

2. Avez-vous lu le journal de ce matin? Non, qu'y a-t-il? Il y a des nouvelles bien tristes. Un grand nombre de nos soldats ont été blessés. Il y a aussi une liste de ceux qui sont morts.

3. A qui appartient cette maison? Je ne sais pas. Celle qui est à côté et celle qui est en face appartiennent

nent à M. Laurent. Je crois que c'est lui qui est le propriétaire de toutes ces maisons.

4. Est-ce Louis qui a laissé ces livres ici? C'est très probable. Il oublie toujours ses livres. Oui, ce sont les livres de Louis, et ceux qui sont là-bas sur la chaise sont à Charles. Le maître punit souvent ces garçons parce qu'ils oublient leurs livres. C'est comme ça qu'ils manquent leurs leçons.

5. J'invite tous ceux qui sont présents. Acceptez-vous, mes amis? Certainement nous acceptons. Avec plaisir.

6. C'est pour votre frère que vous avez gardé ces fruits, n'est-ce pas? Non, ce n'est pas pour lui spécialement.

7. Votre frère où est-il? Il est à Paris, il est avocat.

8. M. Dubois est arrivé par le train de ce matin, et les autres par celui qui arrive à midi. Celui qui arrive à midi est le rapide.

9. Ceux des corps célestes qui tournent autour du soleil sont des planètes. Les autres, qui sont à des distances incalculables du soleil, sont des étoiles fixes.

## VOCABULARY

le monsieur, <i>the gentleman.</i>	c'est comme ça, <i>that's the</i>
lu, <i>read.</i>	<i>way.</i>
je sais, <i>I know.</i>	même (adv.), <i>even.</i>
oublier, <i>to forget.</i>	été, <i>been.</i>
là-bas, <i>yonder, over there.</i>	à côté, <i>alongside, at the side.</i>
garder, <i>to keep.</i>	en face, <i>opposite.</i>
par, <i>by.</i>	pour, <i>for.</i>
le rapide, <i>the through ex-</i>	un avocat, <i>a lawyer.</i>
<i>press.</i>	midi (m.), <i>noon.</i>
comme ça, <i>like that, that</i>	le corps, <i>the body.</i>
<i>way.</i>	une étoile, <i>a star.</i>
il appartient, <i>he belongs.</i>	

NOTES.—1. N'est-ce pas, added to a statement, gives a belief or opinion in the form of a question.

You have written the letter, Vous avez écrit la lettre, **n'est-ce**  
*haven't you?* **pas?**

They have written the letter, Ils ont écrit la lettre, **n'est-ce pas?**  
*haven't they?*

It is he. C'est lui.

**Il** is used for *he* only when subject of a verb.

Your father.	<b>Monsieur</b> votre père.
Your aunt.	<b>Madame</b> votre tante.
Your niece.	<b>Mademoiselle</b> votre nièce.

These forms are used for the sake of special politeness.

1, 3. **Je sais** (from **savoir**). **Je connais** (from **connaître**).

**Savoir** means to know *facts, things learned*.

**Connaître** means to know persons, places, things seen or heard, to be acquainted with.

**Ressembler** is followed by **à** before a noun object.

### PRESENT INDICATIVE OF **savoir**

Je sais, tu sais, il sait, nous savons, vous savez,  
 ils savent.

3. **Appartient** is third person singular; **Appartiennent**, third person plural.

## LESSON XVIII

### REVIEW

*Translate into French*

1. Whose house is that? It is M. Dubois'. It is ours. It is my uncle's. Whose houses are these? They are M. Dupont's.

2. Who is that man? He is a soldier. Who are those men? They are soldiers. They are the colonel's men. Is that gentleman a lawyer? No, he is a physician.

3. To whom do these flowers belong? I think they are Louise's. No, they are my sister's.

4. Take this pen; the one you have is poor (*mauvaise*). Those which are in the box yonder are excellent.

5. Do you like these trees? Yes, but I prefer those which are in M. Dupont's garden. His are very tall. The

grass here is very green, but our flowers are not pretty. His are magnificent.

6. That lady is your mother's friend, isn't she? No, I do not know that lady. She looks like Mme. Dupont, but it is not she.

7. A little bird fell out of that tree this morning. It fell from the one which is over there near the wall. Poor little bird! I love birds. I love those that sing. All birds sing, don't they? Why, no.

NOTE.—*Out of or from after tomber is de.*

*Why, no, is mais non. Why not? is pourquoi pas?*

8. Haven't you forgotten something? You have forgotten your pencil. Take mine, or take the one which is there in the box. Whose pencil is this? It is my brother's, I think.

9. Who planted these roses? The gardener planted those which are here, and my sister planted those which are opposite. My sister's are very pretty, aren't they?

10. Do you know why he did not come to-day? I think he missed the train.

11. Do you know that gentleman? Yes; he is the owner of all these houses. He is very rich. Does your brother know the gentleman? Does he know that he is here?

12. Do you know why you do not know your lessons? It is because you do not study.

13. Do you know those two brothers? I know the one that lives in Paris; I do not know the other.

## LESSON XIX

### 1. INDICATIVE IMPERFECT OF *avoir*

j'avais,	I had.	nous avions,	we had.
tu avais,	thou hadst.	vous aviez,	you had.
il avait,	he had.	ils avaient,	they had.

## 2. INDICATIVE IMPERFECT OF être

j'étais,	I was.	nous étions,	we were.
tu étais,	thou wast.	vous étiez,	you were.
il était,	he was.	ils étaient,	they were.

## 3. INTERROGATIVE

avais-je?	had I?	étais-je?	was I?
-----------	--------	-----------	--------

4. There was, il y avait.      There was not, il n'y avait pas.  
 Was there? y avait-il?      Was there not? n'y avait-il pas?

## 5. THE INDICATIVE PLUPERFECT

## Finir

j'avais fini, I had finished.  
 tu avais fini,  
 il avait fini,  
 nous avions fini,  
 vous aviez fini,  
 ils avaient fini.

## Venir

j'étais venu,  
 tu étais venu,  
 il était venu,  
 nous étions venus,  
 vous étiez venus,  
 ils étaient venus.

## Avoir

j'avais eu, I had had.  
 tu avais eu, etc.

## Être

j'avais été, I had been.  
 tu avais été, etc.

The Pluperfect tense of a French verb is formed by combining the Imperfect of the auxiliary with the Past Participle of the verb.

6. I have not.      Je n'ai pas.  
 I have not at all.      { Je n'ai pas du tout.  
    { Je n'ai point.  
 Have you ever been in Paris?      Avez-vous jamais été à Paris?  
 He never reflects.      Il ne réfléchit jamais.  
 He does not work much. }  
 He hardly works at all. } Il ne travaille guère (§ 52, 5).  
 Point marks a stronger negative than pas.

7. My brother and sister    **Mon** frère et **ma** sœur étaient  
were with us.                    avec nous.

Take away those books    Enlevez **ces** livres et **ces** pa-  
and papers.                    piers.

Note the repetition of determining adjectives.

8. Take away that book and    Enlevez ce livre-**là** et laissez  
leave this.                    celui-**ci**.

This pen is good, that one    Cette plume-**ci** est bonne,  
is bad.                    celle-**là** est mauvaise.

The distinction between *this* and *that* is obtained by adding **-ci** to the noun or demonstrative pronoun for the nearer object, **-là** for the more remote.

#### EXERCISE

1. Dans la mythologie grecque les Naïades étaient les nymphes des fontaines. Avez-vous étudié la mythologie? Oui, il y a longtemps de cela, quand j'étais jeune. Cette étude était-elle intéressante? Mais oui, j'aimais assez la mythologie. Il y avait des histoires de dieux, de demi-dieux, de héros, de satyrs, de nymphes, que sais-je? Jupiter était le roi des dieux. Junon était son épouse. Puis il y avait Vénus qui était la déesse de la beauté, et Minerve qui était celle de la sagesse. Apollon était le dieu du soleil, et Diane était la déesse de la lune.

2. J'ai vu Louis hier, il avait un mauvais rhume. Il était sorti sans pardessus par le grand froid que nous avons eu il y a quelques jours. Il a toujours été très im-prudent.

3. Lorsque j'ai vu Joséphine elle n'avait point encore écrit sa lettre. Elle n'aime pas du tout à écrire.

4. Lorsque nous étions à la campagne nous avions un joli bateau. J'aime beaucoup les promenades en bateau. A présent je n'ai jamais l'occasion d'aller à la campagne. Je ne quitte jamais la ville, je suis trop occupé.

5. Lorsque le maître est arrivé nous étions assis à nos



places. Chacun avait son livre ouvert devant lui. Le maître a dit aux élèves de fermer leurs livres. Puis il a commencé la leçon de géographie. Le sujet de la leçon était le climat des différentes zones.

## VOCABULARY

cela (pron.), <i>that</i> .	assis, <i>assise, seated</i> .
de cela, <i>since then</i> .	une épouse, <i>a spouse, a wife</i> .
puis, <i>then, furthermore</i> .	la sagesse, <i>wisdom</i> .
le froid, <i>the cold</i> (temperature).	la place, <i>the place</i> .
le rhume, <i>the cold</i> (illness).	en, <i>in</i> .
le pardessus, <i>the overcoat</i> .	une occasion, <i>an opportunity</i> .
quitter, <i>to leave</i> .	lorsque, <i>when</i> .
	encore, <i>yet</i> .

NOTES.—1. Adjectives of nationality are not written with capitals: *The French language, la langue française*. The *h* of *héros* is aspirate: le héros. But we say *l'héroïne, l'héroïsme, l'héroïque défense*. **Que sais-je?** an idiomatic phrase, "I don't know what all." **Épouse** is a dignified term. The ordinary word for *wife* is **femme**. 2. **Par**. Used here idiomatically: **Par** cette chaleur, *in this heat*; **par** une nuit très froide, *on a very cold night*. 3. Notice that **aimer** governs a following infinitive by means of the preposition **à**. 5. **Dire** requires **de** before the infinitive it governs.

*Translate into French*

1. I had, he had, had he?
2. Was I? was he? he was not.
3. I had had, I had come.
4. They are. They have gone away.
5. He has not, he has never had, we are not, we were not.
6. We had not been. We had not reflected. Have you finished? Haven't you finished?
7. Did they go out in this boat? Yes; they are very fond of boat-riding.
8. Are your brother and sister here? No, they are not here.



9. Give me those pens and pencils, if you please. Do you want these pencils or those? Give me those. Thanks.

10. This overcoat is mine; that is yours. Take away those overcoats; leave these.

11. The god Apollo was one of the gods of Greek mythology. He was the god of beauty, and also the god of the sun. Juno was the queen of the gods, the consort of Jupiter. Minerva was the goddess of wisdom. I like mythology. The stories of the gods and heroes are very interesting.

12. Louis has a cold. Yes, I know. He had a cold yesterday. He went out without an overcoat.

13. The pupils were seated. The teacher told each one to study his lessons. We had our books open before us.

14. Was your uncle here when you arrived? No; he had left. My sister says he has gone to Paris.

15. Was there any one in the dining-room? Yes; there was Louis and one of his friends.

16. He is not very prudent. He is not at all prudent.

---

## LESSON XX

1. Gold is a metal.	L'or est un métal.
Nearly all the metals are useful in the arts.	Presque tous les <b>métaux</b> sont utiles dans les arts.
He is your rival.	Il est votre rival.
They are rivals.	Ils sont <b>rivaux</b> .
A mineral product.	Un produit minéral.
Mineral products.	Des produits <b>minéraux</b> .

Most nouns and masculine adjectives in *-al* form the plural by changing *al* into *aux*.

Note above the irregular masculine plural *tous*.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 2. He lost his right arm.                  | Il a perdu le bras droit.                        |
| Raise your arms.                           | Levez les bras.                                  |
| The wall is low.                           | Le mur est bas.                                  |
| The walls are low.                         | Les murs sont bas.                               |
| She had a beautiful voice.                 | Elle avait une belle voix.                       |
| A duet is a piece of music for two voices. | Un duo est un morceau de musique pour deux voix. |

Nouns and masculine adjectives in -s, -x, -z, remain unchanged in the plural.

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 3. We visited the château of Chambord.      | Nous avons visité le château de Chambord.      |
| The Rhine is famous for its ruined castles. | Le Rhin est fameux par ses châteaux en ruines. |
| Do you like that game?                      | Aimez-vous ce jeu?                             |
| I don't care for games.                     | Je n'aime pas les jeux.                        |

Nouns in -au and in -eu add x to form the plural.

- |                               |                          |
|-------------------------------|--------------------------|
| 4. That picture is beautiful. | Ce tableau est beau.     |
| Those pictures are beautiful. | Ces tableaux sont beaux. |

Adjectives in -au form the masculine plural by adding x.

PLURAL.

- |               |             |                                  |
|---------------|-------------|----------------------------------|
| 5. The jewel, | le bijou,   | les bijoux.                      |
| The pebble,   | le caillou, | les cailloux.                    |
| The cabbage,  | le chou,    | les choux.                       |
| The knee,     | le genou,   | les genoux.                      |
| The owl,      | le hibou,   | les hiboux ( <i>h aspirée</i> ). |
| The toy,      | le joujou,  | les joujoux.                     |
| The louse,    | le pou,     | les poux.                        |

Note these seven nouns.

- |                                       |                                      |
|---------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| 6. The eye is a wonderful instrument. | L'œil est un instrument merveilleux. |
| The ox has beautiful eyes.            | Le bœuf a de beaux yeux.             |
| He doesn't like work.                 | Il n'aime pas le travail.            |

The works are already begun.	Les <b>travaux</b> sont déjà commencés.
The sky is blue.	Le ciel est bleu.
The heavens were studded with stars.	Les <b>cieux</b> étaient semés d'étoiles.

Note these irregular plurals.

7. Have you my hat?	Avez-vous mon chapeau? or <b>Est-ce</b> que vous avez mon chapeau?
Are they happy?	Sont-ils heureux? or <b>Est-ce</b> qu'ils sont heureux?

By prefixing *est-ce* que any statement may be turned into a question.

### EXERCISE

1. Décrivez-nous les images qui sont dans votre livre. Toutes ces images représentent des animaux. Parmi les oiseaux de proie il y a des aigles, des vautours, des hiboux. Les yeux du hibou sont bien gros. Est-ce que ce petit oiseau-là n'est pas un oiseau-mouche? Quelqu'un a dit que les oiseaux-mouches sont les bijoux de la nature. Ils sont très beaux, leurs plumes brillent au soleil comme des bijoux. Voyez ce chameau. Les chameaux sont utiles aux hommes qui habitent les pays chauds, et qui traversent le désert. Cet animal-là est un taureau. Les taureaux sauvages sont dangereux.

2. Louis a les yeux noirs et sa sœur a les yeux bleus. Lorsque j'étais enfant j'avais les cheveux blonds; aujourd'hui ils sont bruns.

3. Nos soldats ont été victorieux, ils ont gagné la bataille. Nos troupes victorieuses sont entrées hier dans la ville, acclamées par une foule énorme.

4. Louis, apportez-moi mon chapeau, voulez-vous? Où sont donc nos chapeaux? Je ne sais pas. Est-ce qu'ils ne

sont pas sur la table? Non. Regardez sous la table. Ils sont tombés, peut-être.

5. Il y a trois règnes dans la nature, le règne animal, le règne végétal, le règne minéral. L'étude des minéraux s'appelle la minéralogie, n'est-ce pas? Et comment appelez-vous la science des métaux? Elle s'appelle la métallurgie.

6. Levez la main droite. Levez la main gauche. Levez le bras droit. Levez les deux bras.

7. Ces messieurs ont fondé plusieurs hôpitaux et une grande bibliothèque. Ils sont très généreux.

### VOCABULARY

décrire, *to describe.*

parmi, *among.*

sous, *under.*

un aigle, *an eagle.*

un vautour, *a vulture.*

le chameau, *the camel.*

le taureau, *the bull.*

gauche (adj.), *left.*

fonder, *to found.*

noir, noire, *black..*

une image, *a picture.*

un oiseau-mouche, *a humming-bird.*

la proie, *the prey.*

peut-être, *perhaps, maybe.*

gros, grosse, *big.*

chaud, chaude, *warm.*

sauvage, *wild.*

brun, brune, *brown.*

la foule, *the crowd.*

la bibliothèque, *the library*  
(§ 59, 2).

plusieurs, *several.*

regarder, *to look.*

NOTES.—1. *-là* is added to a noun preceded by *ce, cet, cette, ces*, to distinguish it emphatically. 2. Note carefully the idiom here. *Cheveu*, *hair*, when singular means a single hair. In speaking of a person's hair use the plural. 6. Notice the article where the English has a possessive. The article is often so used when there is no ambiguity, especially in speaking of parts of the body. 7. Notice the plural of *monsieur*.

---

## LESSON XXI

## REVIEW

1. Gold is a metal. He had a ring of gold. He likes jewels. These jewels are very beautiful.

2. All my friends have gone away. All my friends had gone away. Nearly all his friends are dead.

3. The horse is useful to man. Horses are useful to men.

4. Those two men are rivals. That man was my rival.

5. They are building a high wall around the garden.

6. These duets are very beautiful. Don't you like the other pieces?

7. The child was on its mother's knee. The child was on its mother's knees.

8. Are her eyes blue? Were her eyes blue? Has she blue eyes? His hair is black. He has black hair.

9. He is happy. They are happy. We were happy.

10. This picture represents a beautiful garden. The grass is green. There is a tall tree in the center of the garden. There is a fountain, too. There are some children near the tree.

11. When we were children we had playthings.

12. Botany is a science, isn't it? Botany and mineralogy are sciences. The sciences are useful to man.

13. He opened his eyes. His eyes are open. His eyes were open. He closed his eyes. His eyes are closed. His eyes were closed.

14. He raised his left hand. Raise your hand. Raise the other hand. Raise both hands.

15. Men belong to the animal kingdom. Plants, trees, and flowers belong to the vegetable kingdom. Water belongs to the mineral kingdom.

16. Birds of prey eat animals. Is the owl a bird of prey? Owls, eagles, and vultures are birds of prey.

17. Take away all those tables and leave these. What for? I don't know why. The teacher did not say why.

18. Is there a hospital near here? There are two hospitals near here.

19. Our troops are victorious.

20. Have you seen the famous castles of the Rhine?

## LESSON XXII.

1. Strong, stronger, strongest. Fort, plus fort, le plus fort.

*a.* The comparative of superiority is formed by prefixing the adverb **plus** to the simple adjective.

*b.* The superlative is formed by prefixing the definite article to the comparative.

2. Strong, less strong, least Fort, moins fort, le moins strong. fort.

The comparative of inferiority is formed by means of **moins**.

NOTE.—The French say **moins bon** very commonly, whereas in English we generally say *not so good*, rather than *less good*.

3. He is as strong as his Il est aussi fort que son père.  
father.

The comparative of equality is formed by means of the adverb **aussi**.

4. He is taller than his Il est plus grand que son père.  
father.

He is not so tall as his Il est moins grand que son  
father. père.

He is as tall as his Il est aussi grand que son  
father. père.

**Que** is used before the second term of comparison, and translates either *than* or *as*.



5. A strong man. Un homme fort.  
 A stronger man than I. Un homme plus fort que moi.  
 The strongest man of all. L'homme le plus fort de tous.  
 My most faithful friends. Mes amis les plus fidèles.

With adjectives that go after the noun the superlative still retains *le*, so that it may occur twice.

6. The following adjectives generally precede the noun :

beau,	<i>handsome,</i>	vilain,	<i>ugly.</i>
bon,	<i>good.</i>	mauvais,	<i>bad.</i>
court,	<i>short.</i>	long,	<i>long.</i>
grand,	<i>tall.</i>	petit,	<i>small.</i>
gros,	<i>big.</i>	moindre,	<i>less.</i>
jeune,	<i>young.</i>	vieux,	<i>old.</i>
meilleur,	<i>better (§ 52, 5).</i>	pire,	<i>worse.</i>

Otherwise adjectives generally follow the noun.

But adjectives that form *one* idea with the noun, not adding anything to define or specify, usually precede. For instance :

The famous Condé. Le **fameux** Condé.

Here we are not giving information about Condé, or distinguishing him.

7. You have some pretty flowers there. Vous avez là de jolies fleurs.

Some bread, du pain. Some good bread, de bon pain.  
 Some flour, de la farine. Some good flour, de bonne farine.  
 Some books, des livres. Some very pretty de fort jolis li-  
 books, vres.

When a noun in the partitive sense is preceded by an adjective, the preposition *de* is used instead of the partitive article.

8. Your baker sells better bread than ours. Votre boulanger vend de meilleur pain que le nôtre.  
 Your pen is better than mine. Votre plume est meilleure que la mienne.  
 He is the best man in the world. C'est le meilleur homme du monde.



The comparative of **bon** is **meilleur** (not *plus bon*); the superlative, **le meilleur** (not *le plus bon* or *le plus meilleur*).

9. He occupies the largest room *in* the house. Il occupe la plus grande chambre de la maison.

*In*, after a superlative, is rendered by **de**.

10. John is my best friend. Jean est **mon meilleur ami**.

The possessive adjective may replace the article in forming the superlative.

*Translate into French*

1. Louis is not so strong as his brother. This man is not so strong as that.

2. Henri is the strongest of the three brothers.

3. I am as strong as my brother.

4. Is he stronger than I?

5. That man is my most faithful friend.

6. He's a good boy.

7. Washington was a great soldier.

8. There was a big cat on the wall.

9. That young man is my brother, and this one is my cousin.

10. He's an ugly man.

11. I have a bad pen. Haven't you any good pens?

12. There was not the least trace of flour on the wall.

13. He has an old hat. Have you any old hats?

14. Have you any good bread? This bread is better than that.

15. Louis and Charles are good friends. Mary and Charlotte are good friends.

16. The gardener has some very good apples.

17. He is better than I. You are not better than he.

18. He sells better fish than the other man.

19. I have lost my best friend.

20. He was the best of my friends.

21. He was the best friend in the world.
22. He is the smallest boy in the class.
23. Paris is the largest city in France.
24. He imports French silk.
25. She has some black lace.
26. She has better lace than you.
27. We occupy the largest room in the house. You have the largest rose in the garden.
28. I am the tallest boy in the class.
29. Take the shortest road.

## VOCABULARY

three, *trois*.                      the trace, *la trace*.    the class, *la classe*.  
 to import, *importer*.    the lace, *la dentelle*.    the road, *le chemin*

---

## LESSON XXIII

1. That man is very active.    Cet homme est très actif.  
 Girls are less active than    Les filles sont moins actives  
     boys.                                      que les garçons.

Adjectives in -f have the feminine in -ve.

2. He is not unhappy.            Il n'est pas malheureux.  
 The poor woman is very    La pauvre femme est bien  
     unhappy.                                      malheureuse.

Adjectives in -x have the feminine in -se.

3. This speech is very flat-    Ce discours est très flatteur  
     tering for me.                      pour moi.  
 These words are very flat-    Ces paroles sont bien flat-  
     tering.                                      teuses.

Adjectives in -eur formed on a verb-stem have the feminine in -euse.

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 4. The tiger is cruel.  | Le tigre est cruel.   |
| That wild beast is cruel.   | Cette bête sauvage est <b>cruelle</b> .   |
| I never saw a man like him.   | Je n'ai jamais vu un homme pareil.  |
| I never saw a thing like it.  | Je n'ai jamais vu une chose pareille.   |
| She married an Italian.   | Elle a épousé un Italien.   |
| The Italian language is easier to pronounce than the French language. | La langue <b>italienne</b> est plus facile à prononcer que la langue française. |
| He is very kind.  | Il est bien bon.  |
| This apple is good.   | Cette pomme est <b>bonne</b> .  |

Adjectives in **-el, -eil, -en, -on** double the final consonant in forming the feminine.

So do **nul, no, and gentil, nice, pleasant.**

- |                   |                         |
|-------------------|-------------------------|
| 5. A fine horse.  | Un <b>beau</b> cheval.  |
| A handsome man.   | Un <b>bel</b> homme.    |
| A fine animal.    | Un <b>bel</b> animal.   |
| A beautiful girl. | Une <b>belle</b> fille. |

The following adjectives have two masculine forms. The second is used only before a vowel sound :

MASC.		FEM.	
Beau,	bel.	belle,	<i>handsome, beautiful.</i>
Fou,	fol.	folle,	<i>mad, crazy.</i>
Mou,	mol.	molle,	<i>soft, yielding.</i>
Nouveau,	nouvel.	nouvelle,	<i>new.</i>
Vieux,	vieil (§ 52, 3).	vieille,	<i>old.</i>

**Vieux** may also be used before a vowel sound.

## EXERCISE

1. Les gens oisifs ne sont pas nécessairement heureux. J'étais malade l'hiver dernier, et par conséquent, j'étais condamnée à l'oisiveté. J'étais bien malheureuse.

2. Amélie est paresseuse. C'est un grand défaut. Quelqu'un a dit que la paresse est la mère de tous les vices.

3. Les principales puissances européennes étaient coalisées contre la Chine.

4. Les Européens sont blancs.

5. Nous voulons apprendre les mots français les plus usuels.

6. Cet homme est d'une nature bien cruelle.

7. Mangez quelques-unes de ces prunes. Elles sont très bonnes. Elles sont délicieuses.

8. J'ai eu une aventure pareille à la vôtre lorsque j'étais en Italie.

9. Nul homme n'a jamais mis le pied sur le sommet de cette montagne.

10. J'aime beaucoup Mademoiselle Laurent. Oui, elle est très gentille.

11. Ce perroquet est un bel oiseau. Regardez ses plumes. Les couleurs sont si belles.

12. Ce vieux fermier va au marché une fois par semaine avec son vieil âne.

13. Louise, vous êtes folle ! Cessez de parler comme ça.

14. Le pauvre homme est devenu fou.

15. Mon frère dit qu'il a trouvé un nouvel argument, mais son argument n'est pas nouveau.

16. Il a exercé une influence merveilleuse sur les habitants du pays.

## VOCABULARY

<i>oisif, idle.</i>	<i>malade, ill.</i>
<i>un hiver, a winter (§ 57, 2, g).</i>	<i>dernier, last.</i>
<i>par conséquent, consequently.</i>	<i>la puissance, the power.</i>
<i>un défaut, a fault, defect.</i>	<i>coalisé, united, allied.</i>
<i>contre, against.</i>	<i>apprendre, to learn.</i>
<i>mis, put, set (past participle).</i>	<i>la prune, the plum.</i>
<i>blanc, blanche, white.</i>	<i>la plume, the feather (the pen).</i>
<i>le perroquet, the parrot.</i>	<i>une fois, once (one time).</i>
<i>le fermier, the farmer.</i>	<i>par semaine, a week (per week).</i>
<i>le marché, market.</i>	<i>cesser, to cease, stop.</i>
<i>un âne, an ass.</i>	<i>je vais, I go.</i>
<i>le mot, the word.</i>	<i>tu vas, thou goest.</i>
	<i>il va, he goes.</i>

NOTES.—1. Nouns that have *-té* as a suffix are feminine. *Condamnée*. See § 53, 4.

5. *Le mot* is the word taken singly. *La parole* is the word used in connected discourse, thought of as making sense. *His word of honor* *sa parole d'honneur*.

9. Notice the use of the article in translating *to set foot*.

11. *La couleur*. Nouns in *-eur* are feminine, unless designating a man. Important exceptions are *un honneur*, *le bonheur*, *le malheur*, *le labeur*. The last means *tillage*. *Labor* is *le travail*.

*Traduisez en français les phrases suivantes :*

1. This little boy is active. This little girl is less active than her brother.

2. Louis is happy. Marie is always unhappy.

3. Your question is not very flattering for us.

4. Those wild beasts are cruel.

5. Did you ever see a man like him? Did you ever hear a question like that?

6. He spoke Italian. He has studied Italian. He says that the Italian language is the easiest of languages.

7. He was a beautiful child. He has beautiful children.

8. France is a beautiful country.

9. The colors in that picture are very beautiful. They are wonderful.

10. This pear is delicious. Mine is not ripe. This fruit is not good ; it is not ripe.

11. We wish to learn French. The French language is a very beautiful language. French and Italian are beautiful languages.

12. You have the most beautiful room in the house.

13. The old judge and the handsome officer arrived here this morning.

14. This lady is very rich. She is as generous as rich.

15. Have you visited that famous library?

16. You have had a very dangerous adventure.

17. Were our troops victorious? Are our soldiers victorious?

## LESSON XXIV

1. Meat is dearer than bread. La viande est plus chère que le pain.

Bread is not as dear as meat. Le pain est moins cher que la viande.

This hat seems very light. Ce chapeau semble très léger.

He fell into the water head first. Il est tombé dans l'eau la tête la première.

This horse came in first. Ce cheval est arrivé le premier.

Adjectives ending in -er change this ending to ère to form the feminine.

NOTE.—In **cher**, **amer** (bitter), there is no accent, because the **r** is in the same syllable with the **e**, and an **e** by the rules of French pronunciation has the sound è when the consonant after it in the same syllable is pronounced.



In *premier* there is no accent, because *-er* final, when the *r* is silent, is equivalent to *é*.

But when *e* is added to form the feminine, the consonant belongs to this final *e*, and in all French words an *e* preceding a consonant and final *e* mute always has the open sound, and is written *è* (sometimes *ê*).

## 2. Learn the following adjectives :

MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	
bref,	brève,	<i>brief.</i>
complet,	complète,	<i>complete.</i>
secret,	secrète,	<i>secret.</i>
muet,	muette,	<i>mute, silent, dumb.</i>
doux,	douce,	<i>sweet, soft, gentle.</i>
faux,	fausse,	<i>false.</i>
sec,	sèche,	<i>dry.</i>
blanc,	blanche,	<i>white.</i>
franc,	franche,	<i>frank.</i>
public,	publique,	<i>public.</i>
grec,	grecque,	<i>Greek.</i>
long,	longue,	<i>long.</i>
bas,	basse,	<i>low.</i>
gras,	grasse,	<i>fat.</i>
las,	lasse,	<i>weary.</i>
gros,	grosse,	<i>big.</i>
bénin,	bénigne,	<i>benign.</i>
malin,	maligne,	<i>cunning, sharp, malicious.</i>
frais,	fraîche,	<i>fresh, cool.</i>
sot,	sotte,	<i>foolish, silly.</i>
aigu,	aiguë,	<i>sharp, acute.</i>
traître,	traîtresse,	<i>treacherous.</i>
favori,	favorite,	<i>favorite.</i>

## EXERCISE

1. Mon père a beaucoup loué M. Antoine. Il a dit que les hommes de cette valeur ne sont pas nombreux.

2. Celles qui ont passé cet examen avec succès n'étaient pas nombreuses.



3. Nous avons acheté les œuvres complètes d'Alfred de Musset.

4. Comprenez-vous le langage des sourds-muets? Pas du tout. Selon la légende Siegfried comprenait le langage des oiseaux.

5. Il a fait un lit de feuilles sèches.

6. Y a-t-il une bibliothèque publique dans cette ville? Mais oui, nous sommes très fiers de notre bibliothèque.

7. Chaque matin il y avait un bouquet de fleurs fraîches sur la table.

8. En latin il y a des syllabes longues et des syllabes brèves.

9. Dans le mot *clef* la consonne finale est muette; dans le mot *chef*, elle est prononcée. Vous avez laissé la clé dans la serrure. La serrure est cassée. Y a-t-il un serrurier près d'ici.

10. Qui est le commandant en chef de l'armée française, savez-vous?

11. Cette famille qui habite l'appartement en bas parle une langue étrangère. C'est une famille autrichienne, je crois. En Autriche on parle plusieurs langues.

12. D'une voix très douce le maître a dit au petit garçon d'essayer encore une fois.

13. Il a dit quelques mots à son ami à voix basse, et puis il est sorti.

14. Ces gens sont très hospitaliers. Nous avons séjourné longtemps dans cette maison hospitalière. Les étrangers sont toujours les bienvenus ici, monsieur.

15. Le public est admis à toutes les parties du musée.

## VOCABULARY

acheté, <i>bought.</i>	casser, <i>to break.</i>
en bas, <i>below, down-stairs.</i>	étranger, étrangère, <i>foreign.</i>
bienvenu (adj.), <i>welcome.</i>	essayer, <i>to try.</i>
encore, <i>again, yet.</i>	fier, fière, <i>proud.</i>
fait (past part.), <i>made, done.</i>	nombreux, nombreuse, <i>nu-</i>
le lit, <i>the bed.</i>	<i>merous.</i>
selon, <i>according to.</i>	une œuvre, <i>a work.</i>
le serrurier, <i>the locksmith.</i>	la serrure, <i>the lock.</i>
séjourner, <i>to stay.</i>	la valeur, <i>the value.</i>
L'Autriche (fem.), <i>Austria.</i>	le succès, <i>success</i>

NOTES.—4, 11. **Langue** is used of the different languages, French, German, etc. **Langage** would be used in translating *beautiful language, the language of flowers*, etc.

11. **Étranger**: *foreign, foreigner.* **Inconnu**: *unknown, stranger.*

12, 13. **D'une voix**: Idiom; *In a voice.* **A voix basse**: Idiom; *in a low voice.*

12. **Encore une fois**: *once more.* **Encore un livre**: *one book more, another book.*

*Traduisez en français*

1. He is studying Greek. Is the Greek language difficult?

2. Louise is my dearest friend.

3. He has a light hat. Air is lighter than water.

4. Have you studied the first lesson? He does not know the first word of his lesson. The last lesson was easier than the first.

5. Life is short.

6. That letter is silent in that word.

7. She has a very sweet voice. He has a very strong voice.

8. The news was false. These jewels are false.

9. The air is cool. This water is not fresh.

10. Charles is too fat. Your horses are too fat. She is not very fat.

11. We have a public garden. Where is the public library?

12. She is always frank. He was always frank. She is never frank. She was never frank.

13. Have you any white silk? I have bought some white lace. This rose is white. These lilies are white. Snow is white. Europeans are white. Give me a piece of white bread.

14. The grass was covered with dry leaves fallen from the trees. The table was covered with white flowers.

15. This little boy is my favorite. That is my favorite study.

16. He has very long arms. His hair is too long. My hair was too short. This room is very long.

17. The tide was high. Did you say that the tide was low?

18. There was a secret chamber in the old castle.

19. We arrived first. My sister arrived first. We fell into the water head first.

20. Madame Gérard is very proud of her son. He has passed his examinations successfully.

21. We have a public library here. We are very proud of our museum.

## LESSON XXV

- |                          |                                       |
|--------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| 1. Do not speak so loud. | Ne parlez pas si haut.                |
| Speak louder.            | Parlez plus haut.                     |
| Oftenest he stays home.  | Le plus souvent il reste à la maison. |

Adverbs are compared like adjectives.

Of course *le* in the superlative of an adverb is invariable.

2. Small, smaller, smallest.    Petit, plus petit, le plus petit,  
or Petit, **moindre**, le **moindre**.  
Bad, worse, worst.    Mauvais, plus mauvais, le plus  
mauvais, or Mauvais, **pire**,  
le **pire**.

The adjectives **petit** and **mauvais** have both a regular and an irregular comparison.

3. Well, better, best.    Bien, **mieux**, le **mieux**.  
Badly, worse, worst.    Mal, plus mal, le plus mal, or  
Mal, **pis**, le **pis**.  
Little, less, least.    Peu, **moins**, le **moins**.

Note the irregular comparison.

4. He answered very po- Il a répondu très poliment.  
lately.

Many adverbs are formed from adjectives by adding the syllable **-ment**.

5.	ADJECTIVE.		ADVERB.
fort,	strong.	<b>fortement</b> ,	strongly.
doux,	sweet, soft, gentle.	<b>doucement</b> ,	gently.
vif,	quick.	<b>vivement</b> ,	quickly.
sec,	dry.	<b>sèchement</b> ,	dryly.
lent,	slow.	<b>lentement</b> ,	slowly.
présent,	present.	<b>présentement</b> ,	now.
véhément,	vehement.	<b>véhémentement</b> ,	vehement.

Adjectives ending in a consonant usually form the adverb by adding **ment** to the *feminine* form.

6.	ADJECTIVE.	ADVERB.
	vaillant, valiant.	<b>vaillamment</b> , valiantly.
	constant, constant.	<b>constamment</b> , constantly.
	prudent, prudent.	<b>prudemment</b> , prudently (§ 10, 9).

Adjectives in *-ant*, *-ent* change these endings to *-amment*, *-emment*. (Except the three mentioned under Rule 5.)

7. Some adverbs are formed irregularly. A few are here given :

aveugle, *blind*.

aveuglément, *blindly*.

énorme, *huge, enormous*.

énormément, *enormously*.

précis, *precise, exact*.

précisément, *precisely, exactly*.

gentil, *nice, pleasant*.

gentiment, *nicely, pleasantly*.

### EXERCISE

1. Il parle très haut. Vous parlez trop haut. Parlez moins haut. Parlez plus bas.

2. J'ai crié le plus fort que j'ai pu. Il a crié le plus fort qu'il a pu.

3. Est-ce qu'il vient ici quelquefois? Il vient assez rarement.

4. Je n'aime pas cet homme, pas le moins du monde.

5. Il a répondu admirablement à toutes mes questions.

6. Nos troupes ont combattu le plus vaillamment du monde.

7. Il agit toujours bien prudemment. La prudence est une vertu, mais je trouve que Léon est même trop prudent.

8. C'était précisément pour voir mon oncle que nous étions venus! Nous regrettons vivement son absence.

9. Il a grandi énormément.

10. Je chante mal, je chante de plus en plus mal, je commence à être complètement découragé.

11. Allez lentement. Ne tombez pas.

12. Sa confiance en son ami est telle qu'il suit toujours ses conseils aveuglément.

13. Est-il Français? Non, il est Allemand. Il est né en Allemagne, mais il a été élevé en France. Il parle français.

14. Votre ami a agi bien gentiment envers nous.

15. Vous dites précisément la même chose que notre professeur.

16. Vous écrivez mieux que moi. C'est seulement parce que j'ai une meilleure plume.

17. Louis est paresseux, mais la paresse est le moindre de ses défauts.

### VOCABULARY

**agir**, *to act.*

**bas** (adv.), *low.*

**envers**, *toward.*

**fort** (adv.), *loud, hard.*

**grandir**, *to grow.*

**il est né**, *he was born.*

**j'ai pu**, *I could.*

**suivre**, *to follow.*

**je suis**, *I follow.*

**il suit**, *he follows.*

**l'Allemagne** (fem.), *Germany.*

**crier**, *to shout, scream.*

**chanter**, *to sing.*

**combattre**, *to fight.*

**élever**, *to raise, to bring up.*

**bien élevé**, *well-bred.*

**seul**, *seule, alone.*

**seulement**, *only.*

**tel**, *telle, such.*

**vif**, *vive, lively, keen.*

NOTES.—2. **Pu** is the past participle of **pouvoir**, *to be able, can.*

4, 6. **Du monde** strengthens a superlative.

7. **Même**, adv., *even.* **Même**, adj., *same.*

8. When an infinitive expresses purpose it is preceded by **pour**.

13. **Le Français** (capital F) means *the Frenchman*; **le français** (small f) means *the French language*. So **L'Anglais**, *the Englishman*; **L'Anglaise**, *the Englishwoman*; **La Française**, *the Frenchwoman*; **L'Américain**, *the American*; **L'Américaine**, *the American woman*.

16, 17. **Meilleur** is an adjective, **mieux** an adverb. So **moindre** is an adjective and **moins** is an adverb.

### Traduisez

1. Always answer politely. A well-bred man always answers politely. Well-bred people never speak too loud. Your sister does not speak loud enough.

2. You speak too quickly. Speak more slowly. Do you understand your teacher when he speaks French?

3. Do you know where he was born? Was he born in Germany or France? He is a Frenchman.



4. Do you speak German? Yes, I speak German and English. Then you don't speak French? No, I am studying French now.

5. Have you ever studied Spanish? Yes. Does Spanish resemble French? Yes. Spanish is easy for a Frenchman, much easier than German.

6. John is growing enormously, isn't he? Yes, he has grown very much. He has become very tall.

7. Where were those children brought up? They are well brought up, aren't they?

8. Poor Louis! He sings worse and worse. His teacher is completely discouraged.

9. Begin slowly, then go faster.

10. It was especially to see your friend that I came. I deeply regret his absence.

11. My confidence in my friend is such that I always follow his advice—too blindly, perhaps.

12. Americans speak English. That lady is an American; she is not an Englishwoman.

13. We shouted as loud as we could.

14. Answer my question. I answered his questions the best I could. He answered very prudently.

NOTE.—4. *To study French* is *étudier le français*.

---

## LESSON XXVI

### 1. Imperfect Indicative of the three conjugations :

je portais,	je finissais,	je rendais,
tu portais,	tu finissais,	tu rendais,
il portait,	il finissait,	il rendait,
nous portions,	nous finissions,	nous rendions,
vous portiez,	vous finissiez,	vous rendiez,
ils portaient.	ils finissaient.	ils rendaient.



a. The Imperfect Indicative is formed by changing the ending **-ant** of the *present participle* into

-ais,  
-ais,  
-ait,  
-ions,  
-iez,  
-aient.

portant, je portais, etc.  
finissant, je finissais, etc.  
rendant, je rendais, etc.

b. The *Meaning* of the Imperfect Tense.

This tense expresses two things:

1. An unfinished action, in past time.

Examples: I *was carrying* the glass when he pushed me.  
The painter *was finishing* the picture when we came in.

2. A continuous, customary, or repeated action, in past time.

Example: The peasants *used to carry* their corn to the mill.

2. Use the **Past Indefinite** to answer the question, *What happened?* and use the **Imperfect** to answer the question, *What was happening at the time?* or, *What used to happen?*

The battle <i>was still going on</i> at sunset.	La bataille <b>durait</b> encore au coucher du soleil.
---	--

The battle lasted five hours.	La bataille <b>a duré</b> cinq heures.
-------------------------------	--

John was talking to the gardener when I came in.	Jean <b>parlait</b> au jardinier quand je <b>suis rentré</b> .
--	--

3. He sings well.	Il chante <b>bien</b> .
He sang that piece well.	Il <b>a bien chanté</b> ce morceau.

a. Adverbs are placed *after* the verb.

b. In the compound tenses the commoner adverbs are placed after the auxiliary and before the participle.

4. He arrived yesterday. Il est arrivé hier (*two syllables*).

He placed the chair there. Il a placé la chaise là.

He has not been here. Il n'a pas été ici.

Note that *hier*, *aujourd'hui*, *ici*, and *là* are never placed before the past participle.

### EXERCISE

*Lisez et traduisez en anglais les phrases suivantes :*

1. Autrefois nous allions chaque année à la campagne. Mon père jouissait beaucoup du calme, et nous autres enfants, nous jouions en plein air toute la journée. Nous cherchions des fleurs dans les bois, nous regardions les hommes qui travaillaient dans les champs, nous donnions à manger aux poules, nous montions à cheval. Nous aimions beaucoup la campagne.

2. J'attendais mon frère à la gare ce matin, lorsque vous êtes venu. Le train est arrivé mais mon frère n'était pas là-dedans. Maintenant j'attends une dépêche.

3. Je finissais une lettre pour vous quand vous êtes entré.

4. Nous avons visité l'atelier de ce peintre la semaine dernière. Il finissait un grand tableau. Il a fini ce tableau aujourd'hui.

5. Ma pauvre sœur est souvent malade. Autrefois lorsque nous habitions la campagne elle jouissait d'une bonne santé. Elle n'avait jamais la moindre indisposition. Nous retournons au même endroit l'été prochain.

6. Nous écoutions les paroles du maître bien attentivement. Écoutez ce monsieur, il parle bien, n'est-ce pas?

7. Ce jeune homme n'écoutait jamais les conseils de son père. Maintenant il regrette sa mauvaise conduite.

## VOCABULARY

lisez, <i>read.</i>	un été, <i>a summer.</i>
le champ, <i>the field.</i>	jouer, <i>to enjoy.</i>
là-dedans, <i>in it, therein.</i>	une année, <i>a year.</i>
le peintre, <i>the painter.</i>	une journée, <i>a day.</i>
un atelier, <i>a workshop,</i> <i>studio.</i>	une matinée, <i>a morning.</i>
le bois, <i>the wood,</i>	écouter, <i>to listen to.</i>
un endroit, <i>a place, spot.</i>	autrefois, <i>formerly.</i>
prochain, } <i>next, coming.</i>	plein, pleine, <i>full.</i>
prochaine, }	la poule, <i>the hen.</i>
monter à cheval, <i>to ride</i> <i>horseback.</i>	la dépêche, <i>the telegram, de-</i> <i>spatch.</i>
	la santé, <i>health.</i>

NOTES.—1. Besides *an, jour, matin, soir*, the French language has the feminine nouns **année, journée, matinée, soirée**. These feminine nouns usually denote a period of time conceived of as having a certain duration. *During the year* is *pendant l'année*; *to spend the morning*, *passer la matinée*.

Be careful to distinguish *jouer* and *jouer*.

**Jouer** does not have a direct object like the English *enjoy*. It is followed by the preposition *de*.

**Nous autres enfants.** **Autres** is added to *nous* and *vous* to mark a contrast. You Germans, **Vous autres Allemands**. We French, **Nous autres Français**.

1, 2, 6, 7. In translating *to look for, to wait for, to listen to, to look at*, remember to omit the preposition. *Chercher, attendre, écouter, regarder*, require direct objects.

*For Translation*

1. We choose, we chose, we were choosing. 2. They speak, they are speaking, they were speaking. 3. He is looking for a friend. 4. He was looking for a pencil. 5. Go look for your pen. 6. Are you waiting for the train? Did you wait for the train? 7. Look at Louis! 8. We

were looking at the animals. 9. Listen to that bird! 10. We were listening to the birds. 11. We listened to the teacher. 12. Go play. 13. We were playing with the children. 14. He used to sell books. 15. Have you fed the chickens? 16. The children were playing in the open air. 17. We used to go horseback riding when we were in the country. 18. She enjoys good health. 19. She used to enjoy good health. 20. We enjoy the quiet. 21. The men were working in the fields. 22. He often punished the pupils. 23. We used to live in the country. 24. I used to look for flowers in the wood.

---

### LESSON XXVII

1. What book did you read? **Quel** livre avez-vous lu?  
 Which pen is yours? **Quelle** plume est la vôtre?  
 What reasons have they? **Quelles** raisons ont-ils?

The Interrogative Adjective *which* or *what* is expressed by *quel*.

#### 2. Forms of the Adjective *quel*.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
Masc. <b>quel</b> .	<b>quels</b> .
Fem. <b>quelle</b> .	<b>quelles</b> .

3. What a man! **Quel** homme!  
 What a night! **Quelle** nuit!

**Quel** is never followed by an article.

4. He has no money. **Il n'a pas d'argent**.  
 He hasn't any friends. **Il n'a pas d'amis**.  
 You have no more bread. **Vous n'avez plus de pain**.

The Partitive noun after a general negation is preceded by the preposition *de*.

## 5. Examples of three cases of Partitive noun :

- a. He has friends.            Il a **des** amis.  
 b. He has good friends.    Il a **de** bons amis.  
 c. He has no friends.        Il n'a pas d'amis.

Notice that *he has no friends, he has not any friends*, or the more colloquial *he hasn't any friends*, are all rendered by *il n'a pas d'amis*.

## EXERCISE

1. Il y a un vers de La Fontaine qui dit :

La raison du plus fort est toujours la meilleure.

Quel proverbe savez-vous en anglais qui rend très bien ce vers ?

2. Quel homme vous êtes ! Pourquoi n'êtes-vous pas là-bas avec les autres ?

3. Nous allons enfin déjeuner. Quel bonheur !

4. J'admire beaucoup cet auteur. Quelle profondeur ! quelle puissance d'expression !

5. Quelle nuit noire ! Il n'y a pas de lune, il n'y a pas même une étoile.

6. Vous ne voulez pas de commerce avec lui ? Mais dites-moi, quelles sont donc vos raisons ?

7. Quelles chambres sont les meilleures ? Celles qui donnent vers le nord sont les plus grandes, mais, naturellement, il n'y a pas de soleil.

8. De quel pays est cette jeune paysanne ? Elle vient du midi de la France. Il n'y a pas deux mois qu'elle est arrivée ici.

9. Nous n'avons pas pu trouver de voiture. Nous sommes donc allés à pied jusqu'à la station du chemin de fer.

10. Jean dit qu'il n'a jamais vu de paon. N'y a-t-il pas de paon dans le parc ici ?

11. Il n'y avait plus de place dans la voiture.

## VOCABULARY

le vers, <i>the verse.</i>	le commerce, <i>intercourse,</i>
le bonheur, <i>the happiness,</i>	<i>commerce.</i>
<i>luck.</i>	enfin, <i>at last.</i>
le midi, <i>the south.</i>	la profondeur, <i>the depth.</i>
le paysan, <i>the peasant.</i>	la puissance, <i>the power.</i>
un auteur, <i>an author.</i>	la paysanne, <i>the peasant-girl,</i>
vers, <i>toward.</i>	<i>the peasant woman.</i>
le mois, <i>the month.</i>	le paon, <i>the peacock</i> (§ 15, 9).
jusqu'à, <i>as far as.</i>	le chemin de fer, <i>the railway.</i>

Rule 4 does not apply when the object of the negative verb has a restrictive modifier nor after the verb être.

*Je n'ai pas de vin* means *I have no wine whatever.* But *I have no more of this year's wine* is translated *je n'ai plus du vin de cette année.*

They are not snakes.

Ce ne sont pas **des** serpents.

There are no snakes here.

Il n'y a pas **de** serpents ici.

7. Notice the idiomatic use of **donner**. *Vers* has a physical sense; *envers* a moral sense. He came toward me, **vers** moi. He was charitable toward me, **envers** moi.

*For Translation*

1. What proverbs do you know? Tell us a French proverb. Do you know a French proverb? No, I don't know any French proverb.

2. There is no room in the carriage, so we are going on foot. There never is any room for us!

3. Which apple is the best? Which apples are the best? What a beautiful apple! Have you any apples? Have you no apples?

4. What country is that peasant from? I don't even know what language he speaks.

5. Which copy-book did you take? I didn't take any copy-book. I took a few pieces of paper.

6. In which room did you leave your hats? We hadn't any hats.



7. Has he no friends? Has he no father? Haven't you any money? Haven't they any more bread?

8. We had friends. We had no friends. We had good friends.

9. What a fine horse! What fine horses they have!

10. Have you that author's complete works? Which books have you here?

11. What is the depth of the water here?

12. John found some money in the street yesterday. I have never found any money.

## LESSON XXVIII

1. Do you see anything on the horizon?	Voyez-vous quelque chose à l'horizon?
--	---------------------------------------

I do not see anything.	Je ne vois rien.
------------------------	------------------

Do you know any one in New York?	Connaissez-vous quelqu'un à New York?
----------------------------------	---------------------------------------

We do not know any one in New York.	Nous ne connaissons personne à New York?
-------------------------------------	--

Nobody came.	Personne n'est venu.
--------------	----------------------

*a. Nothing* is expressed by **rien**; the verb is preceded by **ne**.

*b. Nobody* is expressed by **personne**; the verb is preceded by **ne**.

NOTE.—*Pas* must not be used with these words.

2. It was something enormous.	C'était quelque chose d'énorme.
-------------------------------	---------------------------------

Give me something good to eat.	Donnez-moi quelque chose de bon à manger.
--------------------------------	---

There is nothing useful in that book.	Il n'y a rien d'utile dans ce livre.
---------------------------------------	--------------------------------------



An adjective used after *quelque chose* or *rien* is preceded by the preposition *de*. This adjective is always masculine singular.

3. I see nothing.	Je ne vois rien.
I saw nothing.	Je n'ai rien vu.
I saw nobody.	Je n'ai vu personne.

*Rien* is usually placed before the past participle in a compound tense. *Personne* does not have this position.

#### 4. Past Definite of the Three Conjugations :

je portai,	je finis,	je rendis,
tu portas,	tu finis,	tu rendis,
il porta,	il finit,	il rendit,
nous portâmes,	nous finîmes,	nous rendîmes,
vous portâtes,	vous finîtes,	vous rendîtes,
ils portèrent.	ils finirent.	ils rendirent.

*a.* This tense is not used in ordinary conversation.

*b.* It is used in the historical style, in story-telling, in narrative of any sort.

*c.* It is used to state *what happened at a definite time mentioned or clearly understood*.

*d.* Hence the narrative style employs the Past Definite for the successive events of the story. (The Imperfect, in the narrative style, is used for all descriptions, and for continuous or repeated actions.)

#### EXERCISE

1. Il allait rapporter de la viande et du vin. Il n'a rien rapporté du tout, de sorte que nous n'avons rien eu à manger.

2. Ne dites rien. Avez-vous déjà dit quelque chose? Je n'ai rien dit.

3. Quelle jolie épingle vous avez ! Je n'ai jamais rien vu de si joli.

4. N'avez-vous pas de meilleur drap que celui-ci ? Nous n'avons rien de meilleur, madame. Il n'y a pas de meilleur drap.

5. Nous avons attendu longtemps ; personne n'est venu.

6. Pour défendre le pays contre l'invasion la Hollande rompit ses digues.

7. Annibal battit les Romains à Cannes.

8. Nous arrivâmes vers le soir. Nous quittâmes la ville le lendemain matin.

9. Au commencement Dieu créa le ciel et la terre.

10. Le prince de Condé passa à travers le pays ennemi.

11. J'achetai deux belles mules et le lendemain je partis de Burgos avant l'aurore pour aller à Madrid. Nous descendîmes à une hôtellerie. Je laissai le soin des mules à mon valet et je montai dans une chambre.

### VOCABULARY

<b>rapporter</b> , <i>to bring back.</i>	<b>de sorte que</b> , <i>so that.</i>
<b>le drap</b> , <i>the cloth.</i>	<b>une épingle</b> , <i>a pin.</i>
<b>battre</b> , <i>to beat.</i>	<b>la digue</b> , <i>the dike.</i>
<b>Cannes</b> , <i>Cannæ.</i>	<b>à travers</b> , <i>through.</i>
<b>le lendemain</b> , <i>the next day.</i>	<b>l'aurore</b> (f.), <i>the dawn.</i>
<b>le soin</b> , <i>the care.</i>	

NOTE.—The last six sentences are from narratives.

### For Translation

1. You never saw anything so beautiful. I never heard anything so terrible. He says he never ate anything so good.

2. Do you hear that voice ? I don't hear anything. Is your friend deaf ? Yes, he hears badly.

3. Did he say anything ? He didn't say anything. Did you see anybody ? We didn't see anybody. Nobody was

there. There was nobody in the room. Wasn't there anybody?

4. I am looking for something pretty for my mother. I have found something very pretty.

5. Have you read that story? (*cette histoire.*) Yes, I do not find anything remarkable in that story.

6. Have you been to the station? No, I do not expect any one to-day. Were you not expecting your friend? No, I received a dispatch yesterday.

7. I was copying my exercises when you came in. I was going to copy my exercises when my friends came in.

8. We French are very fond of our country.

9. Are you going to the country next summer? Are you going back to the same place where you were last summer? It is likely.

*In Narrative Style*

10. Hannibal crossed the Alps.

11. I gave some money to the poor man.

12. He sought his friend a long time ; he found no one.

13. The battle lasted two days.

14. Yes, answered he. No, answered they.

15. The soldiers brought back some bread and wine.

## LESSON XXIX

1. I have only three francs. Je n'ai que trois francs.

The orator spoke but L'orateur ne parla qu'une fois.  
once.

You have only to try. Vous n'avez qu'à essayer.

*Only*, and *but* in the sense of *only*, are expressed by *ne* before the verb and *que* after it.

NOTE.—*Que* here was originally the *que* meaning *than*; "I have no more *than* three," "I have nothing else *than*," etc.

2. He has neither father nor mother. Il n'a ni père ni mère.

Neither John nor Henry was there. Ni Jean ni Henri n'étaient là.

*Neither, nor*, are translated by *ni*, and the verb is preceded by *ne*.

3. He neither praises nor blames his brother. Il ne loue ni ne blâme son frère.

When verbs are connected by *neither, nor*, each verb in French is preceded by *ne*, and *ni* connects the verbs.

4. I have pens and ink. J'ai des plumes et de l'encre.  
I have neither pens nor ink. Je n'ai ni plumes ni encre.

The partitive article is omitted after *ni*.

#### EXERCISE

1. Cela n'a ni queue ni tête. 2. La nouvelle a semblé non seulement pénible mais étonnante. 3. Aucune nouvelle n'est arrivée. 4. Le médecin examina chaque homme, aucun n'était guéri. 5. Ce pauvre garçon n'a plus que son frère au monde. 6. A partir de ce jour il n'a jamais plus chanté cette chanson. 7. Elle n'a pas invité Mme. Laurent. C'est vrai. Elle n'a pas invité sa nièce non plus. 8. Ce jeune homme ne respecte personne, pas même son père. 9. Votre frère est-il revenu? Il n'est pas encore revenu. 10. Je ne vois guère quelle différence il y a. 11. Charles n'a pas dansé, ni Louis non plus. Ne dansent-ils donc jamais? Ils ne chantent ni ne dansent. 12. Il n'a qu'à dire un mot. 13. J'attendis une semaine. Pas de réponse. 14. Louis ne vient plus ici. Jamais un mot, jamais une visite. 15. Êtes-vous fâché? Pas le moins du monde. 16. Regardez la mer; rien que de l'eau. 17. N'avez-vous pas de bonne encre? Je n'ai que cette encre-là.

## VOCABULARY

<i>cela, that.</i>	<i>la réponse, the answer.</i>
<i>sembler, to seem.</i>	<i>pénible, painful.</i>
<i>dire, to say.</i>	<i>étonnant, astonishing.</i>
<i>fâché, angry.</i>	<i>aucun, any, no.</i>
<i>vrai, true.</i>	<i>non seulement, not only.</i>
<i>guérir, to cure.</i>	<i>la chanson, the song.</i>
<i>la queue, the tail.</i>	

NOTES.—6. **A partir de ce jour.** From that day on.

7. **Non plus.** *Either*, after a negation, is expressed by **non plus**.

13, 14, 15, 16. In these sentences notice the omission of the verb, which is readily understood, along with the **ne** accompanying it.

*For Translation*

1. I see only the head and the tail of the animal.

2. Henry is intelligent. He is not only intelligent: he is kind (*bon*).

3. We have received no news—not a word. We have received no news yet—nothing. No letter has come.

4. You have only to read the letter. They have only to close the window if they do not like the draught.

5. She has no one left but her father. I have only two books left. This little boy has only one sou left.

6. From that day on he remained here.

7. Have you no money? I have no money either. What a misfortune!

8. That boy is terribly lazy. He neither studies nor works. He does not enjoy anything either.

9. I have no more bread. What, no more bread!

10. He has neither brothers nor sisters.

11. That has neither beginning nor end.

12. I spoke only once. He spoke only twice.

13. I see only the sky and the water.

14. Do you sing? I neither sing nor play.

15. Have your friends come back? They have not come back yet.

## LESSON XXX

1. Past Definite of *avoir*; Past Definite of *être*:

j'eus (§ 22, 8),

tu eus,

il eut,

nous eûmes,

vous eûtes,

ils eurent.

je fus,

tu fus,

il fut,

nous fûmes,

vous fûtes,

ils furent.

il y eut, *there was.*

In translating *avoir* in this tense, since it expresses what happened, some other verb than *to have* must generally be used in English.

*He had a son* is in French *il avait un fils*.

*Il eut un fils* means that *a son was born to him*.

*Nous eûmes la nouvelle à notre arrivée* means *we got, or received, or heard the news on our arrival*.

So the Past Definite of *être* is often found in Passive Verbs.

He was in Paris.

Il était à Paris.

He was taken to Paris.

Il fut transporté à Paris.

2. He gave his books to some friends.

Il a donné ses livres à des amis.

He came with friends.

Il est venu avec des amis.

But

He remained without friends.

Il est resté sans amis.

He was surrounded by friends.

Il était entouré d'amis.

The partitive article is not expressed after the prepositions *de* or *sans*.



3. He has many friends. Il a beaucoup d'amis.  
 He has a lot of money. Il a beaucoup d'argent.  
 We have time enough. Nous avons assez de temps.  
 You have more time than we. Vous avez plus de temps que nous.  
 I have too many things to do. J'ai trop de choses à faire.

*a.* The English adjectives of quantity are, most of them, expressed in French by adverbs of quantity.

*b.* In French the adverb of quantity requires the preposition *de* before the noun determined.

NOTE.—The adverb here really becomes a noun of quantity.

The most important adverbs of quantity are :

autant,	as many, as much.
assez,	enough.
bien,	many.
peu,	few, little.
combien,	how many.
moins,	less, fewer.
trop,	too much, too many.
beaucoup,	many.
plus,	more.
tant,	so many, so much.

CAUTIONS.—*a.* *Enough* often goes after the noun in English. Not so in French : *Bread enough, assez de pain.*

*b.* *peu* must not be confused with *petit*.

A little money,	un peu d'argent.
A little boy,	un petit garçon.

*Peu* refers to quantity, *petit* to size.

*c.* *Un peu* is always masculine.

*d.* *So much* is *tant* ; hence, never say *si beaucoup*.

*e.* *Très beaucoup* is never said in French, but merely *beaucoup*.



- |                    |                       |
|--------------------|-----------------------|
| 4. Many times,     | bien des fois.        |
| Many difficulties, | bien des difficultés. |
| Many others,       | bien d'autres.        |

**Bien** differs from the other adverbs of quantity in requiring **de** + the article before the noun. Before the adjective **de** alone is used.

- |                            |                                 |
|----------------------------|---------------------------------|
| 5. A kilogramme of butter. | Un kilogramme de beurre.        |
|                            | ( <i>Familiarly</i> , un kilo.) |
| A litre of water.          | Un litre d'eau.                 |

The noun of quantity also requires **de**, just as in English it requires *of*.

CAUTION.—*Dozen* and *half-dozen* in English usually omit *of* after them. But in French **de** must be expressed after **douzaine** and **demi-douzaine**.

- |                             |                                 |
|-----------------------------|---------------------------------|
| A dozen eggs.               | Une douzaine d'œufs.            |
| Half a dozen handkerchiefs. | Une demi-douzaine de mouchoirs. |

### EXERCISE

1. On dit qu'il a perdu beaucoup d'argent, et cela tout récemment. Où donc a-t-il dépensé tant d'argent? On ne sait pas. Il a été très imprudent, c'est certain.

2. Blanche a un collier superbe. Il y a autant de perles que de diamants. Son père est allé à Paris il y a quelques jours et vous savez qu'il ne revient jamais de Paris sans apporter des cadeaux. Je pense qu'il donne même trop de cadeaux à ses filles. Elles sont tout à fait gâtées.

3. Vous avez beaucoup plus d'esprit que moi. Ne dites pas cela, je vous prie. Pourquoi pas, si c'est vrai?

4. Voulez-vous un peu de sel? Non, merci. Prenez un peu plus de ce rôti. Mais oui, volontiers. Il est bon, n'est-ce pas? Mangez moins de beurre, mon enfant.

5. Vous avez vraiment trop peu d'énergie. Comment voulez-vous réussir si vous n'avez pas plus de courage?

6. J'ai plus d'amis que d'ennemis. Mais j'espère que vous n'avez pas d'ennemis. Un homme comme vous n'a que des amis; j'en suis sûr.

7. Son père mort, le pauvre garçon resta sans appui. D'abord il eut un moment d'abattement, il fut bien triste pendant quelque temps. Cela dura peu. Un jeune homme a toujours assez de courage et d'énergie pour faire son chemin seul.

8. Il y eut un moment de silence.

## VOCABULARY

tout (adverb), <i>quite</i> .	l'esprit (m.), <i>wit, mind, intelligence</i> .
le collier, <i>the necklace</i> .	
le diamant, <i>the diamond</i> .	dépenser, <i>to spend</i> .
tout à fait, <i>wholly, altogether, quite</i> .	la perle, <i>the pearl</i> .
le sel, <i>the salt</i> .	je vous prie, <i>I beg you</i> .
le rôti, <i>the roast</i> .	volontiers, <i>willingly</i> .
j'en suis sûr, <i>I am sure of it</i> .	réussir, <i>to succeed</i> .
un appui, <i>a support</i> .	j'espère, <i>I hope</i> .
l'abattement (m.), <i>downheartedness</i> .	d'abord, <i>at first</i> .
	faire, <i>to make</i> .
	vrai, <i>true</i> .

NOTES.—1. **On** is an indefinite pronoun meaning *one, people*. Better translate by a passive: *It is said*.

2. *As many as*. The second *as* is **que**.

5. **Voulez-vous** is often used like the English *do you expect*.

7. **Peu** with a verb of time means *a little while, not very long*.

Observe the preposition **pour** before the infinitive after **assez**.

8. **Silence** is masculine. All other nouns in **-ence** and those in **-ance** are feminine.

## LESSON XXXI

## REVIEW

1. He does not enjoy anything (see p. 98, note on *jouir*). I enjoy everything. They did not enjoy anything.

2. The table was covered with flowers. There were more roses than anything else. How do you say *thorn* in French? A *thorn* is *une épine*. Now say in French, "Never a rose without thorns."

3. Louis says he has too many things to do. He has little energy. He has but little energy. He has not enough energy to succeed alone.

4. You eat a good deal too much butter.

5. How many children have you? I have one son.

6. There are more chairs than tables in this room. There are as many pens as pencils in this box.

7. He has been to Paris many times. Do you know the difference between (*entre*) *le temps* and *la fois*? How do you say "Time is precious"? Translate, "We have time enough." Say in French, "He came back the first time."

8. He sang once. He spoke twice. He spoke many times. He was talking all the time.

9. I like your friend very much.

10. These people are rich. They have very many friends.

11. Take a little milk. Do you want a little piece of meat?

12. Have you roses enough to make a little bouquet for your aunt?

13. That little boy is happy; he has so many toys!

14. I have a dozen pens here. Choose the best ones.

(*Ones* is not expressed in French here.)

15. He succeeded after many difficulties. After that we had no more difficulty. He got out without difficulty.

16. Joseph has few friends; I don't know why. He is too bashful, perhaps.

17. You have fewer enemies than friends.

18. The silence was broken by my brother's voice.

19. There are half a dozen handkerchiefs in that drawer.

## LESSON XXXII

### 1. PRESENT INDICATIVE OF **Porter**

INTERROGATIVELY	NEGATIVELY AND INTERROGATIVELY
porté-je? <i>do I carry? am I carrying?</i>	ne porté-je pas? <i>do I not carry?</i>
portes-tu?	ne portes-tu pas?
porte-t-il?	ne porte-t-il pas?
porte-t-elle?	ne porte-t-elle pas?
portons-nous?	ne portons-nous pas?
portez-vous?	ne portez-vous pas?
portent-ils?	ne portent-ils pas?

Note the accent in **porté-je**? This occurs for the sake of euphony. See § 11, 1 and 8.

Generally, *est-ce que je porte?* is said instead of **porté-je**?

2. How many times have you been there? *Combien de fois avez-vous été là?*

How much snow there was! *Que de neige il y avait!*

*How much, How many*, are expressed by *que de* in exclamations.

3. We pay that man four times as much as he earns. *Nous payons cet homme quatre fois plus qu'il ne gagne.*

He writes better than he speaks. *Il écrit mieux qu'il ne parle.*

**Ne** is placed before the verb in the second term of a comparison.

4. Everything is dear here. **Tout** est cher ici.  
 We saw everything. Nous avons **tout** vu.

The pronoun **tout**, when it is the object of a verb, is usually placed between the parts of a compound tense.

5. That man is the least strong of all. Cet homme est le moins fort de **tous**.  
 All perished. **Tous** ont péri.  
 They all perished. Ils ont **tous** péri.

The **s** of the pronoun **tous** is always pronounced.

We call **tous** a pronoun when it is not followed by a noun to which it relates.

6. All the bread. **Tout** le pain.  
 The whole house. **Toute** la maison.  
 A whole army. **Toute** une armée.

The adjective **tout** is always placed *before* the article, never after it.

7. The whole is greater than any of its parts. **Le tout** est plus grand qu'aucune de ses parties.

Here **le tout** is a noun.

8. **Tout** le monde, *everybody*. **Tous** les jours, *every day*.  
 Toutes les semaines, *every week*. **Tous** les mois, *every month*.  
 Tous les ans, *every year*. Toutes les fois, *every time*.

- Toute** la journée, *all day long*. **Toute** la matinée, *all the morning*.  
**Toute** la soirée, *all the evening*. **Toute** l'année, *all the year through*.

- Tous les deux, } *both*. Toutes les deux heures, *every two hours*.  
 Tous deux, }

## EXERCISE

1. Cette nouvelle a surpris tout le monde, Robert plus que personne.

2. Toutes ses lettres restaient sans réponse. Elle devenait plus inquiète tous les jours.

3. Votre sœur n'aime-t-elle pas la musique? Elle aime le chant, mais elle n'aime pas beaucoup le piano. Ses amis pensent comme elle qu'elle chante beaucoup mieux qu'elle ne joue.

4. Tout le monde était sur pied avant le lever du soleil. Nous sommes repartis aussitôt.

5. Que de fleurs il y a ici! N'est-ce pas? Tous les matins nous avons de grands bouquets sur la table.

6. Ne donnez pas votre montre à cet enfant; il casse tout.

7. Comment savez-vous que le mot *armée* est féminin? Parce que j'ai vu l'expression, *toute une armée*.

8. Nous sommes restés en France toute une année, de sorte que nous avons tous appris un peu de français. Je comprends presque tout maintenant, je comprends beaucoup mieux que je ne parle.

9. J'ai tout vu de mes propres yeux, j'ai tout entendu.

10. Le matin nous prenons le café au lait, tous excepté ma mère qui prend le chocolat. Est-ce que vous dînez le soir ou à midi? Nous dînons le soir; mon père aime à voir toute la famille autour de lui à l'heure du dîner.

11. Louis et François où sont-ils? Ils sont ici tous les deux.

12. Que de fois j'ai regretté d'être parti!

13. Votre sœur ne chante-t-elle pas? Si, mais ce soir elle dit qu'elle est enrhumée.

14. Louis n'a pas apporté son cahier. Mais si; voilà son cahier sur la chaise.

15. Toutes les fois que j'ai traversé la Manche j'ai eu le mal de mer.



## VOCABULARY

inquiet, inquiète, <i>uneasy</i> ,	penser, <i>to think</i> .
<i>anxious</i> .	aussitôt, <i>immediately</i> .
le lever du soleil, <i>sunrise</i> .	la montre, <i>the watch</i> .
appris (past part.), <i>learned</i> .	être enrhumé, <i>to have a cold</i> .
propre, <i>own</i> .	la Manche, <i>the English Chan-</i>
midi (masc.), <i>noon</i> .	<i>nel</i> .
le mal de mer, <i>sea-sickness</i> .	si, <i>yes</i> .

NOTES.—10. *In the evening* is **le soir**, without a preposition.

12. **Regretter** requires **de** before the infinitive it governs.

13, 14. **Si** is used for *yes* in reply to a negative question or to contradict a negative statement.

*For Translation*

1. Does that tree bear fruit all the year? No; don't you know that there are no trees that bear fruit all the year?

(Translate *fruit* by the plural. *To bear* is *porter*.)

2. Does he blame his brother? Doesn't your mother blame his conduct?

3. Doesn't John earn enough money? How much money does he earn?

4. Don't I speak better than I spoke last year? Yes, you speak much better.

5. We were all surprised, my brother more than any one.

6. All my letters remain unanswered. I am very anxious. I do not like to be without news.

7. My professor says that I have not much voice. I play better than I sing, so that now I do not sing any more, but I practise at the piano several hours every morning.

8. That little boy breaks everything. He has broken all his toys.

9. We saw everything, we heard everything.

10. I have not bought anything.



11. All the boys were present except Louis. And where was Louis? I don't know. Louis is very unfortunate. Every time that M. Lebrun and the boys have gone to the park, Louis has been absent.

12. When we were in the country we always dined at noon. Here we dine in the evening.

13. There were three of us (*we were three*) yesterday in the boat, and we all three fell into the water.

14. Do you regret having gone away? Yes, many times I have regretted having left my aunt's house.

15. The professor comes here every three days.

16. Almost everybody likes flowers. Everybody seems to be happy here.

17. See the snow! How much snow there is! There was not so much snow last year. Oh, yes, there was more snow last year.

18. The family occupies (*habite*) a whole house. In Paris the families that occupy a whole house are not numerous. Usually each family occupies only an apartment.

## LESSON XXXIII

### 1. THE CARDINAL NUMBERS. (Les nombres cardinaux.)

1 un, une.	11 onze.
2 deux.	12 douze.
3 trois.	13 treize.
4 quatre.	14 quatorze.
5 cinq ( <i>q</i> sounded).	15 quinze.
6 six ( <i>x</i> like <i>s</i> ).	16 seize.
7 sept ( <i>p</i> silent, <i>t</i> sounded).	17 dix-sept ( <i>x</i> like <i>s</i> ).
8 huit ( <i>t</i> sounded).	18 dix-huit ( <i>x</i> like <i>z</i> ).
9 neuf ( <i>f</i> sounded).	19 dix-neuf ( <i>x</i> like <i>z</i> ).
10 dix ( <i>x</i> like <i>s</i> ).	20 vingt ( <i>gt</i> silent).

## PRONUNCIATION

The pronunciation of the numbers requires attention.

- a. The *x* of **deux** is silent before a consonant or aspirate *h*.

**deux fois**, *twice*.

**deux hiboux**, *two owls*.

It is joined to the next word with the sound of *z* before a vowel sound.

**deux êtres**, *two beings*.

**deux hommes**, *two men*.

The same applies to the *s* of *trois*.

- b. The *q* of **cinq** is pronounced unless it multiplies the following word.

**cinq et cinq font dix**, *five and five make ten*.

The *q* is also pronounced before a vowel.

**cinq animaux**.

But it is silent when it precedes a word it multiplies beginning with a consonant, as in

**cinq fois**, *five times*. **cinq cents**, *five hundred*.

- c. **Six** and **dix** follow the same rules.

When they do not multiply the next word the *x* in each sounds like *s* unvoiced.

**Six et dix font seize**.

When preceding the word they multiply, the *x* is silent if that word begins with a consonant.

**Six fois**, *dix livres*.

When preceding the word they multiply, the *x* has the sound of *z* if that word begins with a vowel sound.

**Six hommes**, **dix oranges**.

- d. In **sept** and **huit** the *t* sounds when they do not multiply the next word.

**Huit sont morts**, *eight died*.

**Sept est la moitié de quatorze**, *seven is half of fourteen*.

When preceding the word they multiply, the *t* is silent if that word begins with a consonant.

**sept fusils**, *seven guns* (*ls* silent). Many pronounce the *t* here.

**huit mois**, *eight months*.

Before a vowel sound the *t* of each always sounds.

**huit arbres**, **sept ans**.

e. **Neuf** is treated like *six* and *dix*. The *f* is normally pronounced ; it is silent before the word it multiplies if that word begins with a consonant, and when the word begins with a vowel it has the sound of *v*.

**Neuf sont arrivés**, *nine arrived* (*f* sounds).

**J'ai neuf crayons**, *I have nine pencils* (*f* silent).

**Il est resté là neuf ans**, *He stayed there nine years* (*f* like *v*).

2. What time is it?

Quelle heure **est-il** ?

It is one o'clock.

**Il est** une heure.

Here *it is* is an impersonal verb, so we say **il est**.

It is two o'clock.

**Il est** deux heures.

It is four o'clock.

**Il est** quatre heures.

But

It is twelve o'clock.

**Il est midi**, } ( not *douze*

It is twelve o'clock.

**Il est minuit**, } *heures*).

3. **Midi** (*masc.*) means *noon, midday*.

**Minuit** (*masc.*) means *midnight*.

4. It is quarter past one.

**Il est** une heure **et quart**.

It is half past three.

**Il est** trois heures **et demie**.

The adjective **demi** has the feminine form here.

It is twenty minutes past five.

**Il est** cinq heures **et vingt** minutes, *or*

**Il est** cinq heures **vingt**.

It is five minutes to six.

**Il est** six heures **moins** cinq minutes, *or*

**Il est** six heures **moins** cinq.

### EXERCISE

1. Le train est en retard. D'ordinaire il arrive à cinq heures et quart, il est maintenant cinq heures vingt-cinq. Le train est donc en retard de dix minutes.

2. Il est très tard, n'est-ce pas? Mais non, il n'est que dix heures. A quelle heure comptez-vous sortir? Dans un quart d'heure au plus tard. J'attends la malle.

3. Savez-vous le numéro de la maison ? C'est le numéro 13, je crois. Vous n'êtes-pas superstitieux ? Mais pas du tout. Bien des fois nous avons été treize à table et personne n'est mort dans l'année.

4. Le bateau a sombré en pleine mer. La plupart des passagers ont été sauvés. Est-ce qu'on donne les chiffres ? Non. On ne sait pas au juste combien ont péri. Ils sont au moins vingt.

5. Il était minuit et demie lorsque nous sommes rentrés. La pièce était trop longue. On avait commencé trop tard.

6. Combien de temps avez-vous attendu votre frère ? Trois quarts d'heure. Il était alors six heures moins un quart.

7. Quand il est midi aux États-Unis il est minuit en Chine. C'est curieux, n'est-ce pas ? Savez-vous pourquoi ?

8. Comptez en français de *un* jusqu'à *vingt*.

9. L'hexagone a six angles et six côtés.

Deux, quatre, six, sont des nombres pairs.

Trois, cinq, sept, sont des nombres impairs.

#### VOCABULARY

**en retard**, *late*.

**tard**, *late*.

**le chiffre**, *the figure, cipher*.

**au juste**, *exactly*.

**les États-Unis**, *the United States*.

**la pièce**, *the play*.

**compter**, *to expect, to count*

(§ 55, 3).

**la malle**, *the mail, the trunk*.

**sombrer**, *to sink*.

**la plupart**, *the greater part, most*.

NOTES.—1. **Tard**, **en retard**. **Tard** is used with the impersonal verb **il est**, or as an adverb with any other verb. **En retard** is used with the verb **être** when it is personal.

I was late, **j'étais en retard**.

It is late (meaning the train, or something we have in mind), **il est en retard**.

Don't go, it is too late, **n'allez pas, il est trop tard**.

1. Observe the **de** in **en retard de dix minutes**.

3. **Numéro.** A number assigned to each thing in a series is a "numéro."

4. **La plupart.** Observe the verb in the plural.

6. Observe the plural of **quart d'heure.**

8. **De un.** The elision is not made; **un** is used as a noun here. So if we say *what is the gender of état?* it would be **de état**. Elision does not occur when a word is mentioned as such.

*For Translation*

1. Fifteen is an odd number. Sixteen is an even number.

2. How do you say *triangle* in French? The word is the same in French as in English. Is *triangle* masculine or feminine? It is a masculine noun. How many sides has a triangle? It has three sides and three angles.

3. Was the train late? Yes, it was twelve minutes late. At what time does it usually arrive? At twenty minutes to twelve. It arrived this morning at eight minutes to twelve.

4. Has the mail come? Not yet. What time is it? What time did it come yesterday? At quarter to ten.

5. I have forgotten the number of the house. It is No. 18, I think.

6. Do you know how many books you have? I do not know exactly.

7. He is rarely late. Why does he come so late this time?

8. We did not go out yesterday. It was too late. My brother did not get here till half-past five (*n'est arrivé qu'à . . .*).

9. Get here early, at eight o'clock at the latest.

10. I have lost at least seven pencils this week.

11. When it is noon at New York, what time is it at Paris? There is a difference of five hours, I think.

12. Seven and eight make fifteen. Fifteen and four make nineteen.

13. How many times have you crossed the sea? Ten times.

14. I lost two of these oranges. I had a dozen oranges when I started from the house.

15. He passed seven years and nine months in China.

16. I went to visit your friend twice. He has been here only once.

## LESSON XXXIV

### 1. The Numbers continued.

21 vingt-et-un.	31 trente-et-un.
22 vingt-deux.	32 trente-deux.
23 vingt-trois.	40 quarante.
24 vingt-quatre.	41 quarante-et-un.
25 vingt-cinq.	42 quarante-deux.
26 vingt-six.	50 cinquante.
27 vingt-sept.	51 cinquante-et-un.
28 vingt-huit.	52 cinquante-deux.
29 vingt-neuf.	60 soixante.
30 trente.	61 soixante-et-un.

a. **t** is silent in **vingt** unless joined to a following vowel.

**Vingt** fois, but *vingt hommes*.

b. The **t** of **vingt** sounds in all the numbers from 21 to 29 inclusive.

62 soixante-deux.	90 quatre-vingt-dix.
69 soixante-neuf.	91 quatre-vingt-onze.
70 soixante-dix.	92 quatre-vingt-douze.
71 soixante-et-onze.	98 quatre-vingt-dix-huit.
72 soixante-douze.	99 quatre-vingt-dix-neuf.
73 soixante-treize.	100 cent.
79 soixante-dix-neuf.	200 deux cent.
80 quatre-vingts.	501 cinq cent un.
81 quatre-vingt-un.	1,000 mille.
82 quatre-vingt-deux.	1,000,000 un million.
83 quatre-vingt-trois.	1,000,000,000 un milliard.
89 quatre-vingt-neuf.	

c. **et** is inserted in 21, 31, 41, 51, 61, 71; nowhere else.

d. Note carefully where the hyphens are found.



*e. Quatre-vingts* keeps the *s* before the word that it multiplies. *Cent* takes an *s* from 200 on, before a word that it multiplies.

Eighty men.	Quatre-vingts hommes.
A hundred men.	Cent hommes.
Two hundred men.	Deux cents hommes.
Two hundred and eight men.	Deux cent huit hommes.

*f. Mille* is written *mil* in dates.

1902, mil neuf cent deux *or* dix-neuf cent deux.

*g. Twenty-one cows.* Vingt-et-une vaches.

Notice the agreement of *un, une*, wherever it occurs.

- |   |                                       |
|---|---------------------------------------|
| 2. How old are you?                           | Quel âge avez-vous?                   |
| I am twenty.                                  | J'ai vingt ans.                       |
| My grandfather is seventy-three years of age. | Mon grand-père a soixante-treize ans. |
| 3. A million men.                             | Un million d'hommes.                  |
| A billion francs.                             | Un milliard de francs.                |
| 4. Have you more than two pencils?            | Avez-vous plus de deux crayons?       |

*More than*, before a number, meaning *a larger number than*, is translated *plus de*; *less than* by *moins de*.

- |                  |                |
|------------------|----------------|
| 5. I have three. | J'en ai trois. |
|------------------|----------------|

*En* is a personal pronoun meaning *of them*. It must always be placed *before* the verb in the indicative mode. It must be used in connection with a number or a word of quantity when the noun is left out.



Have you many friends here?	Avez-vous beaucoup d'amis ici?
We have very few.	Nous <b>en</b> avons fort peu.
Are there any forks in that drawer?	Y a-t-il des fourchettes dans ce tiroir?
There are a dozen (of them).	Il y <b>en</b> a une douzaine.

## EXERCISE

1. Nous n'avons plus qu'une maison.

Nous possédons plus d'une maison.

Nous avons acheté encore une maison.

À présent, nous habitons une autre maison.

2. Avez-vous compté ces assiettes? Combien y en a-t-il? Il y en a trente-trois. Est-ce tout? Je croyais qu'il y en avait plus de quarante. En voilà six autres que je ne voyais pas. Ça fait trente-neuf. Cherchez celles qui manquent.

3. Combien de pages y a-t-il dans ce cahier? Il y en a à peu près quarante. Combien de pages blanches y a-t-il? Il en reste quinze. Il n'en reste que quinze. Avez-vous d'autres cahiers? Non, c'est tout ce que j'ai.

4. Combien de fois avez-vous été en Europe? J'ai été en Europe cinq fois. Combien de temps êtes-vous resté en France la dernière fois? La dernière fois, c'était en 1899. Je suis resté en France un peu plus de huit semaines, près de soixante jours.

5. Ce train est en retard neuf fois sur dix.

Les malades guérissent quatre-vingt-dix-neuf fois sur cent. Vous voyez donc que la maladie n'est pas bien dangereuse.

6. L'addition, la soustraction, la multiplication et la division sont les quatre règles de l'arithmétique.

## VOCABULARY

<b>acheter</b> , <i>to buy.</i>	<b>une assiette</b> , <i>a plate.</i>
<b>à peu près</b> , <i>about, approximately.</i>	<b>guérir</b> (with an object), <i>to cure.</i>
<b>posséder</b> , <i>to possess, to own.</i>	<b>guérir</b> (without an object), <i>to get well.</i>
<b>il reste</b> , <i>there remains, there remain.</i>	<b>manquer</b> (with an object), <i>to miss.</i>
<b>une règle</b> , <i>a rule.</i>	<b>manquer</b> (without an object), <i>to be lacking.</i>
<b>voilà</b> , <i>behold, see, there is, there are.</i>	

Present Indicative of **faire**, *to do, to make.*

<b>je fais</b> ,	<b>nous faisons</b> ,
<b>tu fais</b> ,	<b>vous faites</b> ,
<b>il fait.</b>	<b>ils font.</b>

NOTES.—1. **nous n'avons plus qu'une**: Literally, *we have no longer but one*, that is, *we have only one left*. So, *I have no one left but my brother* is **je n'ai plus que mon frère**. **Encore une**: *One more, two more, etc.*, are translated by **encore un**, **encore deux**, etc. **Un autre** means *another* in the sense of *a different one*, not in the sense of *one more*.

2. **Voilà** is an imperative verb, made up of **vois**, *see*, and **là**, *there*. It is used to point out something, and is commonly translated by *there is* or *there are*. **En** is placed before **voilà**, not after it. **Ça**: This is a contraction, used in familiar language, of **cela**.

3. **Il reste**: This is an impersonal verb. **Tout ce que j'ai**: The words **ce qui** (nominative) or **ce que** (accusative) must not be omitted after **tout** with the relative clause dependent upon it.

5. **Neuf fois sur dix**: **Sur** is here translated *out of*. Note this idiomatic use.

*Read aloud in French*

1. 21, 32, 44, 55, 68, 70, 71, 73, 75, 80, 81, 89, 90, 91, 93, 99.

2. 100, 101, 105, 115, 262, 272, 282, 1000, 1902, 6000.

3. One child. Fifty-one children. Eighty children. A hundred children. Two hundred children.

4. How old is your grandfather? He is seventy. My grandfather is more than eighty years old.

5. Paris has more than two million inhabitants. Fifty years ago the city had less than a million inhabitants.

6. The Opera House in Paris cost 36,500,000 francs.

7. How much money have you? I have only a few francs.

8. Five centimes make a sou. Twenty sous make a franc. There are copper coins, silver coins, and gold coins. That gold coin that you have is a twenty-franc piece. The franc is a silver coin. The fifty-centime piece is a silver coin. This big coin is a ten-centime piece; it is a copper coin. A sou is a copper coin. The names of the metals are masculine.

9. I still have a few francs. I have only twenty-five francs left. Give me twenty-five francs more. Now I have fifty francs.

10. How many times has your brother crossed the ocean? About ten times. He goes to Europe every year.

11. Do you like arithmetic? I understand the four rules of arithmetic.

12. Twelve and twelve make twenty-four.

13. Are there any pupils that have no copy-books? I have none. There is one for you. There are three more that have no copy-books. That makes four.

14. Twenty pupils out of twenty-six have passed the examination.

#### VOCABULARY

The centime, **le centime.**

The coin, **la pièce.**

The Opera-House, **l'Opéra**  
(*masc.*)

Copper, **le cuivre.**

Gold, **l'or.**

Silver, **l'argent.**

The sou, **le sou.**

The five-franc piece, **la pièce**  
**de cinq francs.**

To cost, **coûter.**

## LESSON XXXV

## THE ORDINAL NUMBERS AND FRACTIONS

- |    |         |   |
|----|---------|---|
| 1. | First,  | premier (masc.), première (fem.).             |
|    | Second, | deuxième <i>or</i> second (m.), seconde (f.). |
|    | Third,  | troisième.                                    |
|    | Fourth, | quatrième.                                    |
|    | Fifth,  | cinquième.                                    |
|    | Sixth,  | sixième.                                      |
|    | Ninth,  | neuvième.                                     |

The ordinal numbers are formed by adding *-ième* to the cardinals.

- a. **Premier** and **second** are exceptions.
- b. The *c* in **second** has the sound of *g*.
- c. **Second** is properly used when there are only two.
- d. In adding *-ième*
  - the final *e* of **quatre** is dropped,
  - the *f* of **neuf** is changed to *v*,
  - u* is inserted after the *q* of **cinq**.

2. Twenty-first, **vingt-et-unième**.

**Premier** is used for *first* only. Occurring after *twenty, thirty, etc.*, **unième** is used for *first*.

- |    |                 |                                  |
|----|-----------------|----------------------------------|
| 3. | The half,       | La moitié.                       |
|    | The third,      | Le tiers ( <i>r</i> pronounced). |
|    | The two-thirds, | Les deux tiers.                  |
|    | The fourth,     | Le quart.                        |
|    | Three-fourths,  | Les trois quarts.                |
|    | One-fifth,      | Un cinquième.                    |

From *one-fifth* on, the fractions are denoted by the ordinal numbers.

## 4. Days of the week.

le dimanche,	<i>Sunday.</i>	le jeudi,	<i>Thursday.</i>
le lundi,	<i>Monday.</i>	le vendredi,	<i>Friday.</i>
le mardi,	<i>Tuesday.</i>	le samedi,	<i>Saturday.</i>
le mercredi,	<i>Wednesday.</i>		

The article is dropped before the days of the week when either "last" or "next" may be understood before the name of the day.

Monday he went to visit his father. **Lundi** il est allé visiter son père.

He will be here on Friday. Il sera ici **vendredi**.

But

He comes to give my son a lesson Monday, Wednesday, and Friday of each week. Il vient donner une leçon à mon fils, **le lundi, le mercredi et le vendredi** de chaque semaine.

## 5. Months of the year.

janvier,	<i>January.</i>	juillet,	<i>July.</i>
février,	<i>February.</i>	août,	<i>August.</i>
mars,	<i>March.</i>	septembre,	<i>September</i>
avril,	<i>April.</i>	octobre,	<i>October.</i>
mai,	<i>May.</i>	novembre,	<i>November.</i>
juin,	<i>June.</i>	décembre,	<i>December.</i>

All these nouns are masculine, and all are written with a small letter.

6. He arrived in February. Il est arrivé **en février**.

He arrived on the first of May. Il est arrivé **le premier mai**.

We arrived on the same day. Nous sommes arrivés **le même jour**.

He started on Tuesday. Il est parti **mardi**.

**On** is not translated in expressions of time.

**Of** is not translated in dates.

7. The eleventh of Decem- Le onze décembre (see § 69, 3).  
ber.

The fourth of July. Le quatre juillet.

Premier is used for the first of each month.

For any other date use a cardinal number.

8. Napoleon I. Napoléon I<sup>er</sup> (*premier*).  
Charles IX. Charles neuf.

After the *first*, cardinal numbers are used with names of popes, kings, emperors, etc.

### EXERCISE

1. Y a-t-il quelque rapport entre le nom du jour mardi, et le nom du mois mars? Mais oui, naturellement. N'avez-vous point entendu parler du dieu Mars? C'est ainsi que le lundi est le jour de la lune, et que le mercredi est celui du dieu Mercure. Le jeudi est le jour de Jupiter et le vendredi celui de Vénus.

2. Trente est la dixième partie de trois cents.

Sept est le tiers de vingt-et-un.

Les deux tiers de ces fruits sont pourris.

Il est absent les trois quarts du temps.

3. Mardi prochain, c'est le dernier jour du mois.

Mardi dernier nous étions tous ensemble. Aujourd'hui nous sommes tous séparés les uns des autres.

4. La dernière semaine de notre séjour était la plus agréable de toutes.

Le dernier mois de l'année c'est décembre. Chez les Romains c'était le mois de février.

J'ai reçu cette lettre le mois dernier.

5. La fête nationale a lieu le 14 juillet.

Noël arrive le 25 décembre.

Le jour de l'an est aussi une grande fête dans tous les pays.

Le printemps finit le 21 juin.



6.

Paris, le 6 avril, 1901.

Mon cher ami :

Si votre soirée n'est pas prise, venez dîner avec nous demain soir à six heures. Mon père a une loge pour le Théâtre-Français. Tâchez donc de venir. Rappelez-moi au bon souvenir de tous et croyez-moi

Votre bien dévoué,

HENRI BLANC.

## VOCABULARY

le rapport, <i>the connection,</i>	ainsi, <i>thus.</i>
<i>relation.</i>	pourrir, <i>to rot.</i>
le nom, <i>the name, the noun.</i>	les uns des autres, <i>from one</i>
ensemble (adv.), <i>together.</i>	<i>another.</i>
le séjour, <i>the stay, sojourn.</i>	la fête, <i>the feast, holiday.</i>
avoir lieu, <i>to take place.</i>	Noël, <i>Christmas.</i>
le lieu, <i>the place, locality.</i>	Le jour de l'an, <i>New Year's</i>
le printemps, <i>spring.</i>	<i>day.</i>
tâcher, <i>to endeavor, try.</i>	la loge, <i>the box (in a theater).</i>
le souvenir, <i>the recollection,</i>	rappeler, <i>to recall.</i>
<i>remembrance.</i>	dévoué, <i>devoted.</i>
chez, <i>among.</i>	

NOTE.—6. **Rappelez-moi au bon souvenir de.** This corresponds to the English *remember me kindly*. **Votre dévoué** corresponds to *yours truly*.

*For Translation*

1. There are more than thirty pupils in the class, and nine times out of ten John is first. The teacher says he is the best pupil in the class. (See Lesson XXII.)

2. When did you arrive? We arrived on the first of the month. This year we arrived earlier (*plus tôt*) than usual (*à l'ordinaire*). We have been to Europe (*en Europe*) twice. The first time we passed the whole summer in England, the second time we visited Paris. I visited Paris for the first time in 1889.

3. Open your book at the twenty-first page. Copy the first eight (*les huit premières*) sentences.



4. This is the first time I have seen your brother. This is the second time you have lost that ring.

5. September is the ninth month of the year, October is the tenth, November is the eleventh, and December is the twelfth. The names of these months prove that with the Romans March was the first month.

Sunday is the first day of the week. Saturday is the seventh day of the week.

6. My father had four children. I was the fourth child and the third son.

7. Which is to-day's lesson? Have you studied the thirty-fifth lesson?

8. The teacher found mistakes in half of my sentences. He did not praise my exercise.

9. The first three chairs are too high. They are higher than the others.

10. The last time I was sick was (*c'était*) last winter. I went out for the first time on the 23d of March.

11. Louis XIV reigned seventy-two years, from 1643 to 1715.

12. Louis XVI died on the scaffold on the 21st of January, 1793.

13. Napoleon I became Emperor of the French on the 18th of May, 1804.

14. The Third Republic was proclaimed on the 4th of September, 1870.

15. We have a vacation between Christmas and New Year's.

#### VOCABULARY

A mistake,	<i>une faute.</i>	A scaffold,	<i>un échafaud.</i>
To proclaim,	<i>proclamer.</i>	The republic,	<i>la république.</i>

NOTES.—3. The French say *les deux premiers*, not *les premiers deux*, as the English student might expect. 15. Do not forget that *vacation* is rendered by a plural noun.

## LESSON XXXVI

## 1. THE FUTURE INDICATIVE OF THE THREE CONJUGATIONS:

Porter.		Finir.		Rendre.
je porterai,	I shall carry.	je finirai,	je rendrai,	
tu porteras,	thou wilt carry.	tu finiras,	tu rendras,	
il portera,	he will carry.	il finira,	il rendra,	
nous porterons,	we shall carry.	nous finirons,	nous rendrons,	
vous porterez,	you will carry.	vous finirez,	vous rendrez,	
ils porteront,	they will carry.	ils finiront.	ils rendront.	

NOTE.—The future of French verbs was formed originally by combining the present indicative of **avoir** with the infinitive. **Je porterai** is for **je porter-ai**, *I have to carry*, therefore, *I shall carry*. The *av* has disappeared in the first and second plural, originally *porter-avons*, *finir-avez*.

2. The future indicative is formed from the infinitive by adding the endings **ai, as, a, ons, ez, ont**.

Final **e** of the infinitive is dropped.

As every infinitive ends in **r** or **re**, all future verbs end in **rai, ras, ra, rons, rez, ront**.

3. Who is there?	Qui est là?
I.	Moi.
Is it thou? (Is it you?)	Est-ce toi?
I am taller than he.	Je suis plus grand que lui.
Go with her.	Allez avec elle.
These flowers are for them.	Ces fleurs sont pour eux.

**Je, tu, il, ils**, are only used as subject of a verb, and in connection with a verb.

## 4. THE STRESSED PERSONAL PRONOUNS

I, me,	moi.	we, us,	nous.
thou, thee,	toi.	you,	vous.
he, him,	lui.	they, them,	eux (m.).
she, her,	elle.	they, them,	elles (f.).

These pronouns are often called *disjunctive*, because they are used when *not* joined to a verb.

When we say *je porte, j'ai, il va*, there is no stress on the pronoun. When the pronoun is *j'* this is especially evident. But suppose special stress or emphasis required, *I went there, but he stayed at home*, then a stress-pronoun is used: **Moi, j'y suis allé, mais lui est resté à la maison.**

These stress-pronouns are used :

a. When emphasis is wanted. In this case **moi, je**, are used together, and must *not* be translated *I, I*.

b. When the verb of which the pronoun is subject is omitted.

c. With prepositions.

5.	To my house,	chez moi.
	At her house,	chez elle.
	To our uncle's,	chez notre oncle.
	At M. Faure's,	chez M. Faure.
	Among the Romans,	chez les Romains.
	At his house,	chez lui.
	To their house,	chez eux.
	At the butcher's,	chez le boucher.
	To Louisa's,	chez Louise.
	Among the living,	chez les vivants.

**Chez** is a preposition.

#### EXERCISE

1. Vous dînez avec nous, n'est-ce pas? Louis et moi, nous resterons à dîner, mais Victor est invité ailleurs. Il regrettera beaucoup de ne pas être des nôtres.

2. Vous n'oublierez pas de mettre ma lettre à la poste. Il y a une boîte aux lettres au coin.

3. Les fruits ne mûriront pas si cette pluie continue. Les fruits ne mûrissent pas quand il n'y a pas de soleil.

4. Toi et ton frère, vous étudierez jusqu'à quatre heures et alors vous sortirez avec moi.

5. Vous noircirez vos mains si vous touchez cette machine.

6. Je suis sûr que François rendra cet argent à la fin du mois.

7. Monsieur et Madame Ardin arriveront ce soir. Lui est très gai. Il amusera tout le monde. Elle est tout le contraire de son mari, elle ne dit jamais un mot.

8. Mes frères n'étant pas prêts, je suis parti sans eux.

9. J'ai fait bien des visites cette après-midi. J'ai été d'abord chez Madame Bourget, et de chez elle je suis allée chez sa sœur. Celle-ci était sur le point d'aller chez Louise, de sorte que nous sommes sorties ensemble. Après d'autres visites j'ai été chez ma couturière, puis j'ai fait des emplettes, et à six heures je suis rentrée chez moi, très fatiguée.

10. Nous attendons le facteur à tout moment. Voilà, on sonne. Je crois que c'est lui. Est-ce le facteur, Henriette? Oui, madame, c'est lui. Il apporte une lettre pour vous.

11. Les autres assisteront au mariage. Moi, je suis obligé de partir le 20. Je manquerai donc la cérémonie.

12. Ton père et ton oncle ne sont pas de notre avis. Selon eux, nous perdrons tout, si nous risquons notre argent dans cette affaire. Ni toi ni moi, nous n'avons eu assez d'expérience pour agir sans eux.

13. Chez les Chinois, c'est l'usage de déformer les pieds des petites filles.

#### VOCABULARY

ailleurs, *elsewhere*.

mûrir, *to ripen*.

noircir, *to blacken*.

le contraire, *the opposite*.

faire des emplettes, *to go shopping*.

le facteur, *the postman*.

assister à, *to be present at*.

l'avis (m.), *the opinion*.

la poste, *the post-office*.

mettre à la poste, *to mail*.

la boîte aux lettres, *the letter-box*.

une après-midi, *an afternoon*.

la couturière, *the dressmaker*.

fatigué, *tired*.

sonner, *to sound, to ring the bell*.

NOTES.—1. **Ne pas être.** **Pas** is usually placed before the infinitive.

3. **Mûrir.** 5. **Noircir.** Verbs are frequently formed from adjectives by means of the suffix **-ir**. **Grossir**, *to enlarge, to magnify*; **rougir**, *to blush*; **grandir**, *to grow tall*, are examples.

1, 4, 12. When the subjects are different grammatical persons, they are usually summed up by **nous** if one of them is of the first person, otherwise by **vous**.

2, 4. The **e** mute in such futures as **j'oublierai** is completely silent.

9. **Celle-ci.** *The latter* is expressed in French by **celui-ci, celle-ci, ceux-ci, celles-ci.** (*The former* would be **celui-là, celle-là, etc.**)

12. The **n** of **selon** is never linked.

#### VERB FORMS

- |                     |                    |
|---------------------|--------------------|
| 1. I shall arrive.  | 2. Thou wilt wait. |
| We shall bring.     | Will she wait?     |
| They will act.      | Shall we not wait? |
| 3. He will beat.    | 4. We shall copy.  |
| They will build.    | He will forget.    |
| Will they build?    | Will they forget?  |
| 5. You will go out. | 6. He will cure.   |
| Will he enter?      | You will punish.   |
| He will enter.      | They will choose.  |

7. Is it you? It is I. Is it John? It is he. Are you taller than I? I am taller than she. You are taller than they. You are not taller than he.

8. Come with me. I will work with thee. These flowers are for him. Go without her this time. Come with us. Didn't Louis go with you? Josephine and Mary are upstairs; their aunt is with them. Louis and Charles were not ready; I started without them.

9. My sister went to the park, I stayed at home. He likes music, but they don't like music.

10. Did they go to your house, or did you go to their house? We went to my uncle's. Come to-morrow to my house.

11. At which baker's did you buy that bread? We buy the bread every day at Roussel's.

12. You and your brother will carry this fruit to your aunt's.

13. The rain will ruin the fruit. It will not ripen.

14. Louise made several visits to-day. First she went to the dressmaker's, and from there she went to her cousin's. Her cousin had gone out. Then she went to Mme. Bourget's. She came home an hour ago.

15. My brother and I are waiting for the postman. I shall not wait any longer.

16. You will lose everything if you risk your money in that affair.

17. Will your friend be present at the wedding? No; he will miss the ceremony; he will arrive too late.

18. We shall pay back that money at the end of the week.

19. Your mother and I are not of your opinion. You have not had sufficient experience to act alone in this matter.

NOTES.—13. *To ruin* is **ruiner**. Use the plural in translating *fruit*.

15. *Longer* is here **plus longtemps**.

## LESSON XXXVII

### 1. FUTURE OF **Avoir** :

j'aurai (§ 19, 3),  
tu auras,  
il aura,  
nous aurons,  
vous aurez,  
ils auront.

### FUTURE OF **Être** :

je serai,  
tu seras,  
il sera,  
nous serons,  
vous serez,  
ils seront.

### 2. FUTURE ANTERIOR OF **Avoir** :

j'aurai eu,  
tu auras eu, etc.

### FUTURE ANTERIOR OF **Être** :

j'aurai été,  
tu auras été, etc.



## 3. FUTURE ANTERIOR OF

**Finir :**

j'aurai fini,  
tu auras fini,  
il aura fini,  
nous aurons fini,  
vous aurez fini,  
ils auront fini.

## FUTURE ANTERIOR OF

**Aller :**

je serai allé,  
tu seras allé,  
il sera allé,  
nous serons allés,  
vous serez allés,  
ils seront allés.

4. This compound future, rarely used in English in subordinate clauses, is regularly employed in French when the meaning calls for it.

5. When you have finished your exercises, you will carry your copy-book to your teacher. Quand vous **aurez fini** vos exercices, vous porterez votre cahier à votre maître.

As soon as you reach Paris, telegraph to your mother. Dès que vous **serez** à Paris, télégraphiez à votre mère.

After a conjunction of time use the future or future anterior in referring to future time.

## SOME CONJUNCTIONS OF TIME

quand, *when*.

lorsque, *when*.

pendant que, *while*.

dès que, *as soon as*.

aussitôt que, *as soon as*.

tant que, *as long as*.

## 6. PRES. PART. OF

**Avoir :**

ayant, having.

## PRES. PART. OF

**Être :**

étant, being.

## COMPOUND PART. OF

**Avoir :**

ayant eu, having had.

## COMPOUND PART. OF

**Être :**

ayant été, having been.

So we have the Compound Participles :

ayant porté, ayant fini, ayant rendu, étant allé, étant venu.



7. PAST INFINITIVE OF PAST INFINITIVE OF  
Avoir : Être :

avoir eu, to have had. avoir été, to have been.

So we have the Past Infinitives :

avoir porté, avoir fini, avoir rendu, être allé, être venu.

EXERCISE

1. Nous aurons le temps d'aller et de revenir bien vite.  
2. Je serai content quand ma mère sera de retour. Puis, tu seras là, toi aussi. Ce sera très beau ! Nous serons tous réunis encore une fois.

3. Ce vaurien sera toujours le même ; il ne changera jamais.

4. Vous n'entendrez jamais plus parler de cette affaire.

5. Pendant que vous chercherez ces mots dans le dictionnaire je recopierai cette page. Elle est trop mal écrite.

6. Si vous réfléchissez un peu, vous trouverez qu'il n'est pas nécessaire de chercher tant de mots dans le dictionnaire. Dès que vous tombez sur un mot nouveau vous courez au dictionnaire, et, puisque chaque mot a plusieurs significations vous choisissez au hasard. Un mot est souvent expliqué par le contexte. A l'avenir n'ouvrez le dictionnaire que lorsque vous aurez essayé de comprendre par le contexte. Vous gagnerez du temps et vous ne perdrez pas patience comme vous faites à présent.

7. Je serai à New York dans trois mois.

8. On fait la traversée en six jours.

9. Nous serons avec vous dans un instant.

10. En un clin d'œil il avait disparu.

11. Dès ce jour il n'était plus le même homme. Désormais il sera plus prudent.

12. Dès qu'ils auront vendu leur maison ils partiront pour la ville.

13. Voulez-vous des pommes de terre? Aurez-vous le temps de faire une commission pour moi?

14. Ayant terminé ma tâche j'étais libre de partir. Étant malade, elle n'est pas sortie ce jour-là.

## VOCABULARY

un avenir, <i>a future.</i>	le vaurien, <i>the good-for-nothing.</i>
le clin d'œil, <i>the twinkling of an eye.</i>	courir (irregular verb), <i>to run.</i>
désormais, <i>henceforth, hereafter.</i>	expliquer, <i>to explain.</i>
faire une commission, <i>to do an errand.</i>	libre, <i>free.</i>
au hasard, <i>at random.</i>	être de retour, <i>to be back.</i>
le retour, <i>the return.</i>	réunir, <i>to reunite.</i>
ouvrez (imperative), <i>open.</i>	la traversée, <i>the crossing, trip across.</i>
dès (prep. of time), <i>from.</i>	la tâche, <i>the task.</i>
	la pomme de terre, <i>the potato.</i>

NOTES.—3. **Vaurien**—Il vaut means *he is worth* (verb **valoir**); rien, *nothing*.

4. **Parler** is direct object of **entendrez**. The English construction is like it if we say *hear tell*.

7, 8, 9, 10. **Dans un mois** means *at the end of a month, a month from now*. **En un mois** means *taking up a whole month*.

11. **Dès** marks a beginning. **Dès ce moment**, *from that moment on*.

13. **Voulez-vous**? may be translated *will you have?* but the real meaning is, of course, *do you wish?* **Aurez-vous**? is *will you have?* referring to future time.

*For Translation*

1. We shall be very glad when you get back. Then Louis will be here too. It will be very fine, won't it? The whole family will be reunited once more.

2. While you study your lessons I shall go out. I have a few errands to do (*à faire*). I shall be back in an hour.

3. I shall copy this page again. It is very badly written.

4. You look for too many words in the dictionary. Nearly every word has several meanings. Try, therefore, to

understand the words by the context. Do not open the dictionary until you have tried to understand by the context.

5. Next summèr I shall not work as I am doing now. He says that next summer he will not work as he is doing now. We shall not work as we are doing now, either.

6. I shall answer Louis' letter when I have had an answer from my father.

7. My exercise is full of mistakes. In future I shall try to do better.

8. We went from New York to Chicago in twenty-four hours. We made the crossing from Cherbourg to New York in less than six days. I shall be in Paris in three weeks. I'll be with you in a moment.

9. Will you have some butter? No, thank you. Won't you have a little more meat? If you please. Will you have time to write that letter this evening? I wrote to Louis this morning as soon as I got home.

10. Having finished our task, we were free to go (*partir*).

11. From to-morrow on he will be in the other class. From to-day on you will remain in this class. Henceforward you and I will be more careful.

12. As soon as you finish your exercise bring me your copy-book.

13. The doctor says that as long as my father lives in the city he will not get well. As soon as we sell our house we shall start for the country.

14. Shall I have time to go and get back before three o'clock?

---

## LESSON XXXVIII

### 1. PRESENT INDICATIVE OF THE IRREGULAR VERB

**Voir**, to see.

<i>je vois,</i>	<i>I see.</i>	<i>nous voyons,</i>	<i>we see.</i>
<i>tu vois,</i>	<i>thou seest.</i>	<i>vous voyez,</i>	<i>you see.</i>
<i>il voit,</i>	<i>he sees.</i>	<i>ils voient,</i>	<i>they see.</i>

2. I see thee,	Je <b>te</b> vois.	Do you see my	Voyez-vous
I see him,	Je <b>le</b> vois.	book?	mon livre?
I see her,	Je <b>la</b> vois.	I see it,	Je <b>le</b> vois.
He sees me,	Il <b>me</b> voit.	Do you see my	Voyez-vous
He sees you,	Il <b>vous</b> voit.	pen?	ma plume?
I respect	Je <b>me</b> re-	I don't see it,	Je ne <b>la</b> vois
myself,	specte.		pas.
He respects	Il <b>se</b> respecte.	Do you see us?	<b>Nous</b> voyez-
himself,			vous?
We respect	Nous <b>nous</b>	We see you,	Nous <b>vous</b>
ourselves.	respectons.		voyons.
		Do you see	<b>Les</b> voyez-
		them?	vous?
		I see them.	Je <b>les</b> vois.

*a.* The personal pronoun, when it is the direct object of the verb, is placed before the verb.

(Exceptions are given farther on.)

*b.* These pronouns are unstressed or conjunctive pronouns. They are without emphasis, and not used apart from the verb.

*c.* The case of a noun or pronoun, direct object of a verb, is called the **Accusative Case**.

NOTE.—Nouns, in French, have no special forms for cases.

### 3. TABLE OF CONJUNCTIVE OR UNSTRESSED PERSONAL PRONOUNS ACCUSATIVE

	SING.	PLURAL.
First person,	<b>me</b>	<b>nous</b>
Second person,	<b>te</b>	<b>vous</b>
Third person masc.,	<b>le</b>	<b>les</b>
Third person fem.,	<b>la</b>	<b>les</b>
Third person reflexive,	<b>se</b>	<b>se</b>

4.	Look at me,	Regardez-moi.
	Look at thyself,	Regarde-toi.
	Look at him,	Regardez-le.
	Look at her,	Regardez-la.
	Look at us,	Regardez-nous.
	Look at you,	Regardez-vous.
	Let us look at them,	Regardons-les.

When the verb is imperative affirmative the accusative pronouns are placed after it. **Moi** and **toi** are used in this case.

5.	Do not look at him,	Ne le regardez pas.
	Let us not look at them,	Ne les regardons pas.
	Do not look at me,	Ne me regardez pas.

The pronouns with a negative imperative are placed according to the general rule.

6. **Le, la**, offer the only separate forms for gender among all the unstressed pronouns.

### EXERCISE

1. Si je ferme la porte vous l'ouvrez et si je la laisse ouverte vous la fermez.

2. Aide-toi, le ciel t'aidera. Traduisez cette phrase littéralement, et puis donnez-lui la forme du proverbe anglais.

3. Toutes ces choses le rendaient fou.

4. La porte était entr'ouverte, il n'eut qu'à la pousser pour entrer.

5. Louise, avez-vous les ciseaux? Oui, je les ai. Eh bien, quand vous aurez fini de couper cette soie, donnez-les à Jeanne.

6. Voulez-vous nous accompagner au théâtre ce soir? Je serai enchanté de vous accompagner.

7. Aujourd'hui le maître va nous interroger sur le futur des verbes. Il m'a grondé l'autre jour, parce que je ne travaillais pas assez. Est-ce que vous n'apprenez pas les terminaisons des verbes? Les trouvez-vous si difficiles? Eh bien, cette fois je vais les apprendre par cœur.

8. Dès qu'il eut sept ans sa mère l'envoya à l'école. Dès qu'ils eurent sept ans leurs parents les envoyèrent à l'école.

9. Voilà un morceau de craie. Prenez-le. Effacez ces phrases, et écrivez celle-ci. Écrivez-la plus bas. Quel est le sujet de la phrase? Soulignez-le. Où est le verbe? Écrivez le futur de ce verbe en entier. L'avez-vous écrit? Dites-moi les terminaisons du futur. Soulignez-les.

10. Je vous prie de me laisser. Je suis trop fatigué pour sortir aujourd'hui. Vous m'obligerez beaucoup en me laissant ici.

11. Cette dame, je la vois souvent. Je la vois souvent, cette dame. Elle ne m'a pas vu, moi; toi, elle t'a vu.

12. Nous voyez-vous? Nous vous voyons. Écoutez-nous. Nous écoutez-vous? Ne nous écoutez-vous pas? Ne l'écoutez-vous pas? Ne l'écoutez pas.

## VOCABULARY

aider, *to help.*

le ciel, *heaven (the sky).*

les ciseaux (m.), *the scissors.*

le cœur, *the heart.*

entr'ouvert, *partly open, ajar.*

gronder, *to scold.*

pousser, *to push.*

couper, *to cut.*

la craie, *the chalk.*

une école, *a school.*

en entier, *complete.*

enchanter, *to delight.*

interroger, *to question.*

souligner, *to underline.*

NOTES.—3. **Rendre** followed by an adjective is often translated *to make.*

4. **Pour entrer**: **pour** with an infinitive expresses purpose; *in order to.*

5. *To finish doing* is **finir de faire.**

6. *Delighted to do*: **enchanté de faire.**



7. **Interroger sur:** *to question about.*

10. **En me laissant:** *by leaving me.*

11. These sentences show that in French the object may be expressed twice. Whenever a noun object *precedes* the subject it is inserted again before the verb as a pronoun. This pleonasm is frequent in ordinary speech.

12. Practice is necessary to recognize quickly whether **nous** or **vous** is subject or object in the various interrogative and imperative forms.

*For Translation*

1.

Paris, Sept. 29, 1900.

My Dear Friend: Enclosed (*ci-joint*) you will find my brother's address (*adresse*). We hope you will have time to visit him while you are in London.<sup>1</sup> He will be delighted to see you. We had a letter from him two or three weeks ago. He says he will stay in London until the first of November. I beg you to excuse me if my letter is rather short. We are very busy to-day.

Believe me always,

Yours very truly,

---

2. Do not close the door; leave it<sup>2</sup> open. Do not open the door; leave it closed. Close it. Open it. Don't close it. Don't open it. Have you opened the windows in my room? No. Well, don't open them.

3. Come here, Charles. Help me a little. Charles always helps me. Have you the scissors? No; Mary has them. Mary, haven't you finished cutting that paper yet? No; I shall have finished in a moment. Where did you put the scissors?

4. I am going to question you on the future of French verbs. What are the terminations of the future of all French verbs? Write them. Now read them. Recite the future of *entendre*.

5. Do you hear me? I hear you. Did you hear him?



I heard him. Do they hear us? They do not hear us. We hear you.

6. Have you a piece of chalk? There is one. Write this sentence in French. Write it higher up. Tell me the subject of the sentence.

7. You will oblige us greatly by sending the flowers to Madame Charvet's before six.

8. Leave me, I beg you. Leave us. He is ill; do not leave him.

9. If you want these books, take them. Those pens belong to my brother; do not take them. He scolded me the other day because I had taken one of his pens.

10. Nobody sees us. Nobody saw him. Nobody heard you.

11. Do you hear the music? I don't hear it. I hear it now. Let us listen to this piece. Listen to it. That lady sings admirably. Let us listen to her.

NOTES.—1. Londres. 2. *No elision.*

## LESSON XXXIX

### 1. PRESENT CONDITIONAL OF THE THREE CONJUGATIONS

je porterais,	I should	je finirais,	je rendrais,
	carry.		
tu porterais,	thou wouldst	tu finirais,	tu rendrais,
	carry.		
il porterait,	he would	il finirait,	il rendrait,
	carry.		
nous porterions,	we should	nous finirions,	nous rendrions,
	carry.		
vous porteriez,	you would	vous finiriez,	vous rendriez,
	carry.		
ils porteraient,	they would	ils finiraient.	ils rendraient.
	carry.		

## 2. MEANING OF THE CONDITIONAL

The Conditional mode has two chief uses.

a. It denotes the conclusion in a conditional sentence.

Example :

If I were strong enough, I	Si j'étais assez fort je le por-
should carry it for you.	terais pour vous.

b. It is used with a past tense in quoting the future.

Example :

<b>Future.</b>	He says that he will	Il dit qu'il le portera
	carry it for you.	pour vous.
<b>Conditional.</b>	He said that he would	Il a dit qu'il le porte-
	carry it for you.	rait pour vous.

3. When the verb in the conclusion is in the conditional present, the verb in the supposition is in the imperfect indicative.

Example : Si j'étais, above.

4.	If he has time,	} S'il a le temps
	If he should have time,	
	he will finish his les-	il finira sa leçon cette après-
	son this afternoon.	midi.

If the conclusion is in the future tense, the verb in the supposition is in the present indicative.

## 5. FORMATION OF THE CONDITIONAL PRESENT

The Conditional is formed by adding the endings of the Imperfect Indicative to the Infinitive, dropping final *e* if there is one: -ais, -ais, -ait, -ions, -iez, -aient.

NOTE 1.—As every infinitive contains *r*, all conditionals have as final syllables -rais, -rais, -rait, -rions, -riez, -raient.

NOTE 2.—We see that in its formation, and in its original use (cf. 2. b. of this lesson), the conditional is a kind of past future, or future viewed from the past.

CAUTION.—Never use either the future or the conditional after *si* in a clause of supposition.

6. *Si* becomes *s'* before *il* and *ils*, and before *no other word*.

*Translate*

Il admire,	Nous célébrons,
Il admirait,	Nous célébrions,
Il admira,	Nous célébrâmes,
Il admirera,	Nous célébrerons,
Il admirerait,	Nous célébrerions.

7. **Would** and **should** are not always signs that the Conditional is to be used in French. For instance :

*He wouldn't go,* meaning *he did not wish to go,* Il n'a pas voulu aller.

*He would often try,* meaning *he tried repeatedly,* Il essayait souvent.

*He would never try,* meaning *he was never willing to try,* Il ne voulait jamais essayer.

*He shouldn't do that,* meaning *he ought not to do that,* il ne devrait pas faire cela.

*He said I shouldn't go,* meaning *he forbade me to go,* il m'a défendu d'y aller.

8. CONDITIONAL PRESENT OF

**AVOIR**

**ÊTRE**

j'aurais,	je serais,
tu aurais,	tu serais,
il aurait,	il serait,
nous aurions,	nous serions,
vous auriez,	vous seriez,
ils auraient,	ils seraient.

EXERCISE

1. Les petites filles parlaient entre elles. Si j'étais riche, moi, disait l'une d'elles, j'habiterais les Champs Élysées !

2. Il a dit qu'il ne répondrait pas à cette lettre.

3. Je croyais que nous aurions le temps d'aller et de revenir avant le départ du bateau.

4. Elle a répondu que tant qu'elle n'aurait pas la preuve certaine de la mort de son frère, elle continuerait à le croire vivant.

5. Nous avons dit que nous serions à Londres dans huit jours.

6. Le médecin a écrit à ma mère qu'aussitôt que Vincent serait guéri, lui, Vincent, retournerait chez nous.

7. Je croyais qu'après cette fâcheuse expérience il serait plus prudent.

8. C'était leur intention, dès qu'ils auraient vendu leur maison, de partir pour la capitale.

9. Si vous réfléchissiez un peu, vous changeriez d'avis, j'en suis sûr.

10. Pauvre garçon ! ses efforts n'ont abouti à rien ! J'étais sûr que ses efforts n'aboutiraient à rien.

11. Vous auriez été enchanté de voir le changement qu'il y a en lui.

12. Si vous vendiez ces articles à meilleur marché, vous ne perdriez rien, car vous vendriez beaucoup plus qu'à présent. Vos prix sont beaucoup trop élevés. Vous ne voulez pas me croire. Mais je suis sûr de ce que je dis.

13. Si nous partions demain matin par le premier train, à quelle heure est-ce que nous arriverions à Lyon ? Il n'y a qu'un seul express le matin. Avec celui-là vous arriveriez à quatre heures.

14. Quel âge donneriez-vous à mon beau-frère ? Je dirais qu'il a passé la trentaine. Vous devinez juste. Il a trente-et-un ans.

15. Si je chantais faux comme lui, je ne chanterais pas. Il ne sait pas qu'il chante faux. Il croit chanter juste.

## VOCABULARY

aboutir, <i>to terminate, to come to.</i>	le prix, <i>the price.</i>
deviner, <i>to guess.</i>	fâcheux, fâcheuse, <i>vexatious, unfortunate.</i>
le beau-frère, <i>the brother-in-law.</i>	Londres, <i>London.</i>
	la mort, <i>death.</i>
croire, <i>to believe, to think</i> (irregular verb).	la preuve, <i>the proof.</i>

NOTES.—1. **L'Avenue des Champs-Élysées** is one of the great streets of Paris. **Habiter** has a direct object.

3. Notice the repetition of the preposition **de** before each infinitive.

6. **Lui**, not *il*, because the pronoun is separated from the verb by the noun *Vincent*.

9. **Changer d'avis**: idiom meaning *to change one's mind*.

12. The comparative of **à bon marché** (cheap) is **à meilleur marché**.

14. **La trentaine**. The suffix **-aine** is added to many of the numbers. **Une douzaine** is *a dozen*; **une vingtaine**, *a score*; **une quarantaine**, *a set of forty*; **une centaine**, *a hundred or so*.

14, 15. **Juste, faux**, are here adverbs.

*For Translation*

1. I should pay back that money if I had it. I shall pay it back when I have it. You said you would pay it back this week.

2. We shall finish the work to-morrow. We should finish it to-day if we had all the materials. They said that they would finish the work to-morrow.

3. They admire that picture. Did you say you admired that picture? Your husband will admire it, I am sure. Didn't he admire it? I thought he would admire it.

4. We little boys were talking among ourselves. My father was listening to us. Frank said, "When I am a man I shall be a lawyer." Louis said he would be a baker.

5. When did they say they would be here? They said that they would be here before the end of the month. Read their letter. "We start from here on the 9th. We

shall be at your house before the end of the month, probably on the 29th."

6. The doctor said my mother would never get well if she continued to live in the city. As soon as spring comes we shall start for the mountains. We should start now if the weather were more agreeable.

7. My father said to Louis that he, Louis, would change his mind. He reflected a little, and he did change his mind.

8. We should be delighted to accompany you this evening. Unfortunately our evening is taken.

9. If we sold these things cheaper we should lose nothing, for we should sell much more than now. Are you sure of what you are saying? I am certain of it.

10. He guessed right the first time. How old did you think I was? How old would you take my father-in-law to be? I should say he has passed sixty. He will be sixty next month.

11. Your sister-in-law sings very well. She always sings in tune. If I sang as well as she, I should sing all the time.

12. I think you will be happy when you are at your father's once again. I thought you would be happy when you were at your father's once again.

13. The gentleman says the public will be admitted to the museum every day except Monday. He said the public would not be admitted Mondays.

14. We shall hear you if you speak louder. We should hear you if you spoke louder.

15. I am sure our troops will fight valiantly. I was sure our troops would fight valiantly.

#### VOCABULARY

The materials, *les matériaux*. Unfortunately, *malheureusement*.  
The weather, *le temps*.

## LESSON XL

- |                                     |   |
|-------------------------------------|---|
| 1. Did you take the letter?         | Avez-vous <b>pris</b> la lettre?                |
| My brother took it.                 | Mon frère l'a <b>prise</b> .                    |
| There is the sentence that I wrote. | Voilà la phrase que j'ai <b>écrite</b> .        |
| Did <i>you</i> write that sentence? | Est-ce vous qui avez <b>écrit</b> cette phrase? |

The past participle conjugated with **avoir** agrees in gender and number with the direct object of the verb, when the object *precedes* the verb.

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 2. This young girl, loved by all her friends. | Cette jeune fille, <b>aimée</b> de toutes ses amies. |
| The burned forts.                             | Les forts <b>brûlés</b> .                            |
| The burned towns.                             | Les villes <b>brûlées</b> .                          |

When the past participle merely relates to a noun, like an adjective, it agrees with that noun.

- |                                      |  |
|--------------------------------------|--|
| 3. The lady is here.                 | La dame est ici.                               |
| Here is the lady.                    | <b>Voici</b> la dame.                          |
| Where are our friends?               | Où sont nos amis?                              |
| There they are.                      | Les <b>voilà</b> .                             |
| There are seven chairs in this room. | <b>Il y a</b> sept chaises dans cette chambre. |
| There's your chair.                  | <b>Voilà</b> votre chaise.                     |

**Voici and Voilà**

These words are made of the imperative of **voir**, to see, and **ci** (*here*), **là** (*there*).

They differ from *est ici*, *est là*, and *il y a*, in that they point out some object seen or heard.



4. Geography, history, and Latin; these are my favorite studies. La géographie, l'histoire et le latin; voilà mes études favorites.

The definition is as follows. Voici la définition.

Voilà in connected discourse points to something preceding, voici to something coming.

### EXERCISE

1. J'ai retrouvé mes camarades tels que je les avais laissés.

2. Nous marchions dans un tourbillon de poussière, aveuglés.

3. Du pain bis, une tranche de viande ou de jambon et quelques oignons crus, voilà ce que nous avons mangé.

4. Voici les noms de ceux qui ont gagné des prix: Michel Rigny, Félicie Girard, et Jules Lagneau.

5. Le général nous a divisés en deux compagnies.

6. Comment! vous voilà Louise? Mais je vous croyais partie! Pourquoi donc n'êtes-vous pas partie avec les autres? C'est tout simplement parce qu'ils ne m'ont pas invitée, voilà tout!

7. Une des choses que j'ai apprises hier est celle-ci: Il y a un nom masculin, *le manche*, qui signifie *the handle*. On dit par exemple *un manche de balai*, *a broom-handle*. Puis il y a un nom féminin *la manche*, qui veut dire *the sleeve*. *La Manche* c'est le nom français de ce que les Anglais appellent *the English Channel*. *Cuffs* sont en français *des manchettes*, et *un manchon* s'appelle en anglais *a muff*. Ce sont tous des mots de la même famille.

8. Qui a ouvert cette porte? C'est moi qui l'ai ouverte. En quelle année Colomb a-t-il découvert l'Amérique? Il l'a découverte en 1492.

9. Où sont les pommes qui étaient là tout à l'heure?

C'est Louis qui les a prises, puis lui et moi nous les avons toutes mangées.

10. Il voulait savoir s'il y a des poissons dans ce lac. Voilà le poisson que j'ai pris. Voilà une anguille que j'ai prise.

11. Est-ce que Monsieur Guérin a accepté notre invitation? Je crois que oui. Louis, sais-tu si Monsieur Guérin a accepté l'invitation? Il ne l'a pas acceptée. Voici sa réponse. Je l'ai reçue ce matin.

## VOCABULARY

aveugler, <i>to blind.</i>	tout à l'heure, <i>just now,</i>
le pain bis, <i>brown bread, black bread.</i>	presently.
le balai, <i>the broom.</i>	une anguille, <i>an eel</i> (u silent, ll mouillées).
le jambon, <i>the ham.</i>	cru, <i>crue, raw.</i>
un oignon, <i>an onion</i> (see § 14, 2).	la manchette, <i>the cuff.</i>
le prix, <i>the prize, the price.</i>	la tranche, <i>the slice.</i>
le tourbillon, <i>the whirlwind</i>	la poussière, <i>the dust.</i>
(ll mouillées).	vouloir dire, <i>to mean.</i>

NOTES.—1. *Tel* is an adjective. Its forms are *tel, telle, tels, telles*. In the expression *tel que*, we generally translate *just as*. I will tell you the story just as I heard it, is translated *Je vous dirai l'histoire telle que je l'ai entendue*.

4. **Prix** means both *price* and *prize*.

8. Many proper nouns differ in the two languages. Christopher Columbus is **Christophe Colomb**.

9. **Tout à l'heure**. Used with a past tense this expression means *just now, a little while ago*. With a future tense it means *shortly, presently, in a little while*.

10. Do not confuse *le poison* and *le poisson*.

11. **Je crois que oui**. An idiom. *I think not*, is translated *je crois que non*.

10, 11. **Si** also means *whether* (if in the sense of *whether*).

*For Translation*

1. Has your brother received the letter he was waiting for? I think not. The postman brought only one letter this morning. Here is the letter he brought. It is for Louise, do you see?

2. Was it the doctor who was here a little while ago? I think so. Yes, John says it was he.

3. Have you caught many fish? We have caught six. They are all small. Here is the one I caught. There are the ones that Frank caught. Here is an eel that I caught.

4. Tell me the story just as you heard it. Did you find the house just as you had left it?

5. Who discovered America? Christopher Columbus discovered it in 1492.

6. Who opened these windows? I do not know who opened them. They were open when I came into the room.

7. We have received answers from all those gentlemen. We received them yesterday. They accept the invitation.

8. Do you know whether the maid has put those pens on my table? She says she put them in the little drawer.

9. Have you eaten onions? I ate a raw onion a little while ago. Have you any ham? We have some very good ham. Here is a fine slice.

10. My little brother has written a letter to our aunt. He wrote it all alone. He is only seven, you know. It isn't badly written.

11. We were blinded by the dust. She was blinded by the dust. They were marching in a whirl of dust.

12. Here's what we ate: a piece of bread and a few apples. It wasn't much.

13. I thought she was gone. Why didn't she go with the others? She says she was not invited.

14. Here is a thing I learned this morning. You know that Louis was sick yesterday. Well (*Eh bien*), it was because he had eaten some apples that were not ripe.

15. There are the two forts that the English burned.

16. How many sentences have you written? Which are the sentences which you have translated?

17. Everybody loved her. She died regretted by all her friends.

18. Where is my hat? Here it is. Where are my keys? There they are.

## LESSON XLI

1. He gives me a present every year. Il **me** donne un cadeau tous les ans.

What does he give you? Que **te** donne-t-il?

I gave him my watch. Je **lui** ai donné ma montre.

I gave her my watch. Je **lui** ai donné ma montre.

*a.* The personal pronoun, indirect object of the verb, is placed before the verb.

*b.* The case of such a pronoun is called the *Dative Case*. The English Dative pronouns sometimes have *to* before them, sometimes not. *I gave the watch to him*, or *I gave him the watch*.

### 2. TABLE OF CONJUNCTIVE OR UNSTRESSED PERSONAL PRONOUNS

#### DATIVE

	SING.	PLURAL.
First person,	<b>me</b>	<b>nous</b>
Second person,	<b>te</b>	<b>vous</b>
Third person,	<b>lui</b>	<b>leur</b>
Third person reflexive,	<b>se</b>	<b>se</b>

3. *Lui* as a disjunctive or stressed pronoun is masculine.

With him,	avec lui.	With her,	avec elle.
It is he,	c'est lui.	It is she,	c'est elle.

As a conjunctive pronoun it is of either gender.

4. *Leur* is either a personal pronoun, as above, or a possessive adjective or a possessive pronoun.

Their book,	leur livre.
Their friends,	leurs amis.
It is theirs,	c'est le leur.

5.	Give me,	Donnez-moi.
	Give him,	Donnez-lui.
	Give her,	Donnez-lui.
	Give us,	Donnez-nous.
	Show to them,	Montrez-leur.

The dative pronouns are placed *after* the Imperative Affirmative.

6. Do as you like.	Faites comme vous voudrez.
As you please.	Comme il vous plaira.
Give him what he asks for.	Donnez-lui ce qu'il demandera.

The future tense is used in dependent clauses when futurity is implied.

NOTES.—*a. je voudrai* is the future of *vouloir*.

*b. il vous plaira* means *it shall please you*.

7. He asked his father *for* a bicycle. Il a demandé une bicyclette à son père.

What did he ask you *for*? Que vous a-t-il demandé?

The person asked becomes in French the indirect object governed by *à*.

The thing asked *for* is the direct object of the verb *demandar*.

## EXERCISE

1. Maintenant que me voilà, qu'avez-vous à me dire?
2. Les voilà partis! Dieu sait quand nous les reverrons!
3. Voilà les fleurs qu'elle aime. Mettez-les dans le vase, là sur la cheminée.

4. Voici deux verbes qui demandent la préposition à devant leur complément: *obéir* et *répondre*.

5. Répétez-moi cette phrase.

6. Voyant que sa mère était très fatiguée—Prenez-moi le bras, lui dit-il.

7. J'ai demandé à ton frère une petite somme pour mes pauvres. Je le savais généreux, et j'étais sûr qu'il ne me refuserait pas ce que je lui demandais.

8. Le maître nous a lu les noms de ceux qui avaient été reçus à l'examen, et puis la liste de ceux qui auraient à passer un second examen avant d'être promus. François et moi, nous étions de ces derniers.

9. Il nous a demandé de lui envoyer de l'argent. Mon frère et moi, nous lui avons donné trois francs chacun.

10. Rapprochez votre chaise. Mon oncle va nous raconter une histoire.

11. Demandez-lui ce qu'il me veut; je suis très occupé en ce moment.

12. Voulez-vous sortir avec eux; ou aimez-vous mieux rester ici avec nous? Cela m'est parfaitement égal.

13. Ces deux garçons sont très heureux. Leur père leur a donné à chacun une bicyclette.

## VOCABULARY

le complément, <i>the complement, object.</i>	la cheminée, <i>the mantelpiece, chimney, smoke-stack.</i>
égal, égale, } <i>equal, even.</i>	parfait, parfaite, <i>perfect.</i>
égaux, égales, }	raconter, <i>to tell, narrate, relate, recount.</i>
rapprocher, <i>to draw up, bring near.</i>	la somme, <i>the sum.</i>

NOTES.—2. **Dieu** is here best translated *Heaven*. **Reverrons**; je **reverrai** is the future of *revoir*, to see again.

11. **Il me veut**. Here the English idiom is *of me*.

### EXERCISE

1. Now that we are here, what have you to say to us? What did he say to you? Do not ask me what he said to me.

2. I do not know whether I shall ever see him again. You will see him again, I am sure. Heaven knows whether we shall ever see her again.

3. The verb *obéir* requires the preposition *à* before its complement. John always obeys his parents. He always obeys them. Did the teacher tell you to translate all the French sentences at home? Yes. Did you obey him? Obey your mother. We always obey her. Obey my orders.

4. Your sister spoke to you. Answer her. I did answer her as soon as she spoke to me.

5. Repeat the question for me, please.

6. She took his arm. I took his arm. Did he take your arm?

7. We were talking with the officer. We asked him to give Louis permission to (*de*) go out for an hour or two.

8. Ask him for the books. Has he not given you back the books which you lent him? Did you ask your aunt for the money? I never ask her for anything.

9. Did he refuse you the permission you asked him for? I was sure he would not refuse you anything.

10. Read me the names of all the pupils. Now read me the names of all those who have passed the examination.

11. Nobody gave me anything. No one spoke to me. No one said anything to her. No one spoke to them.

12. Tell us a story. Did he tell you a story? Tell us the story just as he told it to the others. We drew up our chairs, and our uncle told us a charming story.

13. It is all the same to me. It is all the same to her. Is it all the same to you? It was all the same to them.



14. Did you ask your father for a bicycle? What did he answer? He says he will give me a bicycle next week.

15. Give him something. Don't give him anything. Don't ask him for anything, because he won't give you anything.

## VOCABULARY

An order, **un ordre.**

Charming, **charmant, charmante.**

## LESSON XLII

- |                           |                            |
|---------------------------|----------------------------|
| 1. He has given it to me. | Il <b>me</b> l'a donné.    |
| He has found your pen.    | Il a trouvé votre plume.   |
| He will give it to you.   | Il <b>vous</b> la donnera. |

When both a dative and an accusative pronoun are used before a verb, they are placed as in the following table, which the student is advised to learn by heart:

me le,	nous le,
me la,	nous la,
me les.	nous les.
te le,	vous le,
te la,	vous la,
te les.	vous les.
se le,	se le,
se la,	se la,
se les.	se les.
le lui,	le leur,
la lui,	la leur,
les lui.	les leur.

NOTE.—The forms with **se** are put here for completeness. The use of this reflexive pronoun will be explained later.

## 2.

## CONDITIONAL PAST

**FINIR****SORTIR**

j'aurais fini, *I should have finished.*

tu aurais fini,

il aurait fini,

nous aurions fini,

vous auriez fini,

ils auraient fini.

je serais sorti, *I should have gone out.*

tu serais sorti,

il serait sorti,

nous serions sortis,

vous seriez sorti(s),

ils seraient sortis.

3. If I had had the time  
I should have finished  
the book yesterday.

Si j'avais eu le temps  
j'aurais fini le livre hier.

We should have gone out this morning if the weather had been fine.

Nous serions sortis ce matin si le temps avait été beau.

a. The chief use of the conditional past is in connection with a supposition contrary to fact. (In the two sentences above we see that "*I had not time*" and that "*The weather was not fine.*")

b. When the verb in the conclusion is in the **Conditional Past**, the verb in the supposition is usually in the **Pluperfect Indicative**.

4. If he arrives on time  
he will accompany us.

S'il arrive à temps  
il nous accompagnera.

He said that

Il a dit que

if he should arrive on time

s'il arrivait à temps

he would accompany us.

il nous accompagnerait.

If he had arrived on time

S'il était arrivé à temps

he would have accompanied us.

il nous aurait accompagnés.

## EXERCISE

1. Si tu fais cette gageure, tu perdras ton argent.
2. Si j'ai le temps je copierai toute la leçon.
3. Louis a dit que s'il avait le temps il copierait toute la

leçon. Louis a dit que s'il avait eu le temps il aurait copié toute la leçon.

4. Ne vous l'ai-je pas dit? Elle serait arrivée il y a longtemps, si elle n'avait pas cru que nous allions chez elle.

5. Je n'aurais jamais osé le lui dire comme vous avez fait. Vous avez une façon de dire carrément aux gens ce que vous pensez. Au moins vous êtes franc! J'aurais été un peu vexé si vous étiez venu me parler de la sorte.

6. Nous vous aurions attendu si nous avions cru que vous alliez arriver. Pourquoi n'avez-vous pas envoyé un mot pour nous le dire?

7. Je ne leur aurais pas accordé cette permission. Pas à eux, je sais. Mais à moi? Ni à vous non plus.

8. Pourquoi est-ce qu'ils sont restés si longtemps? Je ne serais pas resté aussi longtemps à leur place. C'est moi qui les ai priés de rester.

9. Est-ce que cette lettre lui est parvenue? Oui, je la lui ai envoyée moi-même. Du reste, je sais par Frédéric qu'il l'a eue.

10. Qui vous a donné cette jolie bague? Mon père me l'a donnée.

11. Voyez-vous ces belles roses? C'est Monsieur Augier qui nous les a envoyées.

#### VOCABULARY

cru (past part. of <i>croire</i> ), <i>believed</i> .	la gageure, <i>the wager</i> (§ 22, 7).
carrément, <i>squarely, bluntly</i> .	la façon, <i>the way, manner</i> .
au moins, <i>at least</i> .	de la sorte, <i>in that way</i> .
du reste, <i>moreover</i> .	parvenu (past part. of <i>parvenir</i> ), <i>reached, come</i> .
oser, <i>to dare</i> .	

NOTES.—4. **Le** with **dire** and **penser** or **croire** is often expressed in English by *so*. *He said so, he thought so*, are translated *il l'a dit, il le croyait*.

7. Note that when the verb is omitted the dative pronoun is replaced by *à* + a stress-pronoun.

*For Translation*

1. Would they have?                      Would they give?  
       Would they have given?  
   Wouldn't you have?                  Wouldn't you give?  
       Would you not have given?  
   Will he have?                        Will he give?  
       Will he not give?  
   Should we give?                      Should we have?  
       Should we have given?  
   Should we not give?                Should we not have?  
       Should we not have given?

2. If I had the money, I should give it to you. If I had had the money, I should have given it to you. If you had the money, would you give it to him? If you had had the money, would you not have given it to him?

3. Those roses are Mary's. John gave them to her. That ring is mine. My father gave it to me. Take this pen. I give it to you. Lend me your pen. Did you lend him your pen? I lent it to him.

4. Who gave you those flowers? Lucien gave them to us. They asked me for the flowers. I gave them to them. Would you have given them to me if I had asked you for them?

5. We should not have stayed so long if Louis had not told us that his brother would arrive this afternoon.

6. The doctor came to-day. Who told you so? My mother told me so a moment ago.

7. If he has time he will visit us next week. If we had had time, we should have visited you last week. If she had had time, she would have visited us, wouldn't she? I think so. (*Translate to visit by rendre visite.*)

8. I try to be frank, but I should not dare to speak to people as you spoke to your friend yesterday. I told him what I thought; that is all. He asked me my opinion; I told it to him squarely.

9. He would have waited for you if he had thought you wished to go with us. Didn't you say this morning that you were going to stay home all day?

10. My brother has your pen. If you ask him for it he will give it back to you.

11. If the weather is fine I shall go out to-morrow. He told me that if the weather were fine he should go out to-morrow. The children would have gone out this morning if the weather had been fine.

12. If they arrive on time, they will accompany you. You would have accompanied us if you had arrived on time, wouldn't you?

### LESSON XLIII

1. Give it to me, **Donnez-le-moi.**

With the Imperative affirmative the pronouns follow the verb.

Donnez-le-moi,	Donnez-le-nous,
Donnez-la-moi,	Donnez-la-nous,
Donnez-les-moi,	Donnez-les-nous,
Donnez-le-lui,	Donnez-le-leur,
Donnez-la-lui,	Donnez-la-leur,
Donnez-les-lui,	Donnez-les-leur.

2. I must have, il faut que j'**aie**.  
I must be, il faut que je **sois**.

3. PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE OF  
**AVOIR**

j' <b>aie</b> ,	nous ayons,
tu a <b>ies</b> ,	vous ayez,
il a <b>it</b> ,	ils aient.

PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE OF  
**ÊTRE**

<b>je sois,</b>	<b>nous soyons,</b>
<b>tu sois,</b>	<b>vous soyez,</b>
<b>il soit,</b>	<b>ils soient.</b>

4. The Subjunctive mode has a variety of uses.
5. To translate *must* in the present tense, use the impersonal verb *il faut* followed by the conjunction *que* and the Subjunctive mode, present tense, of the verb in question.

He must have,	<i>il faut qu'il ait.</i>
She must not have,	<i>il ne faut pas qu'elle ait.</i>
Must we be?	<i>faut-il que nous soyons?</i>
Must you not be?	<i>ne faut-il pas que vous soyez?</i>

6. IMPERATIVE OF

**AVOIR**

**ÊTRE**

**aie, ayons, ayez.**

**sois, soyons, soyez.**

7. He turned his head toward the wall. *Il tourna la tête du côté du mur.*
- He turned his back on us. *Il nous tourna le dos.*
- His back was toward us. *Il nous tournait le dos.*

The Definite Article is used in French where the English usually has a possessive, when there is no doubt as to the possessor. This applies especially to parts of the body.

8. He is cutting the men's hair. *Il coupe les cheveux aux hommes.*
- He is cutting their hair. *Il leur coupe les cheveux.*

The Possessor is frequently indicated in such sentences by a *Dative*.

9. He will not fall ; he is      Il ne tombera pas ; il a le pied  
 sure-footed and cool-      sûr, et la tête froide.  
 headed.

The vulture has a curved      Le vautour a le bec recourbé.  
 beak.

The Definite Article is used after *avoir* before the noun in expressions of personal description.

## EXERCISE

1. Ayez la bonté de me passer le sucre.      Merci.

Ayons patience.      Il ne tardera pas à nous donner de ses nouvelles.

2. Pardonnez-lui sa faute.      Il vous a demandé pardon.  
 Il a demandé pardon à son père aussi.

3. Soyons polis envers tout le monde.

4. Cendrillon, tu trouveras six lézards dans le jardin, près du pommier ; apporte-les-moi.      Cendrillon les apporta, et la fée les changea en six laquais qui montèrent aussitôt sur le carrosse.

5. Ayez soin de ces verres.      Ne les laissez pas tomber. Mettez-les ici.      Donnez-les-moi un à un.      En voilà un que vous avez cassé.

6. Le prince descendit l'escalier pour recevoir Cendrillon, qui avait l'air d'une grande princesse.      Il lui donna la main pour descendre du carrosse.

7. Le notaire va dresser l'acte aujourd'hui.      Il faut que vous soyez là vous-même pour le signer.

8. Ma robe n'est-elle pas prête ?      Mais il faut absolument que je l'aie demain.      Envoyez-la-moi avant midi, sans faute.

9. Les mandarins portent les ongles très longs pour montrer qu'ils ne travaillent point.

10. Les gens qui habitent le nord de l'Europe ont les yeux bleus et les cheveux blonds, tandis que ceux qui habitent le midi ont les yeux et les cheveux noirs.



11. Le rhinocéros a la peau très épaisse et très dure.

12. Je vous remercie de votre bonté. Soyez sûr que je ne l'oublierai pas.

13. Ayez l'obligeance de me prévenir lorsque vous fixerez le jour de votre départ.

14. A quelle heure faut-il que nous soyons à la gare? Le train part à deux heures vingt. Soyez à la gare à deux heures dix.

15. Une balle lui a percé le cœur; sa mort a été instantanée.

### VOCABULARY

un acte, *an act, deed.*

le carrosse, *the carriage.*

dur, dure, *hard, tough.*

épais, épaisse, *thick.*

fixer, *to set, fix.*

le laquais, *the lackey.*

le lézard, *the lizard.*

un ongle, *a finger-nail.*

le sucre, *the sugar.*

la bonté, *the kindness, goodness.*

le verre, *the glass.*

Cendrillon, *Cinderella* (§ 52, 6).

demain, *to-morrow.*

dresser, *to draw up.*

la fée, *the fairy.*

l'obligeance (fem.), *kindness, politeness.*

prévenir, *to notify.*

remercier, *to thank.*

la robe, *the gown.*

tarder, *to delay, to be slow (in).*

tandis que, *whereas, while.*

NOTES.—1. **A nous donner.** Literally, it means *in giving us of his news*. **De ses nouvelles:** *in letting us hear from him.* **Idiom.** Hence *news of me* is **de mes nouvelles**.

2. **Pardonnez-lui.** The person forgiven is expressed by a Dative pronoun, or noun with **à**. The thing forgiven is the direct object of **pardonner**.

4. **Changer en.** After *change (changer) into* is rendered by **en**.

5. **Avoir soin:** Idiom; *to take care.*

8. **Sans faute,** *without fail.*

**Lo côté,** *the side.*

**De côté,** *aside.*

**A côté de,** *alongside of, beside.* **Du côté de,** *in the direction of.*

*For Translation*

1. Have the kindness to pass your brother the sugar. 2. Be patient. They will not be slow in letting us hear from them. Don't be anxious. Try to have patience. 3. Forgive your enemies. Ask your father's forgiveness. If you regret your fault he will forgive you for it. Has he asked your forgiveness? 4. You must always be polite to every one. 5. The fairy said to Cinderella, "Bring me six lizards. You will find them in the garden." Cinderella brought the lizards and the fairy changed them into footmen. 6. Cinderella arrived at the palace in her magnificent coach. She looked like a great princess. The prince came down the stairs to receive her. She alighted from her carriage and ascended the staircase with him. 7. My dress must be ready to-morrow morning. I must have it before noon. 8. The Greeks wore their hair long. To-day men wear their hair short. Why do the mandarins wear their finger-nails long? It is to show that they do not work. 9. The prince has blue eyes and blond hair. The peoples who inhabit the south of Europe have dark hair and eyes, while those who live in the north have light hair and blue eyes. 10. Take care of those books; they belong to the professor. Do not let them fall. 11. At what hour must we be there? We must all be there at ten o'clock. 12. Send the books to our house. We must have them this evening without fail. 13. The elephant has a very thick, tough hide. 14. I thank you with (*de*) all my heart for what you have done for me. 15. At what time must you have this dress? Send it to me at three o'clock. 16. The soldier had his back toward me. The soldier turned his back on me. 17. Cut my hair, if you please. He cut my little boy's hair this morning.

The elephant.

L'éléphant.

## LESSON XLIV

1. He sells them at three    Il les vend à trois francs la  
francs a dozen.                douzaine.  
That silk is worth twenty    Cette soie vaut vingt francs  
francs a meter.                le mètre.

Nouns of weight and measure with distributive sense have the Definite Article.

2. We have a French lesson    Nous avons une leçon de fran-  
five times a week.                çais cinq fois par semaine.

With nouns of time, **par** is usual in such sentences.

3. Half the army.                La moitié de l'armée.  
Two-thirds of the sol-    Les deux tiers des soldats.  
diers.

The Definite Article is used before the names of fractional parts.

4. Doctor Teissier has ar-    Le docteur Teissier est arrivé.  
rived.  
General Gallifet has re-    Le général Gallifet a donné  
signed.                        sa démission.

The Definite Article is used before a title and a proper name.

5. France is bounded on the    La France est bornée au midi  
south by the Pyrenees,    par les Pyrénées, qui la sépa-  
which separate it from    rent de l'Espagne.  
Spain.

Where is Lake Lemman?    Où est le lac Léman?  
Have you seen Vesuvius?    Avez-vous vu le Vésuve?

The Definite Article precedes the names of countries, states, provinces, large islands, lakes, mountains. (Exception below.)

6. In Germany.	<b>En</b> Allemagne.
To France.	<b>En</b> France.
The kingdom of Spain.	Le royaume d' <b>E</b> spagne.
French wine.	Du vin <b>de</b> France.
He comes from France.	Il vient <b>de</b> France.

After **en** before the name of a country there is no article. **En** is used only before names of countries which are feminine singular, and which are used without an adjunct.

After **venir de**, **arriver de**, etc., and when **de** + *the name of the country* equals an adjective, there is no article.

7. He is going to the United States.	Il va <b>aux</b> États-Unis.
Japan has become a great power.	<b>Le</b> Japon est devenu une grande puissance.
8. He opened the door, and, strange to relate, the room was empty.	Il ouvrit la porte, et, <b>chose singulière</b> , la chambre était vide.
Anne - Louise - Germaine Necker, the daughter of the banker, married Baron de Staël - Holstein, the Swedish ambassador to France.	Anne-Louise-Germaine Necker, <b>fil</b> le du banquier, épousa le baron de Staël-Holstein, <b>ambassadeur</b> de Suède en France.

A noun in apposition, or thrown in parenthetically, has no article.

9. The richer he becomes, the less generous he is.	<b>Plus</b> il devient riche, <b>moins</b> il est généreux.
--	---

There is no article with the comparatives in correlative clauses.

## EXERCISE

1. Chacune des grandes puissances européennes essaie d'étendre la sphère de son influence en Afrique et en Asie.

2. Il y a des animaux bien étranges en Australie. Le kangourou vient d'Australie.

3. Les États-Unis sont dans l'Amérique du nord. Le Brésil est le plus grand pays de l'Amérique du sud.

4. Plus on voyage, plus on étend ses connaissances.

5. Cette soie est très chère, ma sœur l'a payée cinquante francs le mètre.

6. Ce monsieur ne prend que deux repas par jour. Cela ne me suffirait pas, à moi.

7. J'ai été au Canada une fois lorsque j'ai visité les chutes du Niagara.

8. Est-ce le journal d'aujourd'hui? Y a-t-il des nouvelles de l'amiral Cervera?

9. Le docteur Lassalle arrivera de la campagne demain. Tu le consulteras, n'est-ce pas?

10. Le souverain de la Turquie s'appelle le sultan.

11. Quelle est la capitale de la Suisse? C'est Berne. Nous avons passé par Berne lors de notre dernier voyage en Suisse.

12. Élisabeth, fille du roi Henri VIII d'Angleterre, succéda à sa sœur Marie. Celle-ci avait épousé Philippe II, roi d'Espagne. Philippe, après l'avènement au trône de la reine Élisabeth, essaya de conquérir l'Angleterre. Sa flotte fut détruite dans la Manche par l'amiral Drake.

## VOCABULARY

l'avènement (m.), *the accession.* la connaissance, *knowledge,*  
détruit, détruite (past part.), *acquaintance.*

*destroyed.*

la chute, *the fall.*

étrange, *strange, queer.*

épouser, *to wed, marry.*

lors de, *at the time of.*

étendre, *to stretch, extend.*

le repas, *the meal.*

la flotte, *the fleet.*

le sud (d sounded), *the south.*

suffire, *to suffice, to be enough.*

l'Angleterre (f.), *England.*

la Suisse, *Switzerland.*

NOTES.—4. **Voyager** is *to travel*, whether by land or sea. So **un voyage** is either *a journey* or *a voyage*. **Travailler** is *to toil, to work*. **Une journée** is *a day*. **Connaissances** is here in the plural. Translate by the singular. Abstract nouns are often plural in French where the English requires the singular.

5. **l'a payée**, paid *for* it. The thing paid for is often the direct object of **payer**.

6. **à moi**; to emphasize a personal pronoun, it is repeated after the verb. A disjunctive pronoun is then used.

12. **Succéder**, to succeed, to come after. **Réussir**, to succeed, meaning *to have success*. **Succéder** requires **à**.

*For Translation*

1. How many hours do you work a day? We work seven hours a day. How many meals do you take a day? We take three.

2. How much does that silk cost a meter? It is worth fifteen francs a meter.

3. How many times a week do you have a French lesson? We have one every day except Saturday and Sunday. We have five lessons a week.

4. Half the house burned down. Two-thirds of the class were absent. A fourth of the army perished. Three-fourths of these pens are bad. Two of the generals resigned. General Grant became President of the United States.

5. France is bounded on the south by Spain; on the north it is bounded by the English Channel, which separates it from England. Germany is bounded on the south by Switzerland and Austria.

6. Vesuvius is in Italy. Italy is a kingdom. Rome is the capital of Italy. This wine comes from Italy.

7. When did you arrive in the United States? I came to the United States twenty-four years ago.

8. Have you ever visited Japan? It is a very interesting country. Japan is the land of flowers. When I visited Japan three years ago there was a war between Japan and China.



9. Canada is in North America. The Falls of Niagara are the greatest in the world. I visited them last summer. The more I looked at them, the greater they seemed to me. Dr. Armand was with me then.

10. Lake 'Leman is in Switzerland. It is the largest lake in Switzerland. There are not many very large lakes in Europe. The largest lake in the world is in Asia. Asia is the largest of the continents.

11. The more I give you, the more you ask me for.

12. His uncle, a very generous man, gave him a large sum of money.

13. The more friends you have, the happier you will be.

14. This gentleman comes to America twice a year. He likes America better than Europe. Usually each one likes his own country best (to like best, *aimer mieux*).

15. Kindly fill (*remplir*) my glass. Do you like this wine? It is Italian wine.

16. The king of England succeeded his mother in 1900.

NOTE.—4. *Down* is not expressed here.

## LESSON XLV

1. We talked of it a long time.      Nous **en** avons causé longtemps.

Has he any friends here?      A-t-il des amis ici?

He has lots of them.      Il **en** a beaucoup.

How many of the books did you take?      Combien des livres avez-vous pris?

I took three.      J'**en** ai pris trois.

If I find any flowers I shall give you some.      Si je trouve des fleurs je vous **en** donnerai.

**En** is a pronoun in the above sentences. The pronoun **en** is equivalent to a noun preceded by the preposition **de**.



2. Have you bread?                   Avez-vous *du pain*?  
 I have.                               J'en ai.  
 Was he accused of treason? A-t-il été accusé *de trahison*?  
 He was.                               Il *en* a été accusé.

*En* is *always expressed*, not left to be understood, as its English equivalents frequently are.

3. *En* is placed before the verb. If other pronouns are placed before the verb, *en* is always the *last one*.

But with the imperative affirmative, of course, *en* is placed after the verb.

4. *En* usually refers to *things*, though sometimes to *persons*.

Louis wearies me; I've   Louis me fatigue, j'en ai assez.  
 enough of him.

#### EXERCISE

1. Il mit sa main dans sa poche et il en tira un porte-monnaie.

2. C'est un excellent garçon! il n'y en a pas deux au monde comme lui!

3. Voyez-vous ce garçon? En voilà un qui a de la chance!

4. C'était trop de malheurs à la fois! Elle en a été sérieusement et longuement malade.

5. Pourquoi faut-il que vous ayez ce ruban-là? Il y en a tant d'autres que vous pouvez choisir.

6. Avez vous jamais vu une baleine? Je n'en ai jamais vu.

7. Qui a mangé ces cerises? J'en ai mangé, mais je ne les ai pas mangées *toutes*.

8. Quelles espèces d'arbres y a-t-il dans votre verger? Il y en a de toutes sortes. Comment! de toutes sortes. Eh bien, il y a des pommiers, des poiriers, des abricotiers. Vous voyez qu'il n'y en a pas tant, après tout.

9. Il m'a emprunté cent francs; il m'a assuré qu'il en avait besoin. Moi aussi je lui en ai prêté cent il y a dix jours. Vous voyez, il emprunte à tout le monde.

10. Vous allez avec nous, j'en suis bien aise.

11. J'avais une grande quantité de papier, mais il ne m'en reste pas beaucoup à présent.

12. Avez-vous distribué tous les cahiers? Non, il m'en reste quelques-uns. Combien vous en reste-t-il? Comptez-les. Il m'en reste huit. Donnez-en deux à Louis. Il en aura besoin.

13. Avez-vous assez de craie? Combien y en a-t-il? Il y en a une boîte toute pleine, et une autre boîte à moitié pleine.

14. J'ai des bonbons. En voulez-vous? Moi, je n'en mange jamais; Suzanne les aime. Donnez-lui-en.

15. Voilà des fruits. Prenez-en, je vous prie. Ceux-là ne sont pas bons. N'en prenez pas. Ceux-ci sont mûrs. Prenez-en tant que vous voudrez.

## VOCABULARY

bien aise (adj.), <i>very glad.</i>	le ruban, <i>the ribbon.</i>
un abricotier, <i>an apricot-tree.</i>	la baleine, <i>the whale.</i>
le besoin, <i>the need.</i>	la chance, <i>luck, good luck.</i>
avoir besoin, <i>to need.</i>	une espèce, <i>a kind, sort, species.</i>
emprunter, <i>to borrow.</i>	à la fois, <i>at one time, at once.</i>
le malheur, <i>the misfortune.</i>	vous pouvez, <i>you can.</i>
le porte-monnaie, <i>the purse.</i>	le verger, <i>the orchard.</i>
le prunier, <i>the plum-tree.</i>	tirer, <i>to draw, to draw out.</i>
	la poche, <i>pocket.</i>

NOTES.—1. **Porte-monnaie.** There are many compound nouns in French made by combining a verb-stem and a noun. Other examples are **porte-voix**, *speaking-tube*; **garde-robe**, *wardrobe*; **garde-malade**, *nurse*; **trouble-fête**, *disturber*; **pince-nez**, *eye-glasses*. Except *garde-robe*, they are all masculine.

4. *At once*, meaning *immediately*, is **tout de suite**.

6, 7. The past participle can not agree with **en** before the verb.

9. **Emprunter** requires the person borrowed *from* to be in the dative. Hence with a noun it requires the preposition **à**.

11, 12. **En avait besoin** means *had need of it*, i.e. *needed it*. **Il reste** is here impersonal, *there remains*.

## GENERAL NOTE

He comes from Paris.

Il vient de Paris.

He comes from there.

Il **en** vient.

**En** is from the Latin **inde**, meaning *from there*. All its other meanings and uses are derived from this original adverbial meaning. **J'en ai pris** means *I have taken from there*—that is, *from the pile, from the number*; hence, *I have taken some*.

*For Translation*

1. How many rooms are there in this house? There are fifteen. Here is my brother's room. I have a smaller one.

2. Haven't the boys any copy-books? Yes, they have. I gave them some yesterday. Louis says he has none.

3. Why do you take my pens? Aren't there any others in the drawer? There are some, but they are not as good as yours.

4. He took the money, so I suppose he needed it. Be sure of it.

5. Will you lend me your dictionary? Don't you need it? I don't need it to-day.

6. Are there enough dictionaries for the whole class? There are not enough. How many are there? I distributed twenty. How many of the pupils have none? There are five pupils who have none.

7. The butter was not good; I did not buy any.

8. How much did he borrow from you? He asked me for a hundred francs, but I lent him only fifty.

9. He says he has no money. He had plenty yesterday.

10. When she told me that she had received news of her brother I told her I was very glad of it.

11. Did he talk to you of his trip to England? He talked of it a long time.

12. Here are some oranges. Take as many as you wish. Choose the best of them. Have you enough? I have enough, thank you. Have you eaten any? I have not eaten any of them yet.

13. Are you sure of what you say? I am perfectly sure of it.

14. How many passed the examination? Here is the list of them. There are more than last year.

## LESSON XLVI

### 1. SUBJUNCTIVE PRESENT OF THE THREE CONJUGATIONS

je porte,	je finisse,	je rende,
tu portes,	tu finisses,	tu rendes,
il porte,	il finisse,	il rende,
nous portions,	nous finissions,	nous rendions,
vous portiez,	vous finissiez,	vous rendiez,
ils portent.	ils finissent.	ils rendent.

### 2. FORMATION OF SUBJUNCTIVE PRESENT.

The Subjunctive Present is formed from the present participle by changing *ant* into the endings

-e,	-ions,
-es,	-iez,
-e.	-ent.

3. We must carry him. Il faut que nous le **portions**.  
 Must you finish it to-day? Faut-il que vous le **finissiez** aujourd'hui?  
 We may arrive before you. Il se peut que nous **arrivions** avant vous.  
 It is possible that he has accomplished a great deal. Il se peut qu'il **ait** accompli beaucoup.

*Il se peut* is an impersonal verb, expressing *possibility*. It requires the subjunctive.

Impersonal verbs expressing *doubt*, *possibility*, *necessity*, *suitability*, require the subjunctive after them.

Such are :

il est juste,	<i>it is right.</i>
il est douteux,	<i>it is doubtful.</i>
il est bon,	<i>it is good, desirable.</i>
il faut,	<i>(must).</i>
il se peut,	<i>(may), it is possible.</i>
il est possible,	<i>it is possible.</i>
il convient,	<i>it is fitting, proper.</i>

#### 4. PAST SUBJUNCTIVE OF

##### FINIR

j'aie fini,  
tu aies fini,  
il ait fini,  
nous ayons fini,  
vous ayez fini,  
ils aient fini.

##### ARRIVER

je sois arrivé,  
tu sois arrivé,  
il soit arrivé,  
nous soyons arrivés,  
vous soyez arrivé (arrivés),  
ils soient arrivés.

#### EXERCISE

1. Il n'est guère possible qu'il soit déjà arrivé.
2. Il faut que nous attendions son retour.
3. A qui faut-il que je rende cet argent? Rends-le à mon frère.
4. Il est douteux qu'il réussisse dans cette entreprise; il a pourtant réussi là où bien d'autres ont échoué.
5. Il est juste que tu rendes ce qu'on t'a prêté. Rends-le donc puisqu'on te le redemande.
6. A quelle heure faut-il que nous finissions le travail? A l'heure que vous voudrez. Il faut que vous le finissiez aujourd'hui, voilà tout.

7. N'est-il pas juste qu'il défende ses intérêts?

8. Il est bon que ce jeune homme réfléchisse un peu sur ce qu'il va entreprendre. Il est presque impossible qu'il réussisse. Eh bien, moi, je suis sûr qu'il réussira. Vous voulez toujours décourager les gens.

9. Il convient que les jeunes gens soient toujours respectueux envers ceux qui sont plus âgés qu'eux.

10. Se peut-il qu'il ait manqué le bateau? Mais dans ce cas il aurait télégraphié. Qu'en pensez-vous?

11. Il est préférable que nous restions amis, qu'en dites-vous?

12. Il n'est que juste que nous écoutions son explication. Il est probable qu'il est coupable, mais il se peut qu'il prouve son innocence.

13. A qui pensez-vous? Je pense à mon pauvre frère. Je pense à lui bien souvent.

#### VOCABULARY

âgé, âgée, *old*.

coupable, *guilty*.

douteux, douteuse, *doubtful*.

échouer, *to fail*.

un intérêt, *an interest*.

pourtant, *however, yet*.

une entreprise, *an undertaking*.

entreprendre, *to undertake*.

une explication, *an explanation*.

l'innocence (f.), *innocence*.

respectueux, respectueuse, *respectful*.

NOTES.—4. **Là où.** When the adverb *where* is a kind of double relative, the French use **là où**. **Là** refers to the verb in the main clause and **où** to the verb in the dependent clause.

10. **Penser**, meaning to direct your thought *toward*, takes the preposition **à**; meaning to have an opinion *about*, the preposition **de**.

#### For Translation

1. Is it possible that he has arrived before us? Why not; he started earlier, didn't he? Yes; but he had several errands to do.

2. Is it possible that he failed in that undertaking? He used to talk of it so much, that I really believed that he would succeed.



3. You must succeed ; it is not possible that you should fail. So you believe that I shall succeed where a better man than I has failed.

4. It is right that we should defend our interests, isn't it? Yes ; but do not forget that others have interests too.

5. You believe him guilty, but you must prove that he is guilty.

6. To whom must I give this letter? Give it to the maid who opens the door for you.

7. If Charles is trying to learn French, you must not discourage him.

8. It is well for you to reflect a little on what you are going to say to him.

9. Can they have missed the train? It is likely. In that case they will telegraph us, won't they?

10. It is proper that we should be respectful toward them, for they are older than we.

11. Must we invite the whole family? What do you say about it?

12. It is doubtful whether (que) he will wait for us. I am sure that he will wait for us.

13. You must forgive him. Why? He has never asked my forgiveness.

14. Is it possible that he sells that silk so cheap?

15. I must finish my exercises this afternoon.

16. It is scarcely possible that they have already started. They started much later the last time.

17. We have no chalk ; you must buy some.

18. Is it possible that you chose these ribbons? What a color ! What does Marie think of it?

19. Were you thinking of me? I was thinking of you. That is very flattering.

---



## LESSON XLVII

1. Have you ever been in Italy? Avez-vous jamais été en Italie?  
Italy?

I have never been there. Je n'y ai jamais été.

What time did you get to school? A quelle heure êtes-vous arrivé à l'école?

I got there at nine o'clock. J'y suis arrivé à neuf heures.

**Y** is an adverb or an adverbial pronoun. Like the unstressed personal pronouns it is placed before the verb, except when the verb is in the imperative affirmative.

2. Put the chair there, in the corner. Mettez la chaise là, dans le coin.

**Là** is also translated by *there* (or *thither*). **Là** is used when the place is actually pointed out, or when there is special emphasis upon the word.

3. Think of his grief. Pensez à sa douleur.  
I do think of it. J'y pense.  
Did you obey his orders? Avez-vous obéi à ses ordres?  
I obeyed them. J'y ai obéi.  
Did they go into the house? Sont-ils entrés dans la maison?  
They did. Ils y sont entrés.  
Is he at your house? Est-il chez vous?  
He is. Il y est.

**Y** can always be replaced by a noun preceded by one of the prepositions **à, chez, dans, en.**

4. He went and made his uncle a visit and stayed a month. Il est allé faire une visite chez son oncle et il y est resté un mois.

**Y** is rarely left to be understood as in English.

## 5. TABLE OF PRONOUNS COMBINED WITH Y OR EN.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
m'en, t'en, s'en,	nous en, vous en, s'en,
l'en, lui en.	les en, leur en.
m'y, t'y, s'y,	nous y, vous y, s'y,
l'y.	les y, leur y.

NOTE.—Lui y is avoided on account of the sound.

6. It is useful to notice that among these pronouns and adverbs that must be placed before the verb,

Ne is always *first*,

En is always *last*.

Do you want some straw-berries? Voulez-vous des fraises?

Are there any?

Y en a-t-il?

There are plenty.

Il y en a beaucoup.

There are none.

Il n'y en a pas.

Are there none?

N'y en a-t-il pas?

## EXERCISE

1. Quelle langue parle-t-on en Autriche? On y parle cinq ou six langues différentes.

2. Pouvez-vous nous accompagner demain? Je ne sais pas. Pensez-y. Nous serons très heureux de vous avoir.

3. Il a pris tant de repas à crédit à son restaurant qu'il n'ose plus y retourner.

4. J'ai fréquenté cette société, et j'y ai appris beaucoup de choses.

5. Voulez-vous accepter cette petite croix? Que vous êtes bonne, madame! Mais non, elle n'a de valeur que celle que vous voudrez y attacher.

6. On t'attend chez toi, mon petit garçon. Vas-y, et dis à ton père que nous penserons à lui.

7. As-tu fini la phrase telle que je te l'ai dictée? Eh bien, ajoutes-y ces mots.

8. J'ai revu la maison ce matin, je n'y ai rien vu de changé.

9. Tâchez d'oublier votre chagrin. N'y pensez pas. Il est difficile de ne pas y penser.

10. Nous parlions tout à l'heure de Paris. Y avez-vous jamais été? Non, c'est le rêve de ma vie d'y aller.

11. Jean Bart, le fameux capitaine, était fils d'un pêcheur. Étant jeune, il alla exercer son métier en Hollande, dans l'espérance d'y mieux gagner sa vie. Pendant qu'il y était, la guerre éclata entre la France et la Hollande. On offrit à Jean Bart de servir sur les vaisseaux hollandais, mais il ne le voulut pas, parce qu'il sentait que c'est un crime de porter les armes contre son pays.

12. J'ai promis de vous descendre à votre porte; je vous y descendrai. Et il m'y a descendu.

13. Êtes-vous sûr que Madeleine et Thérèse étaient à l'église? Je les y ai vues moi-même.

14. Je vais envoyer les enfants au jardin. C'est une bonne idée. Envoyez-les-y.

#### VOCABULARY

ajouter, <i>to add.</i>	une arme, <i>a weapon.</i>
à crédit, <i>on credit.</i>	la croix, <i>the cross.</i>
le chagrin, <i>grief, sorrow.</i>	une espérance, <i>a hope.</i>
dicter, <i>to dictate.</i>	une église, <i>a church.</i>
éclater, <i>to burst, to break out.</i>	la Hollande, <i>Holland.</i>
le métier, <i>the trade.</i>	hollandais, <i>hollandaise, Dutch.</i>
oser, <i>to dare.</i>	promis, <i>promise (past part.),</i>
le pêcheur, <i>the fisherman.</i>	<i>promised.</i>
le rêve, <i>the dream.</i>	sentir (irreg. verb), <i>to feel.</i>
le vaisseau, <i>the vessel, ship.</i>	

NOTES.—5. **Que** translates *how* before an adjective in an exclamation. Notice that the words are not inverted in French as they are in English. How can you tell the gender of **valeur** here?

6. **Vas-y**: the imperative is **va** except before **-y**. Notice that we do not say **nous lui pensons**.

7. **Ajoutes-y**: **s** is added to the second singular of the imperative of verbs of the first conjugation before **-y**.

11. This is written in narrative style; hence, all the successive events are given in the past definite tense.

12. **Descendre**, when it has an object, means *to set down, to bring down*, etc.

*For Translation*

1. Look at that little bird. How pretty it is! My brother gave it to me. He has given me several. How kind he is!

2. I heard what he said, but I did not attach much importance to it.

3. Our friends are waiting for us in the garden; let's go.

4. Did you obey orders? We did. Here are your orders; obey them. If he received the order he obeyed it; be sure of that.

5. Little girl, where are you going? I am going to school, sir. Go quickly, it is late.

6. Here is my speech. I have read it. What do you think of it? I admire it very much, but you must add an argument to show that your adversary is thinking only of his interests.

7. What language is spoken in Switzerland? Three languages are spoken there: French, German, and Italian. Add to these several *patois*. That is too many for a little country.

8. Have you read my exercise? Yes. Did you find many mistakes in it? I found one very singular mistake. Show it to me.

9. Louise kept all the flowers. She did not give me any. You did not ask me for any. Did you ask her for any?

10. Did she give you some? She gave us three of them.

11. Did you speak of it to him? Would you have spoken of it to them? I knew that they would speak of it to us.

12. Why did you go to that school? My uncle sent me there.

13. How do you know that these men were in the church? André saw them there.

14. Do you want some oranges? Are there any? If there were none, I should not offer you any. There are plenty of them.

15. We went to the country last week and spent three days there. We shall go back there next summer.

## LESSON XLVIII

### 1. SUBJUNCTIVE IMPERFECT OF THE THREE CONJUGATIONS

je portasse,	je finisse,	je rendisse,
tu portasses,	tu finisses,	tu rendisses,
il portât,	il finît,	il rendît,
nous portassions,	nous finissions,	nous rendissions,
vous portassiez,	vous finissiez,	vous rendissiez.
ils portassent.	ils finissent.	ils rendissent.

### 2. SUBJUNCTIVE IMPERFECT OF

#### AVOIR

j'eusse,  
tu eusses,  
il eût,  
nous eussions,  
vous eussiez,  
ils eussent.

#### ÊTRE

je fusse,  
tu fusses,  
il fût,  
nous fussions,  
vous fussiez,  
ils fussent.

### 3. The subjunctive imperfect of all verbs ends in

-sse,	-ssions,
-sses,	-ssiez,
-t,	-ssent,

preceded by one of the vowels a, i, in, or u. This vowel is identical with the leading vowel in the

ending of the past definite, and in the third singular bears the circumflex accent.

#### 4. FORMATION

The Imperfect Subjunctive is formed from the Past Definite by adding *se* to the second singular.

tu portas,	je portasse.	tu eus,	j'eusse.
tu finis,	je finisse.	tu fus,	je fusse.

#### 5. MEANING AND USE

The uses of the subjunctive and its tenses must be postponed. One rule may be learned now:

When a verb requiring the subjunctive after it is in a past tense, or in the conditional mood, it requires the subjunctive imperfect or pluperfect.

I must give back that money. **Il faut que je rende** cet argent.  
 We had to give back that money. **Il a fallu que nous rendissions** cet argent.

6. In conversation the subjunctive imperfect is avoided as much as possible, and in literary style it is also avoided when long forms result, such as *nous contribuassions*.

It is often avoided by the use of the infinitive, as we shall learn later. In ordinary conversation the present subjunctive is often considered allowable where the grammar calls for the imperfect.

#### 7. PLUPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE

##### PARLER

j'eusse parlé,  
 tu eusses parlé,  
 il eût parlé,  
 nous eussions parlé,  
 vous eussiez parlé,  
 ils eussent parlé.

##### VENIR

je fusse venu,  
 tu fusses venu,  
 il fût venu,  
 nous fussions venus,  
 vous fussiez venus (venu),  
 ils fussent venus.

## 8. PAST ANTERIOR, INDICATIVE MOOD

j'eus parlé,	je fus venu,
tu eus parlé,	tu fus venu,
il eut parlé,	il fut venu,
nous eûmes parlé,	nous fûmes venus,
vous eûtes parlé,	vous fûtes venus,
ils eurent parlé.	ils furent venus.

NOTE.—Observe the circumflex accent in the third singular of the Imperfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive. It is not found in the Preterit or Past Anterior.

9. As soon as he had written the letter, he went out. Dès qu'il eut écrit la lettre il sortit.

When we had finished our work, we went back to the house. Lorsque nous eûmes fini notre travail, nous retournâmes à la maison.

*a.* The Past Anterior, like the Past Definite, is used in the literary, narrative style only.

*b.* It is used in connection with the Past Definite, to express an action immediately preceding.

Scarcely had he said the word when he regretted it. A peine eut-il prononcé le mot qu'il le regretta.

10. When I had finished my work I went out. Quand j'ai eu fini mon travail, je suis sorti.

The French has also a tense formed with the Past Indefinite of *avoir* and the Past Participle of the verb. It is not very frequently used. Its use in conversation corresponds to that of the Past Anterior explained in 9, *b*, above.

## EXERCISE

1. Allez-vous à la réception de Madame Delatour? Il importe que vous\_y soyez présent.

2. Le président m'a dit qu'il était très\_important que tous les membres du club fussent présents. On\_allait discuter une affaire de la plus haute\_importance.



3. Il n'était pas du tout certain que je fusse digne des honneurs qu'on allait me conférer.

4. Messieurs, dit-il, avec solennité, fussé-je devant la mort, je ne parlerais pas autrement.

5. Il suffit que nous rendions l'argent dans un mois.

Il aurait suffi que nous eussions rendu l'argent mardi dernier.

6. J'attends qu'il choisisse le sujet de sa composition.

J'attendais qu'il eût fini d'écrire sa lettre.

7. Il a fallu qu'il abandonnât sa patrie.

8. Je n'eus pas plus tôt donné mon consentement que je compris mon erreur.

Ils n'eurent pas plus tôt donné leur consentement qu'ils comprirent leur erreur.

9. Lorsque tous furent entrés dans la prison, on ferma les portes.

10. Aussitôt que j'eus achevé mes études, mes parents jugèrent utile de me faire passer mes examens pour savoir si j'avais appris assez de latin pour être promu au grade de bachelier.

11. Les soldats étaient entassés dans les wagons, impatients de partir, mais les disques flambaient rouges; le mécanicien attendait qu'ils tournassent.

## VOCABULARY

autrement, *otherwise*.

je compris, *I understood, I realized*.

digne, *worthy* (§ 47).

entasser, *to heap up, to pile in*.

flamber, *to flame, to burn*.

le grade, *the degree*.

le mécanicien, *the engineer, engine-driver*.

tôt, *soon*.

discuter, *to discuss*.

le disque, *the disk, signal*.

une erreur, *an error*.

il importe (impersonal verb), *it is important*.

la patrie, *fatherland, native country*.

le wagon, *car, railway-coach*.

il suffit, *it suffices, it will do*.

NOTES.—4. **Fussé-je.** The accent is placed here for the same reason as in **porté-je.** The inversion is analogous with the English *had we for if we had.* **Fussé-je** means *though I were.*

6, 11. **Attendre que.** *Till* is translated by **que** when used with the verb *wait.*

8. The ordinary word for *soon* is **bientôt**, but the comparative is always **plus tôt.**

10. **Me faire passer.** *To cause me to pass, to have me pass.* **Faire** followed by an infinitive means *to cause.*

11. **Entasser.** **Un tas** means *a pile, a heap.*

### *For Translation*

1. Scarcely had I finished the letter when he arrived. She waited for the letter the whole afternoon. No sooner had she gone out than the postman arrived.

2. When we had all entered the church the man began (*commença*) his explanations.

3. As soon as they had completed their studies their parents sent them to Paris.

4. As soon as I received the letter I carried it to him.

5. When they had finished their work they returned to the house.

6. She had no sooner given her consent than she realized her mistake.

7. It was by no means certain that they were worthy of the honor about to be conferred upon them.

8. It is well that each one love and honor his native land. The teacher said that it was well that each one should love and honor his native land.

9. Is it important that we discuss that matter?

10. It was very important that we should be promoted.

11. We have had no news of him since 1890, but it is not at all certain that he is dead.

12. I shall wait till you have passed your examinations. He said he would wait till we had passed our examinations.

13. When must I pay back this money? I must have it in three days. I shall have it to-morrow; as soon as I have it I shall give it to you.

14. I shall wait until he has paid me back the money. Will it do for him to pay it back next month?

15. He is waiting for us to choose a table for the dining-room.

16. I am waiting until my brother has finished his letter. Then we shall go out together.

## LESSON XLIX

### FORMATION OF THE FRENCH VERB

1. A French verb has five principal parts. When these are known, all the remaining parts of the verb may be formed from them.

2. The five principal parts of a French verb are:

1. The Present Infinitive. 2. The Present Participle.  
3. The Past Participle. 4. The first person singular of the Present Indicative. 5. The first person singular of the Past Definite.

3. Examples:

INF. PRES.	PART. PRES.	PART. PAST.	INDIC. PRES.	PAST DEF.
porter,	portant,	porté,	je porte,	je portai.
finir,	finissant,	fini,	je finis,	je finis.
rendre,	rendant,	rendu,	je rends,	je rendis.
craindre,	craignant,	craint,	je crains,	je craignis.

NOTE.—The fourth of the above verbs, *craindre*, *to fear*, is called an irregular verb, because its five parts do not conform to those of *rendre*. It is introduced here to show how the formation now under consideration applies to an *irregular* verb as well as to regular verbs.

#### 4. Review of the rules of formation :

*a.* From the **Infinitive Present** are formed the **Future** and the **Conditional Present**.

The **Futúre** is formed by adding

-ai, -as, -a, -ons, -ez, -ont,

dropping final *e* of the infinitive, if there is one.

The **Conditional Present** is formed by adding

-ais, -ais, -ait, -ions, -iez, -aient.

*b.* From the **Present Participle** are formed the **Plural of the Indicative Present**, the **Imperfect of the Indicative**, and the **Present of the Subjunctive**.

The **Plural of the Indicative Present** is formed by changing -ant into

-ons, -ez, -ent.

The **Imperfect of the Indicative** is formed by changing -ant into

-ais, -ais, -ait, -ions, -iez, -aient.

The **Present of the Subjunctive** is formed by changing -ant into

-e, -es, -e, -ions, -iez, -ent.

*c.* From the **Past Participle** are formed all the **Compound Tenses** by means of one of the auxiliary verbs, **avoir** or **être**.

*d.* From the **Present of the Indicative** is formed the **Imperative** by dropping the pronoun subjects.

NOTE.—The singular is therefore found here, but the plural of the Imperative is found under the Present Participle.

*e.* From the **Past Definite** is formed the **Imperfect of the Subjunctive** by adding -se to the second person singular.

The endings are -sse, -sses, -<sup>^</sup>t, -ssions, -ssiez, -ssent.

NOTE.—Except before *en* and *y*, the *s* of the second singular of the Imperative of the First Conjugation is dropped. We say *portes-y*, *portes-en*, but *porte cette lettre*.

# 5. The verb **Porter** arranged according to the formation of its parts :

INFINITIVE PRESENT.	PRESENT PART.	PAST PAR- TICIPLE.	PRES. INDIC.	PAST DEFINITE.
porter	portant	porté	je porte	je portai
FUTURE.	INDIC. PRES. PLURAL.	INF. PAST.		
je porter ai		avoir porté		
tu porter as			tu portes	tu port as
il porter a			il port e	il port a
nous porter ons	nous port ons	COMP. PAST PART.		nous port âmes
vous porter ez	vous portez			vous port âtes
ils porter ont	ils port ent	ayant porté		ils port èrent
COND. PRES.	INDICATIVE IMPERFECT.	PAST INDEF.	IMPVE.	SUBJ. IMP.
je porter ais	je port ais	j'ai porté	porte	je port asse
tu porter ais	tu port ais		portons	tu port asses
il porter ait	il port ait	PLUPERFECT INDIC.	portez	il port ât
nous porterions	nous portions			nous port assions
vous porteriez	vous portiez	j'avais porté		vous port assiez
ils porter aient	ils port aient	PAST ANT. j'eus porté		ils port assent
	SUBJUNCTIVE PRESENT.	FUT. ANT.		
	je port e	j'aurai porté		
	tu port es	COND. PAST.		
	il port e	j'aurais porté		
	nous port ions			
	vous port iez	SUBJ. PAST.		
	ils port ent	j'aie porté		
		SUBJ. PLU- PERFECT.		
		j'eusse porté		

NOTE.—Only the first person singular of each compound tense is given.

In like manner arrange the verbs **finir** and **rendre**.

## 6. The irregular verb **Craindre** arranged according to the formation of its parts:

<b>craindre.</b>	<b>craignant.</b>	<b>craint.</b>	<b>je crains.</b>	<b>je craignis.</b>
je craindrai		avoir craint		
tu craindras		ayant “	tu crains	tu craignis
il craindra		j'ai “	il craint	il craignit
nous craindrons	nous craignons	j'avais “		n. craignîmes
vous craindrez	vous craignez	j'eus “	crains	v. craignîtes
ils craindront	ils craignent	j'aurai “	craignons	ils craignirent
		j'aurais “	craignez	
je craindrais	je craignais	j'aie “		je craignisse
tu craindrais	tu craignais	j'eusse “		tu craignisses
il craindrait	il craignait			il craignit
nous craindrions	nous craignions			n. craignissions
vous craindriez	vous craigniez			v. craignissiez
ils craindraient	ils craignaient			ils craignissent
	je craigne			
	tu craignes			
	il craigne			
	nous craignons			
	vous craigniez			
	ils craignent			

In like manner complete the verbs,

joindre,	joignant.	joint,	je joins,	je joignis,	<i>join.</i>
plaindre,	plaignant,	plaint,	je plains,	je plaignis,	<i>pity.</i>
peindre,	peignant,	peint,	je peins,	je peignis,	<i>paint.</i>

## 7. All verbs whose infinitive ends in **-indre** are conjugated like **craindre**.

### LESSON L

#### 1.

#### **Mener, to lead.**

mener,	menant,	mené,	je mène,	je menai.
je mènerai,	ils mènent.			
	je mène, -es, -e, -ent.			

#### **Acheter, to buy.**

acheter,	achetant,	acheté,	j'achète,	j'achetai.
j'achèterai,	ils achètent.			
	j'achète, -es, -e, -ent.			

These are not irregular verbs. It is a rule in French that no word can end in two mute syllables. See § 11, 8. So, before the endings -e, -es, -ent, the e of the preceding syllable is written è, or the consonant between is doubled. In the future and conditional the e mute of the stem is also changed.

**2. Appeler, to call.**

appeler,	appelant,	appelé,	j'appelle,	j'appelai.
j'appellerai,	ils appellent.			
	j'appelle, -es, -e, -ent.			

**Jeter, to throw.**

jeter,	jetant,	jeté,	je jette,	je jetai.
je jetterai,	ils jettent.			
	je jette, -es, -e, -ent.			

These verbs and a few others double the last consonant of the stem instead of changing e to è.

**3.** There are special rules of spelling applying to verbs in -cer and -ger. *C* before *a* and *o* has the sound of *k*, and *g* the sound in *go*.

Therefore, when *c* or *g* of these verbs comes before an *a* or an *o* in the termination, the former is written *g*, the latter has an *e* mute placed after it.

**Present Tense of tracer, to trace.**

je trace,	nous traçons,
tu traces,	vous tracez,
il trace,	ils tracent.

**Present Tense of déranger, to disturb.**

je déränge,	nous dérängeons,
tu déranges,	vous dérangez,
il déränge,	ils dérangent.



Imperfect Tense of **placer**, *to place*.

je plaçais,	nous placions,
tu plaçais,	vous placiez,
il plaçait,	ils plaçaient.

Past Definite of **diriger**, *to direct, to steer*.

je dirigeai,	nous dirigeâmes,
tu dirigeas,	vous dirigeâtes,
il dirigea,	ils dirigèrent.

4. There are special rules of spelling applying to verbs in *-yer*.

**Nettoyer**, *to clean*.

nettoyer,	nettoyant,	nettoyé,	je nettoie,	je nettoyai.
je nettoierai,	ils nettoient.			
	je nettoie,	-es, -e, -ent.		

**Appuyer**, *to lean*.

appuyer,	appuyant,	appuyé,	j'appuie,	j'appuyai.
j'appuierai,	ils appuient.			
	j'appuie,	-es, -e, -ent.		

Whenever the *y* comes before an *e* mute in the ending the *y* changes to *i*. However, verbs in *-ayer* like **payer**, and in *-eyer* like **grasseyer**, generally keep the *y* all the way through. Usage varies:

5. Imperfect of **prier**, *to beg, ask, pray*.

je priais,	nous priions,
tu priais,	vous priez,
il priait,	ils priaient.

Imperfect of **employer**, *to use, employ*.

j'employais,	nous employions,
tu employais,	vous employiez,
il employait.	ils employaient.

## EXERCISE

1. Dimanche prochain je vous emmène tous à la campagne.

2. Voulez-vous m'expliquer le motif qui vous amène?

3. Il exagère toujours un peu.

4. Mon ami, tu essaies de faire trop de choses à la fois.

5. On emploie le mot physicien en français pour désigner autre chose qu'un médecin.

6. C'est la chute d'une pomme qui a suggéré à Newton, le grand physicien anglais, l'idée de la gravité. On voit par là que des choses que la plupart des hommes considèrent comme de peu d'importance suggèrent aux penseurs les plus grands principes de la nature.

7. L'architecture qu'on appelle ordinairement gothique n'a rien à faire avec les Goths. (See § 43, 2, *a.* and § 59, 7.)

8. Nous le priions tous les jours de venir avec nous. Il refusait chaque fois. Il n'a jamais refusé de venir avec moi.

9. Il mangeait son dîner lorsque je suis entré.

10. Il dirigea le bateau vers le rocher.

11. Où achetez-vous vos chapeaux? Je les achète chez Armand.

12. Je plaçais les chaises autour de la table, quand vous m'avez appelé. J'appellerai Jean, si vous voulez.

13. Cet homme, où mène-t-il ce cheval? Il le mène à l'écurie.

14. Regardez cet homme; il chancelle, il va tomber.

15. Il remplaça son chapeau sur sa tête.

## VOCABULARY

**chanceler**, *to stagger.*

**emmener**, *to take along*

(§ 33).

**considérer**, *to consider.*

**physicien**, *physicist.*

**le rocher**, *the rock.*

**amener**, *to bring.*

**une écurie**, *a stable.*

**suggérer**, *to suggest.*

NOTES.—1. *To bring a friend* is **amener** un ami. *To bring a book,* **apporter** un livre. *To take a prisoner away* is **emmener** un prisonnier. *To take a chair away* is **emporter** une chaise. The idea in **mener** and its compounds is that of *leading, guiding*; in **porter** and its compounds that of *carrying*.

6. **Par là**, *by that, thereby, thus*.

*For Translation*

1. Ask your brother to come with you. Yes, I told him I should bring him the next time.

2. I have refused to employ that man. But you told him that you would employ him. But I have discovered that he is not worthy of my confidence.

3. Did he take you to the church? He told me he would take me there next Sunday.

4. I shall not buy that table; it is too dear. I was sure you would not buy it. I shall not buy any now.

5. Do you consider him worthy of my confidence? I consider him as my best friend.

6. I hope I shall not disturb you. You will not disturb me. Those are my uncle's books. We never disturb them. Leave them as he placed them. I was replacing them just now.

7. He used to direct an orchestra. He (celui) who directs an orchestra is called in French *chef d'orchestre*.

8. The maid cleans these rooms twice a week. She will clean your room to-morrow. Madeleine, clean Madame's room to-morrow morning.

9. How do you employ your time? I had hoped that you would employ it more usefully.

10. Take me along. I will take you another time.

11. You were trying to do too many things at once.

12. Those boys were eating cherries.

13. Where are you taking those horses? I am taking them to the stable.

14. If you sold those articles cheaper we should buy

some. Be sure we shall never pay the price you were asking just now. ,

15. These tables and chairs are covered with dust ; you must clean this room at once.

An orchestra,                      un orchestre (§ 43, 2).

## LESSON LI

1. I have been here two weeks.      Je suis ici depuis deux semaines.

Il y a deux semaines que je suis ici.

How long has your brother been here?      Depuis quand votre frère est-il ici?

Combien y a-t-il que votre frère est ici?

He has been talking for an hour.      Il parle depuis une heure.  
Voilà une heure qu'il parle.

Have you been living here long?      Y a-t-il longtemps que vous demeurez ici?

Twenty years.      Depuis vingt ans.

The present tense is used in French for an action or state of affairs that began in the past and *continues up to the present*.

2. The preposition to be used before the noun or adverb of time in such sentences is *depuis*.

3. When *il y a* or *y a-t-il* introduces such sentences, *que* is used before the verb and *not depuis*. *Que* is then a conjunction, introducing a dependent clause.



*traveled in Europe for a whole year: Il a voyagé en Europe toute une année, or pendant toute une année.*

## EXERCISE

1. Depuis combien de temps mon sommeil durait-il? Je ne sais. Tout\_à coup un grand bruit me réveilla.

2. Tu ne vois donc pas comme elle a mauvaise mine depuis son retour. Je crains pour sa santé.

3. Il y aura dix jours lundi que ma sœur est malade. Nous commençons à croire que c'est vraiment sérieux.

4. Je commence à être fatigué. Voilà une heure que j'attends.

5. Je commençais à être fatigué. Voilà une heure que j'attendais.

6. Jean n'est pas venu hier soir. Je l'ai attendu une heure, de huit heures à neuf heures.

7. Jean n'est pas encore venu. Je l'attends depuis trois heures et demie. Il est maintenant quatre heures; ça fait une demi-heure que je l'attends.

8. Je regrette d'être en retard. Y a-t-il longtemps que vous m'attendez? Depuis quelques minutes seulement.

9. Je regrettais d'être en retard, et je leur ai demandé s'il y avait longtemps qu'ils m'attendaient. Ils m'ont répondu qu'ils m'attendaient depuis quelques minutes seulement.

10. A cinq heures vous n'étiez pas venu; nous n'avons pas attendu plus longtemps.

11. Il y aura un bal chez Mme. Benoît ce soir.

12. On m'a dit qu'il y aurait un bal chez Mme. Benoît ce soir.

13. Il est probable qu'il y aura beaucoup de monde.

14. Se peut-il qu'il y ait eu si peu de monde?

15. Je ne vois plus Henri depuis quelque temps, savez-vous où il est? Il n'est plus à Paris, dit-on. Voilà plusieurs mois que je ne l'ai vu.

16. Il y a longtemps que je n'ai rien mangé de si bon!



## VOCABULARY

le bal, <i>the ball.</i>	avoir bonne mine, <i>to look well,</i>
le bruit, <i>the noise.</i>	<i>healthy.</i>
le sommeil, <i>sleep.</i>	avoir mauvaise mine, <i>to look</i>
réveiller, <i>to awaken.</i>	<i>ill.</i>
tout à coup, <i>all of a sudden.</i>	

NOTES.—**Vivre** is *to live* in the sense of *to be alive*; **demeurer** is *to live* in the sense of *to dwell, to reside*.

1. **Pas** is often omitted with **savoir**, *to know* (also with *cesser, oser* and *pouvoir*).

13, 14. **Monde** often has the meaning of *people*, as here.

15, 16. Notice that to say "it is a long time since I did it," the French construction puts it negatively: "it is a long time that I have not done it," "il y a longtemps que je ne l'ai fait."

Notice that **de** is placed before an adjective depending upon **rien**.

*For Translation*

1. His brother used to live in Paris, but now he lives there no longer. He has been traveling for some time. Do you know how long he has been traveling? No; I have had no news of him for a long time.

2. Your sister looks very well since she came back from the country. How long has she been back? She came back on the first of last month, so it is now six weeks that she has been back.

3. How long did you work yesterday? I worked six hours. And how long have you been working now? I have been working for twenty minutes.

4. There will be a concert to-night; do you want to go? Let's go together. It is a long time since I have been to a concert.

5. He says he has been waiting for us for a long time. How long have you been waiting? Several hours. I regret it very much. We are not often late.

6. Have you ever traveled in Switzerland? No; I have never been there. My uncle is traveling there now. He



has been in Switzerland for several weeks. He will stay there some time longer (*encore quelque temps*).

7. My mother is ill. She has been ill for a week. She was very ill last winter too. I hope she will get well soon. She does not look well.

8. John is out. How long has he been out? He has been out since noon. When I came yesterday he was out too. He had been out some time.

9. How long have they lived in Rouen? They do not live in Rouen any longer. They used to live there. They lived there a year ago. How long had they lived there when they went away?

10. How long did your sister stay in Paris last year? She stayed there only three weeks. She has gone back to Paris, you know. She has been there for two months.

11. The maid told me you were out last evening. I didn't wait.

12. How many months is it that we have been here? We have been here six months.

13. I was beginning to get tired. I had been waiting hours.

14. Several times during the night I heard noises.

---

## LESSON LII

1. The gentleman who came in a moment ago is a celebrated artist.	Le monsieur qui est entré il y a un moment est un artiste célèbre.
---	--

That is the gentleman whom we saw yesterday.	C'est le monsieur que nous avons vu hier.
---	--

The steamer that arrived this morning was La Champagne.	Le bateau qui est arrivé ce matin était La Champagne.
---	--

The pencils which you picked up belong to my brother.	Les crayons que vous avez ramassés sont ceux de mon frère.
---	--

*a.* The relative pronoun **qui** is used as the subject of a verb.

*b.* The relative pronoun **que** is used as the direct object of a verb.

*c.* The relatives **qui** and **que** offer no distinctions of gender or of number, and apply to *things* as well as to *persons*.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 2. What vexes me is that he<br>is always late. | <b>Ce qui</b> me fâche c'est qu'il<br>est toujours en retard. |
| What you say is perfectly<br>true.             | <b>Ce que</b> vous dites est parfaite-<br>ment vrai.          |

The relative pronoun *what* is translated by **ce qui** when subject, by **ce que** when object, of a verb.  
*What*, of course, is here equivalent to *that which*.

- |  |                                  |
|--|----------------------------------|
| 3. The book he is reading is<br>worthless. | Le livre qu'il lit ne vaut rien. |
|--|----------------------------------|

*a.* The relative pronoun must never be omitted.

*b.* **Que** is changed to **qu'** before a vowel.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 4. The man who said that<br>was a philosopher. | L'homme <b>qui</b> a dit cela était<br>un philosophe. |
|--|---|

The *i* of **qui** is not elided.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 5. The house lay hidden in<br>the shadow that was<br>cast by the great cathe-<br>dral tower. | La maison disparaissait dans<br>l'ombre <b>que</b> projetait la<br>grande tour de la cathé-<br>drale. |
|--|---|

I told him what his friend had done.	Je lui ai dit ce qu'avait fait son ami.
---	--

The French Parliament wished to play the part that the Parliament of England had played.	Le parlement français voulait jouer le rôle qu'avait joué le parlement d'Angleterre.
---	--

After the relative pronoun *que* this inversion of the verb and subject is frequent. The purpose of the inversion is to bring the more important word at the end or to avoid putting the verb too far from the subject.

He did what a man who re-	Il a fait ce <b>que</b> <b>peut</b> <b>faire</b> un
spects himself and others	homme qui se respecte et
can do.	qui respecte les autres.

In French it would be awkward to write, "Il a fait ce qu'un homme qui se respecte et qui respecte les autres peut faire."

#### 6. Learn the complete verb **Aller**, *to go*, page 320.

Commit to memory the five principal parts, and the forms given under each part. Remember that all forms of the verb not given are made *according to rule*. See Lesson XLIX.

*a.* The Conditional is not inserted, because *in all verbs* it corresponds to the Future. The Conditional of **Aller** is, therefore, *j'irais*, etc.

#### *b.* Explanation of Subjunctive Present.

Many verbs have a change of stem in the Subjunctive Present, like this verb **aller**. In these verbs *the whole singular and the third person plural* have the same stem, while the first and second persons plural are regular.

#### SUBJUNCTIVE PRESENT OF **Aller**

<i>j'</i> aille,	nous allions,
tu ailles,	vous alliez,
il aille,	ils aillent.

Historically the last syllable of a French word always had the stress, unless it was a syllable containing the vowel called the *e* *mute*. It is in the stressed syllable that we find the vowel change or stem-change referred to above. In the first and second plural the stress is on the termination *-ons* or *-ions*, *-ez* or *-iez*, and so the stem-syllable has suffered no change. As we study the irregular verbs we shall often see this principle in force in the *Present Indicative* and in the *Present Subjunctive*; in all other tenses (except occasionally the Past Definite) the stress is on the ending.

## EXERCISE

1. Quand je cherche bien dans ma pensée toutes mes impressions de Rome, je n'en trouve que deux qui effacent ou qui du moins dominent toutes les autres : le Colisée, cet ouvrage du peuple romain ; Saint-Pierre, ce chef-d'œuvre du catholicisme.

2. Allons au théâtre ce soir, voulez-vous ?

3. J'étais là dans un silence que ne troublait aucun autre bruit que le cri des aigles et le roulement des torrents qui tombaient de la montagne.

4. Vous m'avez dit que vous iriez avec moi au théâtre cette semaine. Est-ce que vous l'avez oublié ?

5. Mon petit garçon, ton père t'attend à l'église. Vas-y, et dis-lui que nous venons.

6. Ces soldats, où vont-ils ? Ils vont à la caserne.

7. Le bijoutier dit : Ce n'est pas moi, madame, qui ai vendu ce collier.

8. Est-ce vous qui avez laissé ce livre ici ? C'est moi.

9. C'est mon frère et moi qui sommes allés à Paris avec mon oncle. De quel oncle voulez-vous parler ? De mon oncle Jules, celui que vous avez rencontré un soir chez nous.

10. Ce qui est bien singulier, c'est qu'il n'est pas rentré ce soir-là.

11. Ce qu'il m'a dit m'a paru bien singulier.

12. Il m'a offert tout ce qu'il avait.

13. Un enfant aime tout ce qui brille.

14. Mon père ne lui permet pas de sortir seul ; il faut que j'aille avec lui.

15. Vous ne trouverez pas une meilleure explication de ce mot que celle qu'en donne Littré.

## VOCABULARY

aucun, aucune, <i>no</i> (adj.).	le roulement, <i>the rolling, roaring.</i>
le bijoutier, <i>the jeweler.</i>	
le Colisée, <i>the Coliseum.</i>	du moins, <i>at least, at any rate.</i>
le chef-d'œuvre, <i>the masterpiece</i> (§ 45, 2).	une ombre, <i>a shade, a shadow.</i>
un ouvrage, <i>a work.</i>	offert (past part.), <i>offered.</i>
le peuple, <i>the people.</i>	la pensée, <i>the thought, mind.</i>
paru (past part.), <i>appeared.</i>	permettre, <i>to allow, to permit.</i>
la caserne, <i>the barracks.</i>	le torrent, <i>the torrent.</i>

NOTES.—1. **Le peuple.** This word is equivalent to *nation, race* or *common people*. *People* meaning *folks, persons* is **gens**. **Catholicisme.** Nouns ending in **-isme** are masculine.

3. **Aucun.** This adjective is usually found in connection with a negative verb. **Pas** and **point** are not used in the same construction with **aucun**.

7. **Qui ai.** Notice carefully the agreement of the verb after **qui**. So also in 8 and 9.

10. **C'est.** This repetition of **ce** is usual when the sentence begins with **ce qui** or **ce que**, but only when **être** is the verb. In 11 there is therefore no repetition.

12, 13. See Notes of Lesson XXXIV.

*For Translation*

1. Do you know that lady—the one who went out last? It is the same lady we saw the other evening at Mme. Lenoir's.

2. The compositions which you have written are very good.

3. All those who are going to Mme. Delatour's reception are requested to give their names to the secretary (*secrétaire*).

4. What he told me astonished me.
5. I like all that that author has written.
6. Show me what you have in that drawer.
7. You want all I have. He took all I had. He took all there was.
8. Must we go with you? Do as you please. We shall go with pleasure if you desire it.
9. Where is John going? He is going up-stairs. I told him to look for the book which you asked me for yesterday.
10. He said he was not worthy of the honor his friends were going to confer upon him.
11. I have never eaten better bonbons than those which you gave me the other day. I never saw more beautiful lace than that which you showed me the other day.
12. Is it you who ate all these cherries?
13. It is not I that borrowed the money.
14. If we went to the concert this evening would you go with us? If we had gone to the concert last evening would you have gone with us?
15. All was in a deep silence, which was troubled by no other sound than the song of the birds.
16. He is ill; he must not be alone. If he goes to the country some one must go with him. My father would not allow him to go there alone.

---

### LESSON LIII

1. The Venetians were beaten by the Genoese.    Les Vénitiens furent battus par les Génois.

The Passive Verb is formed in French exactly as in English by combining the verb *être*, *to be*, with the past participle of the active-transitive verb.



2. SYNOPSIS OF **Être battu**, *to be beaten*

## SIMPLE TENSES.

être battu.  
 étant battu.  
 je suis battu.  
 j'étais battu.  
 je fus battu.  
 je serai battu.  
 je serais battu.  
 je sois battu.  
 je fusse battu.  
 sois battu.

## COMPOUND TENSES.

avoir été battu.  
 ayant été battu.  
 j'ai été battu.  
 j'avais été battu.  
 j'eus été battu.  
 j'aurai été battu.  
 j'aurais été battu.  
 j'aie été battu.  
 j'eusse été battu.

3. I was beaten, j'ai été battu.  
 She was beaten, elle a été battue.  
 We were beaten, nous avons été battus.

The Past Participle in the Passive verb agrees in gender and number with the subject.

4. Préférer, préférant, préféré, je préfère, je préférerai, *to prefer*.

**posséder**, *to possess, to own*.

**céder**, *to yield*.

I own, je possède.

they yield, ils cèdent.

he owns, il possède.

yield thou, cède.

we own, nous possédons.

he will yield, il cédera.

The acute accent can never stand upon an e that precedes a final e mute with a consonant between the two vowels. When the infinitive of a verb of the first conjugation has é in the penultimate syllable, change é to è before the endings -e, -es, -ent. See § 11, 8.



5. An army,	une armée.	A lyceum,	un lycée.
She is loved,	elle est aimée.	A row,	une rangée.
A spoonful,	une cuillerée.	The distance,	la portée.
		range, reach,	
A mouthful,	une bouchée.	A roomful,	une chambrée.
		mess,	
A handful,	une poignée.	To create,	créer.
A museum,	un musée.	It creates,	il crée.

But *é* stands before *e* when there is no consonant between.

#### EXERCISE

1. Au moyen\_âge les serfs étaient vendus avec la terre.  
 2. Le médecin disait\_ aux soldats: Alors vous n'avez pas\_été blessés pendant la guerre?

3. Les Anglo-Saxons furent vaincus par les Normands en 1066.

4. Le feu a éclaté l'autre soir dans un petit village situé à quelques kilomètres d'ici. Une vingtaine de maisons ont été consumées par l'incendie.

5. Le soleil était à peine levé que nous fûmes surpris par l'armée ennemie.

6. Je vous répète, monsieur, que mon maître ne peut pas vous recevoir, il n'est pas encore levé.

7. La terre a été créée en six jours.

8. Ces chevaux sont vendus. Ils ont été vendus il y a trois jours. Et ces autres sont à vendre. Il faut qu'ils soient vendus cette semaine.

9. Cette maison est encore à vendre. Je la croyais vendue. Elle ne sera jamais vendue, soyez-en sûr: le prix qu'on demande est trop élevé.

10. Elle était aimée de tout le monde.

11. Cette grande croix fut plantée par les moines.

12. Tous ces soldats furent faits prisonniers et la ville fut prise.

13. La maison est entourée d'arbres.

14. Ces barils ont été remplis de sable. Ces autres sont pleins d'eau.

15. Cet homme est haï de tous ses voisins.

16. Les chiffres ont été inventés par les Arabes.

17. Autrefois il possédait plusieurs maisons ici. A présent il n'en possède plus.

## VOCABULARY

le baril, <i>the barrel</i> (§ 51, 2).	haïr, <i>to hate</i> (irreg. verb).
éclater, <i>to burst, to break out</i> .	un kilomètre, <i>a kilometer</i> .
le feu, <i>the fire</i> .	moyen, moyenne (adj.) <i>mid-</i>
un incendie, <i>a conflagration</i> .	<i>dle</i> .
le moine, <i>the monk</i> .	remplir, <i>to fill</i> .
plein, pleine, <i>full</i> .	le sable, <i>the sand</i> .
le voisin, la voisine, <i>the neighbor</i> .	vaincre, <i>to conquer</i> (irreg. verb).

NOTES.—4. The preposition *à* is used before the noun in an expression of distance.

5. *que* is used for *when* after *à peine*.

7. See notes of Lesson XXXVII.

8. *A vendre*, *for sale, to be sold*. The infinitive with *à* used predicatively is generally expressed in English by a passive infinitive.

Notice that in many of these sentences the passive verb is sometimes followed by *de*, sometimes by *par*. As a general rule the agent of a passive verb is preceded by *de* when the verb expresses *a moral feeling, a sentiment, a mere state or condition*; by *par* when it expresses *a definite action*. The passive verb with *de* expresses *what is or was*; it rather *describes*. The passive verb with *par* expresses *what happens or happened*; it rather refers to an *event*.

*Translate into French*

1. I hope that you will be present. They hope that we shall not be beaten. This army has never been beaten. That general will never yield. He must yield.

2. That whole row of trees was planted by my grandfather.

3. He creates difficulties for his friends. The king created him colonel. He was created colonel by the king.

4. Every museum in Europe (*de l'Europe*) was visited by him, but he did not discover the picture he was looking for.

5. We were beaten by a handful of men.

6. At what hour did the fire break out? It broke out at three o'clock, and an hour later the whole house was consumed.

7. Rome was not built in a day.

8. The teacher repeats all the sentences several times. The pupils also repeat the sentences. Have these sentences been copied? We have copied them all.

9. Is that house for sale? I believe it was sold yesterday.

10. Marie is loved by everybody. She is full of kindness for all.

11. The city would have been captured if General M. had not arrived with his troops.

12. The little village was completely surrounded by soldiers.

13. Not a word was uttered (*prononcé*).

14. Do you prefer white wine or red wine? I prefer white wine.

15. A few kilometers from here there is a château which is one of the handsomest in the country.

16. The idea of gravitation was suggested to Newton by the fall of an apple.

17. These two officers were obliged to resign.

18. All the boats were destroyed by fire.

---

## LESSON LIV

1. The gentleman to whom Le monsieur **à qui** vous avez  
you spoke. parlé.

The relative pronoun **qui** may be used after a preposition, but only when applied to persons.

2. The horse to which you gave the hay this morning.    Le cheval auquel vous avez donné le foin ce matin.

The relative pronoun *lequel* must be used *after a preposition*, in speaking of animals and things.

### 3. FORMS OF THE PRONOUN **LEQUEL**

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
Masc. <i>lequel</i> .	<i>lesquels</i> .
Fem. <i>laquelle</i> .	<i>lesquelles</i> .

#### CONTRACTIONS WITH **DE** AND **À**

Masc. <i>duquel</i> .	<i>desquels</i> .
Fem. <i>de laquelle</i> .	<i>desquelles</i> .
Masc. <i>auquel</i> .	<i>auxquels</i> .
Fem. <i>à laquelle</i> .	<i>auxquelles</i> .

4. The lady of whom we were speaking.    La dame dont nous parlions.  
The piece of music you spoke of.    Le morceau de musique dont vous parliez.

*Dont* is a pronoun, having the force of *de* + a relative pronoun. It applies both to persons and to things, and it has no distinctions of gender and number.

5. The boy whose father died the other day.    Le garçon dont le père est mort l'autre jour.  
The boy whose father you saw.    Le garçon dont vous avez vu le père.

The English *whose*, determining a noun which is object of a verb, causes the object to be brought around before the verb. In French, the object of the verb in the clause beginning with *dont* remains in its place after the verb.

6. The boy to whose father you wrote.      Le garçon au père duquel vous avez écrit.  
 The boys with whose father I was talking.      Les garçons avec le père desquels je causais.

When *whose* relates to a noun that is governed by a preposition, it is rendered by *duquel*, *de laquelle*, etc., placed after the noun. *Dont* can not be used in connection with a noun that is governed by a preposition.

7. He gave me what I had need of (*that of which I had need*).      Il m'a donné ce dont j'avais besoin.

No French clause can end with a preposition.

8. The house in which he lives.      La maison où il demeure.  
 The house from which he came out.      La maison d'où il est sorti.  
 The grief into which I am plunged.      La douleur où je suis plongé.

This use of *où* for *dans lequel*, etc., is very frequent.

9. At the hour when all were sleeping.      A l'heure où tous dormaient.  
 I was thinking of the time when he used to come to see us every day.      Je pensais au temps où il venait nous voir tous les jours.

*Où* and not *quand* is used to translate the relative adverb *when*.

10.                      Learn *envoyer*, to *send*.

Like *envoyer*, conjugate *renvoyer*, to *send back*, to *discharge*, to *refer*.

## EXERCISE

1. Un dîner où toute la famille fut convoquée célébra mes succès.

2. Je la crois incapable de tout le mal dont vous l'accusez.

3. Xénophon dirigea la retraite des Dix mille, dont il fut après l'historien. De mon temps tous ceux qui étudiaient le grec lisaient Xénophon. C'était le premier auteur grec que nous étudions.

4. Il m'a dit qu'il m'enverrait une dépêche.

5. Voilà un homme dont la bêtise est devenue proverbiale dans le pays.

6. Dites-moi toutes les couleurs dont vous savez le nom. Je n'en connais que fort peu. J'ai vu un livre dans lequel j'ai trouvé une longue liste de ces noms, dont j'ai essayé d'apprendre les plus importants.

7. Il fit un voyage en Asie au cours duquel il ramassa des faits intéressants pour le livre qu'il allait écrire.

8. Voilà le petit salon où nous allons prendre nos leçons.

9. Le curé aimait les hommes de l'antiquité, les héros, les actions presque fabuleuses dans lesquelles le courage physique a joué un rôle important.

10. Voilà une table sur laquelle vous pouvez écrire vos lettres.

11. Les mêmes mots désignent souvent des choses fort différentes. La république des Romains n'a rien de commun avec ce que nous appelons de ce nom. Par république, les modernes entendent une société où le citoyen a le plus de liberté et le gouvernement le moins de pouvoir.

12. Voilà une nouvelle dont je suis très content.

13. Il a déterré une boîte de fer au fond de laquelle il a trouvé un sac rempli de pièces d'or. C'est comme dans un roman !

14. Il porte des lunettes, sans lesquelles il ne reconnaîtrait pas ses meilleurs amis dans la rue.



## VOCABULARY

convoquer, to convene, call together.	le sac, the bag.
le cours, the course.	l'antiquité (fem.), antiquity.
le curé, the curate, the priest.	la bêtise, stupidity.
le citoyen, the citizen.	dormir, to sleep (irreg. verb).
le fer, iron.	diriger, to direct, superintend.
le fond, the bottom.	déterrer, to unearth, dig up.
le fait, the fact.	entendre, to understand.
le mal, evil.	la liberté, liberty, freedom.
les maux, the evils.	les lunettes (fem.), glasses, spectacles.
le pouvoir, power.	porter, to wear.
reconnaître, to recognize.	la rue, the street.
le succès, success.	le salon, the parlor.

NOTES.—3. **De mon temps.** *In my time.* This is an idiomatic use of *de*.

5. **Bêtise.** The adjective *bête* means *stupid*. Nouns with the ending *-ise* are feminine.

11. **Entendent.** This verb means *to understand* and *to hear*.

*For Translation*

1. At what distance are we from Paris? Paris is one hundred kilometers from here.

2. That is a fact of which I am sure. You must gather some facts among which you will choose the most interesting. This is the book for which I was gathering facts last year.

3. He offered me some flowers among which there were two beautiful roses.

4. Do you know the lady to whom I was speaking? Do you know the lady of whom I am speaking? Do you know the lady whose jewels were lost? Do you know the lady to whose maid Madeleine was speaking? Here is a list of the boys to whose fathers I have written.



5. Have you all you need? Do you know what he is talking of? Tell me what you know. Tell me only what you are sure of.

6. Send me the flowers to-night. I shall send them before six o'clock.

7. He sent back the letter; it was not for him.

8. You said you would send me the flowers before six; it is now seven, and I have not received them yet.

9. He was behind a tree, from where he saw (*voyait*) everything.

10. Here is a bag in the bottom of which I found a beautiful piece of lace. Do you know who put it there?

11. You must have entire confidence in him, without which no friendship is possible. (*Use the indefinite article with confidence here.*)

12. She will play the part in which she had her great success last winter.

13. At the moment when I was putting the letter in the box I thought of something that I had forgotten.

## LESSON LV

- |                     |                      |
|---------------------|----------------------|
| 1. Who was there?   | Qui était là?        |
| With whom were you? | Avec qui étiez-vous? |
| Whom did you see?   | Qui avez-vous vu?    |

The interrogative *qui* applies only to persons. It is used of both genders, of both numbers, may be subject or object of a verb, or follow a preposition.

- |                     |                 |
|---------------------|-----------------|
| 2. What do you say? | Que dites-vous? |
| What does he want?  | Que veut-il?    |

The interrogative pronoun *que* is translated by *what*. It can only be used as direct object of a verb.

3. What shall we open this    Avec **quoi** ouvrirons-nous cette  
     box with?                      boîte?

What! tired already!    **Quoi!** fatigué déjà!

*a.* The interrogative **quoi** applies to things, and is used with prepositions.

*b.* *What* used alone, as a question or an exclamation, is **Quoi**.

4. He used a word which I    Il a employé un mot **que** je  
     had never heard.            n'avais jamais entendu.

He went out without say-    Il est sorti sans dire un mot,  
     ing a word, which as-    **ce qui** a étonné tout le  
     tonished everybody.      monde.

*Which*, referring to the whole preceding clause, is rendered by **ce qui** or **ce que**.

5. I have been deceived.    **On** m'a trompé.  
     The money was given    **On** lui a rendu l'argent.  
     back to him.

The passive is rarely used when the agent is not specified.

To translate the English passive in such cases, change the verb to the active form, with **on** as subject.

6. How do you write that    Comment écrit-**on** ce mot?  
     word?

They say that he has lost    **On** dit qu'il a perdu sa for-  
     his fortune.                      tune.

**On** is an indefinite pronoun, in the third person singular. The English equivalents are *one*, *people*, *somebody*, *we*, *you*, *they*.

7. Learn the verb *conduire*, *to lead, conduct*.

Like it are conjugated

*construire, to construct, build.*

*produire, to bring forth, produce.*

*introduire, to introduce, bring in, insert.*

*traduire, to translate.*

## EXERCISE

1. On nous distribuait nos portions à la cuisine, à nous autres. On apportait à manger à ceux qui étaient bien malades.

2. Du toit de notre maison on distingue très bien le pont de Brooklyn, mais si l'on continue à construire des maisons tellement hautes autour de nous, nous finirons par ne plus rien voir du tout.

3. Que n'a-t-on pas dit contre moi?

4. On m'a dit que votre oncle vous céderait sa maison. On me l'a répété hier. Y aurait-il quelque indiscretion à vous demander si c'est vrai? Mais pas du tout. Ce qu'on vous a dit est parfaitement vrai.

5. On appelle Orientaux les habitants de l'Orient.

Comment appelle-t-on les habitants de la Russie? On les appelle Russes. Et les habitants de la Prusse? On les appelle Prussiens.

Comment est-ce qu'on appelle en français ce duc qui a conquis l'Angleterre au onzième siècle? On l'appelle Guillaume le Conquérant.

6. Pour qui me prenez-vous? Pourquoi prenez-vous cette liberté?

7. De quoi vous a-t-il parlé? Il m'a traduit la phrase, sans quoi je ne l'aurais jamais comprise.

8. Vous avez pris ce livre sans ma permission, ce qui est très mauvais. Vous avez invité plusieurs personnes sans me consulter, ce que je n'aime pas.

9. L'hôtelier nous conduisit à nos chambres. Cet homme vous conduira à votre chambre.

10. Comment traduiriez-vous cette phrase? Je ne comprends pas cette phrase, il faut que le maître me la traduise.

11. Quels sont les principaux produits de ce pays? Est-ce que ce pays produit du fer? Est-ce que ces fabriques produisent beaucoup de soieries?

12. Loisel possédait dix-huit mille francs que lui avait laissés son père, ce qui lui permettait d'acheter une jolie petite maison à la campagne.

### VOCABULARY

étonner, <i>to astonish.</i>	le toit, <i>the roof.</i>
Guillaume, <i>William</i> (§ 52, 6).	la cuisine, <i>the kitchen.</i>
un hôtelier, <i>an innkeeper,</i> <i>hostler.</i>	la fabrique, <i>the factory.</i>
le pont, <i>the bridge.</i>	la portion, <i>the portion.</i>
le siècle, <i>the century.</i>	la soierie, <i>the silk goods.</i>
	tellement, <i>so.</i>

NOTES.—2. **Par.** To begin by showing: Commencer **par** montrer. To end by showing: Finir **par** montrer. **Rien du tout.** Nothing at all.

5. **Au onzième.** See §§ 68, 7, and 69, 3.

### *For Translation*

1. The seventeenth century produced many celebrated authors.

2. I have been told that the mandarins wear their fingernails very long. Is that true?

3. The teacher began by explaining the lesson in arithmetic.

4. They begged him to go with them and he finally yielded (*he finished by yielding*).

5. Louis has an overcoat which is handsomer than mine. Louis went out without an overcoat, which was very imprudent.

6. What did he say when he received the news? He said he would start for Paris by the first train.

7. You say she went to the concert. With whom did she go?

8. Did you succeed in (à) opening the box? What did you open it with?

9. He opened the door and found the room empty, which astonished him very much.

10. This is the room which my friend has chosen for me.

11. The richer that man becomes, the less generous he is, which, according to William, is quite natural. Is it natural that the rich should not be generous? I do not think so. I know many who are very generous.

12. Have you been paid? Has the money been paid?

13. The more we travel the more we enlarge our knowledge.

14. What (*how*) do they call the ruler of Turkey? He is called the Sultan.

15. Where is that silk sold? You find it in all the large stores.

16. The English admiral Drake destroyed the Spanish fleet in the English Channel.

17. How do you translate that word? How was that word translated?

18. They say we shall have a shorter vacation this year than last year. Do you know anything about it?

19. Take this gentleman to his room. He took me to my room.

20. A new bridge is being built over the Seine.

21. Have you done your lessons? No; I must translate a whole page of Latin yet. I pity you. Why?

22. The earth produces all that men enjoy. That is why she is called the universal mother.

---

## LESSON LVI

- |                                    |   |
|------------------------------------|---|
| 1. Which of these pens is yours?   | <b>Laquelle</b> de ces plumes est la vôtre?       |
| Which of these books are the best? | <b>Lesquels</b> de ces livres sont les meilleurs? |
| Which book did you take?           | <b>Quel</b> livre avez-vous pris?                 |
| Which one did you take?            | <b>Lequel</b> avez-vous pris?                     |
| Which ones did you take?           | <b>Lesquels</b> avez-vous pris?                   |

*a. Lequel*, as an interrogative pronoun, is used before the preposition *de*, or when a noun governed by *de* may be supplied.

*b. Quel* is used as an interrogative adjective, but *lequel* is *not* so used.

*c.* Where the English adds *one* or *ones* to *which* in order to make it clear whether a singular or plural is meant, do not translate with *un* or *uns*. *Lequel* and *lesquels* are clearly distinguished already.

- |                             |   |
|-----------------------------|---|
| 2. Who wants to go with us? | <b>Qui est-ce qui</b> veut aller avec nous? |
| Whom do you wish to see?    | <b>Qui est-ce que</b> vous voulez voir?     |
| What does he want?          | <b>Qu'est-ce qu'il</b> veut?                |

*Qui est-ce qui* (literally, *who is it that*), *qui est-ce que*, *qu'est-ce qui*, and *qu'est-ce que* are very frequent forms of introducing a question. The pronoun coming after *est-ce* is the relative pronoun, and its form *qui* or *que* depends upon whether it is the subject or the object of the verb that follows.

3. What is it? Qu'est-ce?  
 Qu'est-ce que c'est? (more usual).  
 What is that? Qu'est-ce que c'est que cela?  
 Qu'est-ce que c'est que ça?  
 What is a parallelogram? Qu'est-ce que c'est qu'un parallélogramme?

Qu'est-ce and qu'est-ce que c'est are both often merely a way to introduce a question, and que is used idiomatically after them before the name of the thing inquired about, as though a new clause were beginning.

What is it *that* a parallelogram (is)? or

What is it that it is *that* a parallelogram (is)?

4. Quels sont ces gens? Who are those people? What people are those?  
 Quel est le naturaliste qui étudie dans les bibliothèques seulement? Who is the naturalist that studies in libraries only?  
 What naturalist studies in libraries only?

The interrogative adjective *quel* is often used predicatively where we might expect the pronoun *qui*. There is a difference in meaning. The second translation in each case above gives the meaning more accurately.

#### 5. IDIOMS WITH AVOIR

- What's the matter? Qu'y a-t-il? Qu'est-ce qu'il y a?  
 What is the matter with you? } Qu'avez-vous? Qu'est-ce que vous avez?  
 What ails you? }  
 I have a toothache. J'ai mal aux dents.  
 Nothing ails me. Je n'ai rien.



You are right.	Vous <b>avez</b> raison.
We are wrong.	Nous <b>avons</b> tort.
He is ashamed.	Il a honte ( <i>h aspirée</i> ).
I am very cold.	J'ai bien froid.
I am not warm.	Je n'ai pas chaud.
What do you need?	<b>De quoi</b> avez-vous besoin?
I want to go out.	J'ai envie de sortir.
They are afraid.	Ils <b>ont</b> peur.
They are afraid of us.	Ils ont peur <b>de</b> nous.
Are you hungry?	<b>Avez-vous</b> faim?
No, I am thirsty.	Non, j'ai soif.
Your brother is sleepy.	Votre frère a sommeil.
The wedding took place in the morning.	Le mariage <b>a eu</b> lieu le matin.

## EXERCISE

1. Quels sont les noms des quatre saisons en français? Le printemps, l'été, l'automne et l'hiver. Quelle est la saison que vous préférez?

2. Qu'avez-vous? Je n'ai rien; qu'est-ce qui vous fait penser que j'ai quelque chose? C'est que vous avez l'air pâle. Eh bien, j'ai un léger mal de tête, mais cela passera, ce n'est rien du tout.

3. Ma sœur est sujette aux maux de tête. Elle en a quelquefois de terribles.

4. Qu'est-ce qu'il a, le petit Pierre? Pourquoi est-ce qu'il crie ainsi? Une guêpe l'a piqué. La piqûre de la guêpe est bien douloureuse.

5. J'avoue que j'avais peur. Tout homme aurait eu peur devant un tel danger.

6. Je n'ai pas bu, car je n'avais pas soif. Si j'avais eu soif j'aurais bu.

7. Tu n'as pas le droit d'intervenir, tu aurais bien tort d'y aller. Tu as raison, je n'ai pas le droit d'y aller.

8. De qui avez-vous peur? Je n'ai peur de personne. De quoi a-t-il peur? Il n'a peur de rien.

9. A quelle heure est-ce que le mariage aura lieu? Il aura lieu à trois heures de l'après-midi. Qui est-ce qui veut y aller? Est-ce que vous n'avez pas été invité?

10. Est-ce que vous avez demandé à Jean s'il a envie de nous accompagner ce soir? Qu'est-ce qu'il vous a répondu?

11. Qu'est-ce que c'est que cet animal-là? Mais ce n'est qu'un chien. Qu'est-ce que vous croyiez que c'était?

12. Lorsque vous avez vu ce gros serpent, est-ce que vous en aviez peur? Qui est-ce qui n'en aurait pas eu peur?

13. Donnez-moi un de ces tableaux, n'importe lequel.

14. Nous discutons les mérites de ces deux poètes; lequel préférez-vous?

15. Duquel de ces frères avez-vous reçu ce cadeau? Auquel de vos amis destinez-vous ce cadeau?

# VOCABULARY

**avouer**, *to acknowledge, to admit.* **bu** (past part. of *boire*), *drunk.*

**douloureux, douloureuse**, *painful.* **destiner**, *to intend, to destine.* **la guêpe**, *the wasp.*

**le droit**, *the right.* **n'importe**, *it does not matter, never mind, no matter.*

**intervenir**, *to interfere.* **la piquûre**, *the sting.*

**le mérite**, *the merit.* **la saison**, *the season.*

**piquer**, *to sting.*

**sujet, sujette** (adj.), *subject.*

NOTES.—**La honte, la raison, le tort, le besoin, la peur, la faim, la soif, le sommeil, le soin, le lieu, l'envie, le chaud, le froid** are all nouns; used in the above idioms after **avoir** they have no article with them. **Chaud** and **froid** are also adjectives. *The iron is hot, le fer est chaud; some cold water, de l'eau froide. Il a froid* means *he has a feeling of cold; il est froid* means *he is cold-natured.*

1. **L'automne** is of either gender. The names of the other three seasons are masculine.

5. **Tout** here means *any*. In translating *any* into French notice carefully whether it has a partitive meaning (as, *have you any money?*),

or whether its meaning approaches that of *every* (as, *any other book will do*). In the latter case it is expressed by **tout** or by **n'importe quel**.

5. **Un tel**, *such a*. Notice that the article precedes **tel**.

9. Trois heures **de** l'après-midi. Notice the preposition **de**.

*For Translation*

1. Which house is yours? Which is your house? Which of these houses is yours? Which of these houses are yours?

2. To which of these ladies did you give the flowers? From which of the sisters did you receive the letter?

3. What does he say? Ask him what he said. What do you want? Tell me what you want. What vexes you? Tell me what vexes you.

4. Who wants to see me? Whom do you want to see? I saw two members (*membres*) of the society. Which ones did you see?

5. Do you hear that noise? Yes; what is it? Do you know what it is?

6. Did you hear that noise? No; what was it? I don't know what it was.

7. What is a republic? What is a planet? What is a right?

8. Am I right or wrong?

9. Have I the right to speak? Why should you not have that right?

10. What is that? What do you think it is?

11. What is the matter with little John?

12. What a noise! What's the matter? Ask the man what's the matter. He says something fell. It is nothing.

13. We are all hungry. I am thirsty, too.

14. Are you afraid of him? Is he afraid of you? I am not afraid of anybody. Would you be afraid of him? Would you be afraid of it? Would you have been afraid of it?

15. If you lend me the book, be sure that I will take care of it.

16. The battle took place on the 15th of June.

17. Are you not ashamed to speak thus? Would you not be ashamed to act thus?

18. When we arrived home we were very cold. Are you warm enough now? I am too warm.

## LESSON LVII

### 1. CONJUGATION OF *Se flatter*, to flatter oneself

*Se flatter* is a reflexive verb. A reflexive verb is one whose subject and object are identical—that is, the action is performed by the subject upon itself.

Inf. Pres.	se flatter,	<i>to flatter oneself.</i>
Pres. Part.	se flattant,	<i>flattering oneself.</i>
Ind. Pres.	je me flatte,	<i>I flatter myself.</i>
	tu te flattes,	<i>thou flatterest thyself.</i>
	il se flatte,	<i>he flatters himself.</i>
	nous nous flattons,	<i>we flatter ourselves.</i>
	vous vous flattez,	<i>you flatter yourself or yourselves.</i>
	ils se flattent,	<i>they flatter themselves.</i>
Ind. Imp.	je me flattais,	<i>I used to flatter myself.</i>
Past Def.	je me flattai,	<i>I flattered myself.</i>
Future.	je me flatterai,	<i>I shall flatter myself.</i>
Cond. Pres.	je me flatterais,	<i>I should flatter myself.</i>
Subj. Pres.	je me flatte,	<i>I flatter myself.</i>
Subj. Imp.	je me flattasse,	<i>I might flatter myself.</i>
Imperative	flatte-toi,	<i>flatter thyself.</i>
	flattons-nous,	<i>let us flatter ourselves.</i>
	flattez-vous,	<i>flatter yourself.</i>
Imperative	negative.	
	ne te flatte pas,	<i>do not flatter thyself.</i>
	ne nous flattons pas,	<i>let us not flatter ourselves.</i>
	ne vous flattez pas,	<i>do not flatter yourself.</i>

## 2. COMPOUND TENSES OF THE REFLEXIVE VERB

Past Inf.	s'être flatté,	<i>to have flattered oneself.</i>
Past Part.	s'étant flatté,	<i>having flattered oneself.</i>
Past Indef.	je me suis flatté,	<i>I have flattered myself.</i>
	tu t'es flatté.	
	il s'est flatté.	
	nous nous sommes flattés.	
	vous vous êtes flattés.	
	ils se sont flattés.	
Pluperfect.	je m'étais flatté,	<i>I had flattered myself.</i>
	tu t'étais flatté.	
	il s'était flatté.	
	nous nous étions flattés.	
	vous vous étiez flattés.	
	ils s'étaient flattés.	
Past Ant.	je me fus flatté,	<i>I had flattered myself.</i>
	tu te fus flatté, etc.	
Fut. Ant.	je me serai flatté,	<i>I shall have flattered my-</i>
	tu te seras flatté,	<i>self.</i>
	il se sera flatté, etc.	
Cond. Past.	je me serais flatté,	<i>I should have flattered my-</i>
	tu te serais flatté,	<i>self.</i>
	il se serait flatté,	
	nous nous serions flattés, etc.	
Subj. Past.	je me sois flatté,	<i>I may have flattered my-</i>
	tu te sois flatté,	<i>self.</i>
	il se soit flatté,	
	nous nous soyons flattés.	
Subj. Plupf.	je me fusse flatté,	<i>I might have flattered my-</i>
	tu te fusses flatté,	<i>self.</i>
	il se fût flatté,	
	nous nous fussions flattés, etc.	

Reflexive Verbs form their compound tenses with the auxiliary verb être.

3. He has amused himself. Il s'est amusé.  
 She has enjoyed herself. Elle s'est **amusée**.  
 The ladies enjoyed themselves. Les dames se sont **amusées**.  
 Miss Lefèvre, did you enjoy yourself? Mademoiselle Lefèvre, est-ce que vous vous êtes **amusée**?

The past participle in the compound tenses of a reflexive verb agrees with the direct object. Cf. Lesson lviii.

4. The reflexive pronoun *se* is of the third person. It is used for *both* numbers, *both* genders, and for *both* the Dative and Accusative Cases.

5. He turns the wheel. Il tourne la roue.  
 He turns (meaning *he turns himself*). Il **se** tourne.  
 Return (meaning *go back*). Retournez.  
 Turn round (meaning *turn yourself round*). Retournez-**vous**.  
 He stopped the horse. Il a arrêté le cheval.  
 He stopped (meaning *he stopped himself*). Il s'est arrêté.

In English we frequently make a verb intransitive where the French language calls for a reflexive verb. In French the omission of the reflexive object is very rare.

6. *Translate*

- |                    |                   |
|--------------------|-------------------|
| Il avait flatté.   | j'amusais.        |
| Il était flatté.   | je m'amusais.     |
| Il s'était flatté. | je m'étais amusé. |
| Il flattait.       | j'étais amusé.    |
| Il se flattait.    | j'avais amusé.    |
| Il serait flatté.  | j'aurais amusé.   |



Il aurait flatté.	je l'aurais amusé.
Il se serait flatté.	je me serais amusé.
Il se flatterait.	je l'amuserais.

## EXERCISE

1. Je me promène ici toutes les après-midi. La sentinelle se promenait devant la porte. Allons nous promener dans le parc. Où vous promenez-vous ordinairement? Je vais me promener au bord du lac. Où t'es-tu promené ce matin? Est-ce que tu t'es bien amusé? Je me suis très bien amusé, mais Louis dit qu'il ne s'est pas amusé du tout. Lui s'ennuie partout, et il m'ennuie par-dessus le marché.

2. Le soleil se lève dans l'est et se couche dans l'ouest. Voilà pourquoi l'est s'appelle quelquefois le levant et l'ouest le couchant. L'est s'appelle aussi l'orient et l'ouest l'occident.

3. Le soleil se lève plus tard en hiver qu'en été. A quelle heure le soleil s'est-il levé ce matin? Je ne sais pas; je n'étais pas levé moi-même. Je vous crois. Le lever du soleil, je suis sûr que vous l'avez vu assez rarement. Avez-vous vu le magnifique coucher du soleil d'hier soir?

4. A quelle heure vous levez-vous le matin? Je me lève ordinairement vers sept heures, mais ce matin je ne me suis levé qu'à huit heures.

5. Levons-nous. Ah, non! ne nous levons pas encore!

6. Nous nous sommes arrêtés devant la porte de la cathédrale. Pourquoi le train ne s'est-il pas arrêté? Je croyais qu'il s'arrêtait à cette station. Non, il ne s'y arrête jamais. Arrêtez-vous. Pourquoi ne vous arrêtez-vous pas?

7. André s'était déjà couché avant notre arrivée. Il se couche toujours de bonne heure. Je n'aime pas à me coucher avant dix heures.

8. Allons nous coucher. Couchez-vous. Est-ce que vous n'allez pas vous coucher?



## VOCABULARY

<b>s'amuser</b> , <i>to enjoy oneself.</i>	<b>se promener</b> , <i>to walk.</i>
<b>s'ennuyer</b> , <i>not to enjoy oneself, to have a dull time, to be bored.</i>	<b>lever</b> , <i>to raise.</i>
<b>se coucher</b> , <i>to lie down, to go to bed, to set.</i>	<b>se lever</b> , <i>to rise.</i>
<b>par-dessus le marché</b> , <i>into the bargain.</i>	<b>s'appeler</b> , <i>to be called, named.</i>
	<b>levé</b> , <i>up.</i>
	<b>le bord du lac</b> , <i>the shore of the lake.</i>

NOTES.—1. **La sentinelle.** This feminine noun is to be noted, as it denotes a man. It meant originally the duty of a sentinel.

2. **Lever**, to raise. **Se lever**, to raise oneself, to rise. So **Coucher**, to lay down; **Se coucher**, to lie down.

3. **Je vous crois**, *I believe you.* Here the English idiom would be: *I'm sure you weren't. Of course you weren't.*

*For Translation*

1. I rise at seven. They rise at eight. We get up at six. We used to rise early. At what time did you use to get up? He got up. He didn't get up. Did he get up? Didn't he get up? Are you up? Were you up? I wasn't up.

2. I take a walk here every morning. I used to take a walk. I took a walk this morning. I shall take a walk with him.

3. Are you having a good time here? Were you having a good time there? Did you enjoy yourself? You will have a good time. You would have a good time. You would have had a good time. You would not have had a good time.

4. Have a good time. Let us enjoy ourselves. We enjoy ourselves here. We are not enjoying ourselves. We were not enjoying ourselves. We have not had a good time. We should enjoy ourselves. We shall enjoy ourselves. We should have had a good time. We should not have had a good time.

5. Turn round. Don't turn round. I turned round.  
 He turned round. They turned round. They didn't turn  
 round. They would have turned round. She would have  
 turned round.

---

### LESSON LVIII

1. I am going to buy myself Je vais **m'acheter** un chapeau  
 a new hat. neuf.

He was talking to himself. Il **se** parlait à lui-même.

The reflexive verb may have the *indirect object* identical with the subject instead of the direct object.

2. She bought herself a new Elle **s'est acheté** une robe  
 gown. neuve.

Here the past participle remains unmodified because the direct object **robe** follows. **S'** for **se** is the indirect object.

3. Here are the gowns she Voici les robes qu'elle s'est  
 bought herself. **achetées**.

Here **achetées** agrees with its direct object **que** because the object precedes the verb.

4. They do not speak to each Elles ne **se** parlent pas.  
 other.

The reflexive verb *in the plural* may express reciprocal action.

5. They defended themselves. Ils se sont défendus.

They defended each other. Ils se sont défendus l'un  
 l'autre.

Where there might be ambiguity l'un l'autre (varied for gender and number) must be added to the reflexive form to give it the reciprocal sense.

6. These goods are not sold    Ces marchandises ne **se ven-**  
     any more, i. e. they are      **dent** plus.  
     not for sale or people  
     do not buy them.

These goods are not sold,    Ces marchandises ne **sont pas**  
     i. e. no one has bought      **vendues.**  
     them.

That is done every day.    Cela **se fait** tous les jours.

The work is done.    Le travail **est fait.**

Often the passive form expresses a completed action, a state or condition of affairs.

To express the passive of momentary or uncompleted action with such verbs the reflexive is often used. Therefore the reflexive form often corresponds to the English passive form with the agent unexpressed.

7. Where is that sold?    Où est-ce que cela **se vend**?  
                                     Où est-ce qu'**on vend** cela?

In translating from French to English it is generally best to avoid translating *on* by *one*, and to use the passive. Conversely, it is best to avoid the passive with indefinite agent in French, and to use the reflexive form or the active form with *on* as subject.

#### EXERCISE

1. Quelle joie de se revoir après une si longue absence!

2. Les deux amis ne se sont jamais revus.

3. Lui et son frère se querellaient sans cesse, ils ne s'aimaient guère.

4. Ces soldats sont terribles! les uns se sont emparés de bouteilles, les autres de viande, ceux-ci de pain, ceux-là de cigares. Ils ont tout emporté.

5. Nous ne nous attendions pas aux revers qui nous accablaient. Non, nous ne nous y attendions pas du tout.

6. Je me suis déshabillé, ravi de m'étendre dans un lit. Les soldats ne se couchent pas toujours dans un bon lit.

7. Que de choses nous avons à nous raconter! Il y avait si longtemps que nous ne nous étions vus!

8. Lui et elle se parlaient à demi-voix sans rien entendre de ce qui se disait autour d'eux.

9. Vous rappelez-vous ce triste soir d'hiver où nous croyions nous quitter pour ne plus nous revoir? Ah, je me le rappelle trop bien.

10. La porte se ferma, nous n'entendîmes plus rien.

11. Cette maladie se gagne, méfiez-vous!

12. Combien de lettres se sont-elles écrites? Elles ne se sont pas écrites. Pardonnez-moi; vous vous trompez. J'ai vu des lettres qu'elles se sont écrites.

13. Le participe passé s'accorde avec le complément direct du verbe lorsque ce complément est placé avant le verbe.

14. Aimez-vous, mes enfants. Ne vous querellez point. A quoi bon se quereller?

15. A Paris les timbres-poste se vendent chez les marchands de tabac.

## VOCABULARY

accabler, *to overwhelm.*

sans cesse, *constantly.*

le cigare, *the cigar.*

déshabiller, *to undress* (§ 52,  
6).

quereller, *to quarrel with,*  
*to nag.*

se quereller, *to quarrel.*

le revers, *the reverse.*

le timbre-poste, *the postage-*  
*stamp.*

le tabac, *tobacco* (§ 42, 7).

s'accorder, *to agree.*

la bouteille, *the bottle.*

s'emparer, *to take possession.*

se gagner, *to be contagious.*

se méfier, *to mistrust, to look*  
*out.*

ravir, *to delight.*

se tromper, *to be mistaken.*

NOTES.—**Neuf**, meaning *new*, always follows the noun. **Neuf** means *new* in the sense of *not having been used before, fresh, just from the shop*, etc. **Nouveau** means *recent, novel, of a new kind*.

1. **Une si longue**. Notice that the indefinite article in English is put after the adjective when it is modified by *so*: *so long an*.

3. **Se quereller** is always reciprocal, and hence always found in the plural.

4. **S'emparrer**. There are verbs that are always reflexive. This is one. There is no verb **emparrer** without a pronoun object.

5. Many verbs change their meaning when used reflexively. **Attendre** is *to wait*; **S'attendre à** is *to expect*. So in 11, **Gagner**, *to gain*; **Se gagner**, *to be catching*.

8. **Demi-voix**. Notice that **demi** takes no *e* here. So **demi-heure**, **demi-douzaine**. **Rien** usually precedes the infinitive, of which it is the object. Notice, too, that when governed by **sans**, or when the verb is governed by **sans**, **ne** is not used.

9. For the use of **pour** here, compare the English *for how long, forever*.

10. **Plus** precedes **rien**.

#### *For Translation*

1. My daughters have bought themselves some pretty gowns. I must buy myself a new hat. Louis has bought himself some new shoes.

2. We shall defend ourselves. We shall defend each other. Defend thyself. We must defend ourselves. Is it possible that they did not defend themselves? Defend each other.

3. These goods sell well. These goods have sold well. These goods are already sold. Where do they sell postage-stamps?

4. We never saw each other again.

5. He took possession of everything. She took possession of the house. They took possession of the city.

6. I expected that. I did not expect that. Did you expect that? Do not expect anything else. Expect to be deceived.

7. He is mistaken. He was mistaken. He made a mistake.

8. We undressed quickly. We were very tired, so that we were delighted to stretch out in a good bed.

9. The soldiers had not lain down in a bed for many days.

10. Come to my room. I have many things to tell you. We have many things to tell each other.

11. We were talking in a low voice. We heard nothing that was said around us.

12. It is said that she is ill. It was said that she was ill.

13. We wrote to each other. Did you write to each other often? How many letters have you written to each other?

14. Do you recall the old house? I recall it very well. Does your father remember the story he used to tell us when we were young?

15. That man will deceive you; look out.

16. The door opens; we are free! The door opened; we were free!

## LESSON LIX

1. Myself, moi-même.	Ourselves, nous-mêmes.
Thyself, toi-même.	Yourself, vous-même.
Himself, lui-même.	Yourselves, vous-mêmes.
Herself, elle-même.	Themselves, eux-mêmes ( <i>m.</i> ).
Itself, lui-même ( <i>m.</i> ).	Themselves, elles-mêmes ( <i>f.</i> ).
Itself, elle-même ( <i>f.</i> ).	
I went myself.	J'y suis allé <b>moi-même</b> .
I have hurt myself.	Je <b>me</b> suis blessé.

The compound personal pronouns, which are used for emphasis, must not be confounded with the reflexive pronouns.



2. He got out of the scrape Il s'est tiré d'affaire lui-même.  
by himself.

The emphatic and reflexive pronoun may occur in the same clause.

### 3. **S'en aller, to go away**

s'en aller,	s'en allant,	s'en étant allé,	je m'en vais,	je m'en allai.
je m'en irai.	ils s'en vont,	s'en être allé.	tu t'en vas,	
	je m'en aille,		il s'en va,	
	tu t'en ailles,		va-t'en.	
	il s'en aille,			
	ils s'en aillent.			

#### PRESENT INDICATIVE.

je m'en vais,  
tu t'en vas,  
il s'en va.  
nous nous en allons,  
vous vous en allez,  
ils s'en vont.

#### PAST INDEFINITE.

je m'en suis allé,  
tu t'en es allé,  
il s'en est allé.  
nous nous en sommes allés.  
vous vous en êtes allés.  
ils s'en sont allés.

#### INTERROGATIVE OF THE ABOVE.

m'en vais-je ?  
t'en vas-tu ?  
s'en va-t-il ?  
nous en allons-nous ?  
vous en allez-vous ?  
s'en vont-ils ?

#### INTERROGATIVE NEGATIVE OF THE ABOVE.

ne m'en suis-je pas allé ?  
ne t'en es-tu pas allé ?  
ne s'en est-il pas allé ?  
ne nous en sommes nous pas allés ?  
ne vous en êtes-vous pas allés ?  
ne s'en sont-ils pas allés ?

#### IMPERATIVE.

va-t'en,  
allons-nous-en,  
allez-vous-en.

#### IMPERATIVE NEGATIVE.

ne t'en va pas,  
ne nous en allons pas,  
ne vous en allez pas.



## EXERCISE

1. Je crois vraiment que vous me trompez, ou bien que vous vous trompez vous-même. En tout cas, je suis sûr que les choses ne se sont jamais passées de la sorte.

2. Il est allé se promener au bord du lac. Il s'y promène tous les jours. Vous y promenez-vous quelquefois aussi? Nous ne nous y promenons jamais.

3. Ne vous dépêchez pas tant. Mais on m'a dit de me dépêcher!

4. Dépêche-toi! Ne sois pas si lent!

5. Ne vous dérangez pas pour moi. Je crains de vous déranger. Vous ne dérangez personne, je vous assure. Personne ne s'est dérangé.

6. Je suis sûr que ces braves gens s'étaient beaucoup dérangés à cause de nous.

7. La journée se passa, la nuit se passa. Toujours pas de nouvelles!

8. Approchez votre chaise. Approchez-vous du feu. Je me suis approché de la fenêtre.

9. Qu'est-ce qui se passe là-bas? me dit-il. Allons voir. Ce sont deux hommes qui se battent. Nous nous précipitons vers l'endroit. Une foule de curieux s'étaient amassés autour d'eux. Puis on a arrêté les combattants et la foule s'est dispersée.

10. Allez-vous-en, laissez-moi dormir.

## VOCABULARY

*amasser, to gather.*

*se battre, to fight.*

*se dépêcher, to hurry.*

*se précipiter, to rush.*

*brave, good, kind-hearted.*

*à cause de, on account of.*

*se passer, to pass, to go on, take place.*

NOTES.—1. **Ou bien**, or. More emphatic than **ou** alone. **Se passer** means *to pass* when the subject is a noun of time. Otherwise it generally means *to occur, to take place*.

5. Notice that **craindre** requires **de** before the infinitive it governs.

6. **Brave** placed after a noun means *brave, courageous*. Before a noun, *good, kind*.

8. **Approcher une chose** = *to draw a thing near*. **S'approcher de** is *to place oneself near to, to approach*.

*For Translation*

1. In a passive verb the participle agrees with the subject (*le sujet*).

2. They have written each other a dozen letters.

3. He is always quarreling with his brother. My brother and I never quarrel. We love each other very much.

4. I wrote that letter myself. The pupils wrote the exercises themselves. Finish the work thyself. She put the letter into the box herself.

5. Do I disturb you? You do not disturb me. He took a great deal of trouble on my account. I told him not to disturb himself.

6. Months passed, years passed, we never saw them again.

7. I fought with him. They fought. He fought with a lion. They will fight. They would fight. They had fought.

8. I am beaten. We are beaten. They were beaten.

9. What was going on? Do you know what happened? Who knows what would have happened!

10. The crowd would have dispersed if the soldiers had arrived.

11. The sun will rise behind that mountain. Did you ever see the sun rise? The sun had already set. The moon rose early.

12. We did not have a good time at all. We had a dull time of it.

13. The work is being done slowly. The work is already done. That is a thing that is never done (no one ever does).

14. Go away. Don't go away. Are you going away? Must you go away? Let us go away.

15. Do you ever go walking in the park? We do, very often. Does he ever go walking in the park? He never does.

16. Hurry up! Let's hurry!

17. I drew up my chair. I drew near the fire. Draw near the fire. We drew near the house. They were approaching the city.

## LESSON LX

1. Learn **croire**, *to believe*;      **dire**, *to say, to tell*;  
    **lire**, *to read*;                      **écrire**, *to write*.

NOTES.—**Vous dites** is present indicative. **Vous dites** is past definite. **Il dit** is present indicative or past definite. **Il dit** is imperfect subjunctive.

*a.* Like **dire** conjugate **redire**, *to repeat*.

*b.* **Contredire**, *to contradict*; **prédire**, *to foretell, to predict*; **médire**, *to speak ill, to slander*, are conjugated like **dire**, with the exception of the second person plural of the present indicative, which are **contredisez, prédisez, médisez**.

*c.* Like **écrire** conjugate **décrire**, *to describe*; **inscrire**, *to inscribe*; **prescrire**, *to prescribe*; **proscrire**, *to proscribe*, etc.

*d.* Like **lire** conjugate **élire**, *to elect*.

- |                      |             |
|----------------------|-------------|
| 2. I am reading.     | Je lis.     |
| I was reading.       | Je lisais.  |
| I have been reading. | J'ai lu.    |
| I had been reading.  | J'avais lu. |

The Present Participle is *not* used in French in the conjugation of a verb, as it is in English.

- |                                   |  |
|-----------------------------------|--|
| 3. She did not go out, being ill. | Elle n'est pas sortie, étant malade.   |
| They did not go out, being ill.   | Ils ne sont pas sortis, étant malades. |

The Present Participle is invariable.

4. That story is very amusing. Cette histoire est très amusante.

We are well. Nous sommes bien portants.

But the Verbal Adjective in *-ant* agrees with the noun or pronoun to which it relates.

The adjective *describes, qualifies*; the participle denotes *simultaneous action*. The participle may have an object, like the verb. The verbal adjective may not.

The participle answers the question, *doing what?*  
The adjective answers the question, *what kind of?*

#### VERBAL ADJECTIVE

A dying woman.	Une femme mourante.
These far-sighted men.	Ces hommes prévoyants.

#### PRESENT PARTICIPLE

A woman, dying of hunger.	Une femme, mourant de faim.
These men, foreseeing the danger.	Ces hommes, prévoyant le danger.

#### 5. THE GERUND

By reading one learns to read. **En lisant**, on apprend à lire.

I met him while going to the post-office. Je l'ai rencontré, **en allant** à la poste.

Still talking, he walked to and fro in the little garden. **Tout en parlant**, il se promenait de long en large dans le petit jardin.

The present participle preceded by the preposition *en* is often called the *gerund*. The word *en* is frequently not expressed in the English translation. Sometimes it is rendered by *on*, *in*, or *by*. **Tout** is used to emphasize the continuity of the action.

6. **En** is the only preposition in French that is followed by the Present Participle. All the others govern the *Infinitive*.

7. The *Gerund* relates to the *subject* of the sentence.

Exception.—An exception is seen in the common saying: L'appétit vient en mangeant.

8. After writing the letter,      Après **avoir écrit** la lettre, il  
he tore it up.                      l'a déchirée.

After going to the post-      Après **être allés** à la poste,  
office, we went on by      nous avons continué par  
the other road.                      l'autre chemin.

After saying so many      Après **s'être dit** tant de choses  
bitter things to each      amères, il est difficile qu'ils  
other, it is difficult for      redeviennent amis.  
them ever to become  
friends again.

The preposition **Après** requires the Past Infinitive.

#### EXERCISE

1. Cet homme gagne sa vie en filant du chanvre et du lin.

2. Il s'est foulé le doigt en essayant d'ouvrir cette porte.

3. La femme s'est éloignée, poussant une charrette devant elle.

4. Je le croyais parti, je suis tout étonné de le savoir ici. Entre nous, je ne le crois pas bien heureux, ce brave garçon. Il a bien du chagrin, j'en suis sûr.

5. Ils étaient bien loin l'un de l'autre; ils s'écrivaient quelquefois.

6. Est-ce qu'il a le droit de voter? Je crois que non. Il n'a que vingt ans.

7. Je croyais qu'il avait détruit cette lettre, et, en effet, il a fini par tout avouer. Il l'avait fait sans réfléchir.

8. Nous attendions que le train partît. Enfin un homme

est arrivé en courant et en agitant une lanterne, et il a dit quelques mots au conducteur.

9. Louis était bien triste ce matin ; je l'ai trouvé pleurant.

Louise était bien triste ce matin ; je l'ai trouvée pleurant.

10. Est-ce que Marie est malade ? elle paraît souffrante.

11. Après avoir bien vu Rome je désirai voir Naples. C'est le tombeau de Virgile et le berceau du Tasse qui m'y attireraient surtout.

12. J'ai passé l'après-midi à lire Les Misérables. Cette lecture m'a ému profondément.

13. Le premier poème de ce recueil porte le titre " Au Lecteur."

14. Ce professeur va faire une série de conférences sur Victor Hugo.

## VOCABULARY

agiter, <i>to wave, to agitate.</i>	attirer, <i>to attract.</i>
le berceau, <i>the cradle.</i>	la charrette, <i>the cart.</i>
le chanvre, <i>hemp.</i>	la conférence, <i>the lecture.</i>
s'éloigner, <i>to go away.</i>	en effet, <i>in fact, as I thought.</i>
ému (past part.), <i>moved, stirred.</i>	filer, <i>to spin.</i>
fouler, <i>to sprain.</i>	le lin, <i>flax.</i>
loin, <i>far.</i>	la lecture, <i>reading.</i>
pleurer, <i>to weep.</i>	le lecteur, <i>the reader.</i>
profondément, <i>deeply.</i>	le recueil, <i>the collection.</i>
le tombeau, <i>the tomb.</i>	surtout, <i>above all, especially.</i>
le Tasse, <i>Tasso.</i>	Virgile, <i>Vergil.</i>
	le titre, <i>the title.</i>

NOTES.—4. **Le savoir ici.** *To know him here = to know that he is here.* Notice the repetition of the object in the second sentence ; this is very frequent in French.

5. Notice how to say "from each other."

6. **Je crois que non,** *I think not.* **Je crois que oui,** *I think so.*

7. **Tout** is usually placed before the infinitive of which it is the object.

11. **Le Tasse.** A number of names of famous persons often have the article.



*For Translation*

1. A baker earns his living selling bread. She earns her living singing in a church.

2. How did you sprain your finger? I sprained it lifting that heavy table.

3. Louis is well. My mother thought he was ill. I do not believe you are very happy. Tell me what is agitating you.

4. They wrote to each other. They are never seen one without the other. They drew near each other.

5. Is Louis up-stairs? I think so. Did he speak ill of you? I think not.

6. After reflecting a few moments he confessed all.

7. Why are those girls weeping? I found them weeping bitterly a few moments ago. Do you know why they were weeping?

8. Tell me what it is that attracts you in Paris. Everything attracts me there.

9. What are you reading? What were you reading? What must I read to you? How long have you been reading? You said you would read *Les Misérables*. Who wrote *Les Misérables*? (*It is*) Victor Hugo. How do you translate the title of that poem?

10. After taking a walk on the shore of the lake we returned home. After taking a walk in the park he returned home. After taking a walk in the garden I returned home.

11. Where did you meet your brother? I met him while going to school.

12. Relate to us the story of your journey. My uncle tells very interesting stories; he has traveled a great deal.

13. Are the children well?

14. What is that man carrying in his arms? It is a little dog.

15. What are you writing? What were you writing? I thought you would write to me oftener. I should have written to you oftener if I had had more time.



16. Inscribe your name on the list. Have you inscribed your name there?

17. Which of the men was elected? He predicted that you would be elected.

18. What do they say? What were they saying? What will they say? What must they say?

19. She is very amusing. She is amusing her little brother.

## LESSON LXI

1. Learn **Faire**, *to make, to do, to cause*

Like faire :

**contrefaire**, *to counterfeit*;      **défaire**, *to undo, to defeat*;  
**satisfaire**, *to satisfy*.

2. What are you doing there? Qu'est-ce que vous faites là?  
 Have you done your lessons? Avez-vous fait vos leçons?

He has made a mistake.

Il a fait une faute.

We took a walk.

Nous avons fait une promenade.

That makes no difference.

Cela ne fait rien.

What is that to you?

Qu'est-ce que cela vous fait?

That gives me pleasure.

Cela me fait plaisir.

That grieves me.

Cela me fait de la peine.

The student will find a very great variety in the idiomatic uses of **faire**. A few important ones are given above.

3. **Faire** + an infinitive

The doctor has come.

Le médecin est venu.

Have you sent for the doctor?

Avez-vous **fait venir** le médecin?

Cut my hair, if you please.

Coupez-moi les cheveux, s'il vous plaît.

Have your hair cut.

**Faites-vous couper** les cheveux.

Have you written the letter? Avez-vous écrit la lettre?  
ter?

Have you had the letter written? Avez-vous **fait écrire** la lettre?

He is having a house built. Il **fait bâtir** une maison.

Open the door. Ouvrez la porte.

Cause the door to be opened. **Faites ouvrir** la porte.

I have had the door closed. J'ai **fait fermer** la porte.

She makes dresses. Elle **fait des robes**.

She has her dresses made. Elle **fait faire** ses robes.

The verb **faire** is used before an infinitive to express the idea that the action is to be done by some one or something else. The English equivalents are *have, get, cause*; as, *Have it done, get it done, cause it to be done*.

4. The reed bends. Le roseau plie.  
The wind bends the reed. Le vent **fait plier** le roseau.

In English we often use a verb causatively. In French the verb **faire** must be used in nearly every case.

5. Condé made the Germans cross the Rhine. Condé fit passer le Rhin aux Allemands.

Analysis of the above sentence :

#### THE ENGLISH SENTENCE

Subject, *Condé*. Predicate, *made*. Object, the infinitive clause, *The Germans cross the Rhine*.

## THE FRENCH SENTENCE

Subject, *Condé*.

Verb, *fit*.

Object of *fit*, *passer*.

Object of *passer*, *le Rhin*.

Indirect object of *fit*, *aux Allemands*.

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 6. That made your brother<br>open his eyes.                   | Cela a fait ouvrir les yeux à<br>votre frère.            |
| The teacher had the boys<br>copy the sentence.                | Le maître a fait copier la<br>phrase aux élèves.         |
| The teacher had them<br>copy the sentence.                    | Le maître leur a fait copier<br>la phrase.               |
| Here are the sentences<br>which the teacher had<br>them copy. | Voici les phrases que le maî-<br>tre leur a fait copier. |

When there are two objects in this construction, one the person, the other the thing, the object of the person becomes the *dative* or indirect object.

Note that the participle **fait** is invariable when followed by an infinitive.

7. I have had a coat made for myself. Je **me suis** fait faire un habit.  
She has had a dress made. Elle **s'est** fait faire une robe.

When this dative pronoun represents the same person as the subject, we have a reflexive verb, and the auxiliary to be used for the compound tenses is *être*.

## EXERCISE

1. C'était pour lui un grand désappointement, et qui l'a fait beaucoup souffrir.
2. Il est incapable de faire souffrir les autres.
3. Je ne peux pas voir souffrir les autres.

4. Toutes les qualités de l'homme se laissent voir dans son livre, sans aucune affectation, par le seul récit des faits.

5. Il faisait nuit. Nous ne voyions plus rien.

6. Il lui fit rendre l'objet volé. L'objet volé fut rendu.

7. Je n'éprouvais ni le besoin de tuer les autres ni celui de me faire tuer par eux. Je ne savais pas pourquoi on faisait cette guerre.

8. Son père l'a fait soldat. Il s'est laissé faire soldat. Il s'est fait soldat. Que comptez-vous faire de votre fils? J'en ferai un médecin.

9. Il se faisait un grand bruit dans la chambre.

10. Faites voir la lettre à votre sœur. Je la lui ai fait voir. Faites-lui voir aussi celle qu'André vous a écrite.

11. L'air des montagnes te fera du bien. Vas-y le plus tôt possible.

12. Dis à ton frère de venir nous faire une visite. Ça me ferait plaisir de l'avoir ici quelque temps.

13. Hier il faisait froid. Aujourd'hui il fait chaud.

14. Quel temps fait-il aujourd'hui? Je ne suis pas encore sorti. Il fait très beau, monsieur. Est-ce qu'il fait du vent?

15. L'âpreté du climat le fit partir pour l'Italie. L'âpreté du climat lui fit quitter le pays.

16. Dès que nous eûmes fait nos malles nous partîmes.

17. Les cochers de Paris font sans cesse claquer leurs fouets.

18. Nous faisons notre bonheur en faisant celui des autres.

#### VOCABULARY

l'âpreté (f.), *severity, harshness.*

le cocher, *the coachman, cab-driver.*

le fouet, *the whip.*

le récit, *the account, narrative.*

voler, *to steal.*

éprouver, *to experience, to undergo.*

la malle, *the trunk.*

souffrir (irr. verb), *to suffer.*

le temps, *the weather.*

faire du bien, *to do good.*

NOTES.—1, 2, 3, 4. When **faire**, **laisser**, **entendre**, and **voir** govern an infinitive, the infinitive generally follows immediately.

4. **Se laissent voir** = *allow themselves to be seen*. The analysis of the English sentence is: Subject, *qualities*; verb, *allow*; object, the infinitive clause, *themselves to be seen*. The analysis of the French sentence is: Subject, **qualités**; verb, **laissent**; object, **voir**; object of **voir**, **se**. This explains why a passive infinitive is *apparently* rendered by an active one. If we think of **laisser voir** as one word, equivalent to *show*, the construction is clear enough.

9. **Il se faisait**. **Se faire** is often used impersonally. The real subject of the sentence is **bruit**.

13, 14. **Faire** is used impersonally to describe the weather.

15. Why **le** in one sentence and **lui** in the other?

### *For Translation*

1. Send for the coachman. My father sent for the coachman.

The cab-driver snaps his whip. The cab-drivers were snapping their whips.

2. As soon as I have packed my trunk I shall be ready to start. I must have that trunk opened. I have lost the key of it.

3. The severity of the climate made them start for Italy. The teacher made them leave the room.

4. What time is it? How is the weather? How much time have we? How many times have you sent for the doctor?

5. It will be warm. It was warmer in Italy than in France.

6. In northern countries it is cold (*countries of the north*).

7. I shall pay you a visit next week. That will give me much pleasure. You would give me much pleasure by paying me a visit this week. My visit did me good. I was sure that my visit would do me good.

8. There is always a great noise in a factory.

9. It is windy.

10. He allows himself to be deceived. Do not allow

yourself to be deceived. I knew that she would allow herself to be deceived.

11. France was waging a war against Spain.

12. I experienced many difficulties during the first months.

13. Do not make anybody suffer. You made me suffer. I have never made anybody suffer.

14. My brother had the poor dog killed.

15. Who is having that house built?

16. It will be a great disappointment for me if you refuse to have those flowers planted.

17. That will make John open his eyes. That will make him open his eyes.

18. The general had the army cross the Rhine. He had them cross the Rhine. He had them cross it.

19. The teacher had us write an exercise. He had us write it. He has an exercise written every three days.

20. I do not write my letters; I have them written.

## LESSON LXII

### 1. Learn *tenir*, *to hold*, and *venir*, *to come*.

NOTE.—The Preterit appears peculiar to learners. It is: *je tins*, *tu tins*, *il tint*, *nous tîmes*, *vous tîtes*, *ils tinrent*; and the Imperfect Subjunctive formed from this regularly is: *je tinsse*, *tu tinsses*, *il tint*, *nous tinssions*, *vous tinssiez*, *ils tinssent*.

Like *tenir* are conjugated:

<i>s'abstenir</i> , <i>to abstain</i> ,	<i>maintenir</i> , <i>to maintain</i> .
<i>appartenir</i> , <i>to belong</i> .	<i>obtenir</i> , <i>to obtain</i> .
<i>contenir</i> , <i>to contain</i> .	<i>retenir</i> , <i>to hold back, retain</i> .
<i>entretenir</i> , <i>to entertain, to converse</i> .	<i>soutenir</i> , <i>to uphold, sustain, etc.</i>



Like **venir** are conjugated :

<b>convenir</b> , <i>to suit, to agree.</i>	<b>prévenir</b> , <i>to prevent, to notify.</i>
<b>devenir</b> , <i>to become.</i>	<b>revenir</b> , <i>to come back.</i>
<b>parvenir</b> , <i>to attain, succeed.</i>	<b>se souvenir</b> , <i>to remember, etc.</i>

NOTE.—**Tenir** and **venir** show the principle of stem-strengthening explained in Lesson LII, Rule 6.

2. I am going to write a letter.      Je **vais** écrire une lettre.

Go and speak to him.      **Allez** lui parler.

They were about to come back.      Ils **allaient** revenir.

**Aller** is used with a following infinitive to express immediate future action. This construction corresponds also to the English idiom "*go and, went and,*" etc.

3. I have just seen him (*I come from seeing him*).      Je **viens** de le voir.

We have just arrived.      Nous **venons** d'arriver.

**Venir de** is used with a following infinitive to express immediate past action.

4. He has just gone out.      Il **vient** de sortir.

He had just gone out.      Il **venait** de sortir.

Only two tenses of **venir** are used in this way, the present and the imperfect. The present corresponds to the English *have just*, and the imperfect to *had just*.

5. He came and told me the news.      Il **est** venu me dire la nouvelle.

Come and see us.      Venez nous **voir**.

**Venir** governing an infinitive without a preposition corresponds to the English idiom "*come and.*" Cf. 2 above, second sentence.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 6. Do you remember those days?           | Vous souvenez-vous de ces jours-là?            |
| I remember them.                         | Je m'en souviens.                              |
| Remember me.                             | Souvenez-vous de moi.                          |
| Remember it.                             | Souvenez-vous-en.                              |
| It is a thing that I remember very well. | C'est une chose dont je me souviens très bien. |

The verb *se souvenir* requires the preposition *de*. Hence the object *it, them*, must be expressed by *en*, and the relative pronoun object by *dont*. A great many reflexive verbs have the same construction.

#### EXERCISE

1. Venez par ici. Je vais au bureau là-bas acheter des billets. Trois billets pour Rouen, aller et retour, en deuxième. Où est Georges? Il est sorti par là. Par où, dites-vous? Par cette porte-là. Il est allé dans la salle d'attente. C'est par là qu'on va aux trains. Allons le rejoindre. A quelle heure est-ce que nous reviendrons demain? Allez vous informer de l'heure des trains de Rouen. Il y en a un le matin, j'en suis sûr. C'est par ce train-là que ma sœur est revenue l'autre jour.

2. Il s'en est allé nous prévenant qu'il reviendrait avant peu, nous l'attendons à tout moment.

3. Nous sommes montés au deuxième étage dans une pièce qui contenait une trentaine de lits. C'est ici qu'on allait mettre les soldats blessés.

4. Il était convenu que nous nous rencontrerions devant l'église à cinq heures. J'ai été exact au rendez-vous.

5. Après trois heures d'une marche pénible, nous sommes parvenus au sommet.

6. Mes amis viendront me chercher à onze heures.

7. Tout ce qu'on pouvait dire, c'est que ces gens habitaient la maison depuis un mois, qu'ils n'avaient jamais payé un sou, que le propriétaire venait de les chasser, et que c'était un fameux débarras !

8. Avant 1870 l'Alsace appartenait à la France. A présent elle appartient à l'Allemagne.

9. Bon jour, monsieur ! Tiens, c'est vous ? Comme vous voyez. Mais je vous croyais à la campagne. J'en reviens. Comment va votre frère ? Il ne va pas mieux, nous allons l'envoyer en Suisse.

10. Le loup devient hardi quand la faim le pousse.

11. Si tu pars je suis sûr que tu ne reviendras pas.

12. Je vous retiendrai une bonne place.

13. On dit que l'éléphant se souvient des injures qu'on lui fait.

14. Vous m'avez dit que vous me tiendriez compagnie ce soir. Il faut tenir votre parole.

15. Autrefois j'étudiais le français, mais je ne suis jamais parvenu à le parler couramment.

16. Je lui ai demandé si l'heure que j'avais fixée lui convenait.

# VOCABULARY

l'aller (n.), <i>trip outward.</i>	avant peu, <i>shortly.</i>
une attente, <i>a waiting.</i>	le billet, <i>the ticket, the note.</i>
le bureau, <i>the office.</i>	couramment, <i>fluently.</i>
chasser, <i>to expel, drive away.</i>	exact, <i>punctual, on time.</i>
un bon débarras, <i>good rid-</i> <i>dance.</i>	une injure, <i>a wrong, an in-</i> <i>sult.</i>
un étage, <i>a floor, story.</i>	une marche, <i>walking, a march.</i>
un loup, <i>a wolf.</i>	une pièce, <i>a room.</i>
un rendez-vous, <i>meeting-</i> <i>place, appointment.</i>	s'informer de, <i>to find out</i> <i>about.</i>
un sou, <i>a cent</i> ( $\frac{1}{20}$ of a franc).	aller chercher, } <i>to call for</i>
le retour, <i>return-trip, re-</i> <i>turn.</i>	venir chercher, }

NOTES.—1. **Par ici**, *this way*.

3. **Une pièce**. We have now had *pièce* in the three different meanings: *play, room, coin*.

4. When to **meet** means *to meet each other*, use the pronominal verb in translating it.

9. The French say **bon jour**, **bon soir**, and on parting for the night, **bonne nuit**. They never say **bon matin** or **bonne après-midi**. **Tiens** and **tenez** are exclamations of surprise or to call some one's attention. **Aller** is the verb most frequently used in inquiring after people's health. Compare the German *Wie geht es?*

15. **Parvenir** is used as a synonym of **réussir**. Both these verbs require the preposition **à** before the dependent infinitive.

16. Notice that when **convenir** means *to suit*, it requires a dative.

#### *For Translation*

1. He is holding me back. He held me back. What will hold him back?

2. I remember you. Do you remember me? Does he remember her? I remember the fact. Do you not remember it? Did he remember it? Would you have remembered it? Do not forget it. Remember it.

3. Are you going to ask him if the room suits him? Were you not going to ask him whether the room suited him?

4. My cousins say that they are going to come back to Paris. They said that they were going to come back to Paris.

5. John has just arrived. He looks a little pale. He is going to leave again for the country in a few days.

6. I had just come in when you called me.

7. Where are the children? They have just gone out. They are in the garden. They are going to play a while (*un peu*).

8. He comes to see me once a week. He came and told me he had obtained his father's permission to make us a visit next summer.

9. Which way did Louis go out? He went out that way. In future the pupils will come in this way. Which way did you say?

10. Go buy the tickets. Take two return-tickets for Versailles, second class. Is this the way you go to the trains? This way, sir. Pass through the waiting-room.

11. We were going to meet at my house. Let's meet at the door of the theater. It is agreed that we shall meet there at a quarter before eight, isn't it? I shall be there. Be on time.

12. He calls me every morning. I shall call for you at 5 o'clock.

13. How are you? How is your friend? How are your brothers? They are well, thank you.

14. You said you would come back early. Louis said he would come back early. I shall come back before nine o'clock.

15. Come and keep me company. They came and kept us company. You must keep us company. We said we should keep you company if you were going to stay at home.

16. Good morning, Mr. Pellissier.

### LESSON LXIII

- |                                |                                      |
|--------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| 1. I think he has my book.     | Je crois qu'il a mon livre.          |
| I do not think he has my book. | Je ne crois pas qu'il ait mon livre. |
| I think he remembers you.      | Je crois qu'il se souvient de vous.  |
| Do you think he remembers it?  | Croyez-vous qu'il s'en souvienne?    |

The subjunctive is used after a negative or interrogative verb that implies doubt or uncertainty.

2. I am not sure that he will come.      Je ne suis pas sûr qu'il vienne.  
 I am sure he will come.      Je suis sûr qu'il viendra.  
 Do you think he is handsome?      Trouvez-vous qu'il soit beau?  
 Don't you think he is handsome?      Ne trouvez-vous pas qu'il est beau?

Only when the speaker wishes to imply doubt in his mind is the subjunctive used; often a negative question is equivalent to an affirmation, as in the last above. Hence the indicative.

3. We became friends.      Nous sommes devenus amis.  
 He is a father.      Il est père.  
 He became a soldier.      Il se fit soldat.  
 He is a Swede.      Il est Suédois.  
 He is an artist.      Il est artiste.  
 He is an artist of merit.      Il est un artiste de mérite.

Predicate nouns of *nationality, profession, title*, used without special adjunct, have no article.

4. Learn *acquérir, to acquire.*      *assaillir, to assail.*  
       *courir, to run.*      *cueillir, to gather, to pluck.*  
       *mourir, to die.*      *fuir, to flee.*

Like *acquérir*, conjugate *conquérir, to conquer.*

Like *courir*, conjugate *accourir* (with *être*), *to run up*; *concourir, to cooperate, to compete*; *parcourir, to go through*; *secourir, to aid, to succor.*

Like *cueillir*, conjugate *accueillir, to welcome.*

Like *fuir*, conjugate *s'enfuir, to run away.*

NOTE.—*acquérir* and *mourir* show the principle of stem-strengthening explained in Lesson LII, Rule 6.



## EXERCISE

1. Il mourait de peur, le pauvre innocent, peur des chiens qui rôdaient autour de lui, peur de la nuit qui venait, peur des inconnus qui lui parlaient; et son petit cœur battait à grands coups dans sa poitrine, comme celui d'un oiseau qui va mourir.

2. En 1661 Louis XIV avait vingt-trois ans et il régnait depuis dix-huit ans sans s'être fait connaître. Personne ne pensait qu'un jeune prince, livré jusqu'alors aux amusements de son âge, osât gouverner par lui-même.

3. Je ne crois pas que ce chanteur se soit acquis une grande réputation à Paris.

4. Croyez-vous que ce jeune homme ait raison? Mais oui, je crois qu'il a raison, je suis même sûr qu'il a raison. Voulez-vous donc dire que j'aie tort? Il n'est guère possible que vous ayez tous deux raison. Pardonnez-moi d'être si franc. Je ne crois pas qu'il ait tort.

5. Croyez-vous vraiment qu'on fasse son bonheur en faisant celui des autres? Êtes-vous sûr que ce soit là un bon principe? J'en suis certain.

6. Personne ne croyait qu'il fût sur le point de mourir.

7. Personne ne croira que vous soyez artiste. Ne vous flattez pas tant.

8. Je ne croyais pas qu'on m'eût accueilli si chaleureusement.

9. Croyez-vous que nous ne fassions pas notre devoir, ou au moins que nous n'essayions pas de le faire?

10. Croyez-vous que nous ayons le temps d'attraper le train?

11. Croyez-vous qu'il finisse son travail à temps?

12. Le médecin croyait que le pauvre soldat mourait, mais il n'est pas mort. Il porte toujours les traces de la maladie affreuse.

13. Croyez-vous que ma sœur guérisse, docteur? J'espère qu'elle guérira, mademoiselle.

14. Louis ne croit pas que Frédéric nous attende plus longtemps ; nous avons tort de nous faire attendre.

## VOCABULARY

**attraper**, *to catch.*

**un coup**, *a stroke, beat.*

**inconnu, inconnue**, *unknown.*

**rôder**, *to prowl.*

**affreux, affreuse**, *dreadful.*

**chaleureux**, *cordial, warm.*

**se livrer**, *to give oneself up.*

**la poitrine**, *the breast, chest.*

NOTES.—1. **Innocent** and **inconnus** are here used as nouns.

5. **Ce soit là**. When **ce** used as subject of **être** is to be emphasized, **là** is placed after the verb.

10. **Avoir le temps**. Note the use of the article.

11. **A temps**, *on time.*

11, 13. The present subjunctive often has a future meaning.

14. **Nous faire attendre**. Here **nous** is the direct object of **attendre**. **Se faire attendre** means *to keep somebody waiting for you*.

*For Translation*

1. He must acquire a certain reputation. 2. He thinks he will acquire (*une*) great influence. 3. Why do you run? Why were you running? He ran and told his mother what you said. 4. William the Conqueror conquered England in 1066. Remember that date. 5. He will die. I am dying of hunger. They say they are dying of thirst. I do not believe you are dying with the desire (*d'envie*) to see him. 6. The girls are gathering roses. We shall gather flowers together. 7. That little cat is afraid; he always runs away when any one comes near him. 8. We went through all the museums in (*de*) Paris. 9. One of my brothers is a lawyer. The other is a doctor. I shall be a painter. 10. Are you sure he has talent? Do you think they are Italians? Do you know whether he is a father? 11. We thought the little bird was going to die. 12. Thieves were prowling about the town. 13. I do not believe you dare to tell him what you think of the thing. 14. He welcomed us very warmly. 15. We were on the point of starting. 16. I was on the point of writing to you. 17. No one thought that

she was on the point of death. 18. I do not believe he has caught the train. 19. Do you think we shall finish our exercises on time? Have I time to write one page more? 20. Are you sure he is worthy of the honor you are going to confer upon him? 21. He is a man of merit. 22. Do you think she will pay back the money? I believe she will give you back the money. 23. He has just been elected judge.

## LESSON LXIV

1. Learn **valoir**, *to be worth*, and **vouloir**, *to will, to want, to wish*.

NOTE.—*a*. The regular imperative of **vouloir** is rarely if ever used. **Veillez** means *please, have the kindness to*.

NOTE.—*b*. These two verbs show the principle of stem-strengthening explained in Lesson LII, Rule 6.

2. Better late than never. **Mieux vaut tard que jamais**.

It is better to try it than **Il vaut mieux l'essayer que d'y**  
to give it up. **renoncer**.

The impersonal verb **il vaut mieux** requires **que de** before the infinitive, which is the second term of comparison.

NOTE.—To give up a thing is **renoncer à une chose**.

I give up my opinion.

**Je renonce à mon opinion.**

I give it up.

**J'y renonce.**

3. I want to go with him. **Je veux aller avec lui**.

I want you to go with him. **Je veux que vous alliez avec lui**.

He would like to go with **Il voudrait aller avec nous**  
us.

He would like us to go **Il voudrait que nous allassions**  
with him. **avec lui**.

*a*. The verb **vouloir** requires the infinitive without a preposition, when the action desired is to be done by the same person as the subject.

b. The verb **vouloir**, and any verb meaning *to desire*, *to command*, *to allow*, *to forbid*, etc., requires the subjunctive when the action desired is to be done by some other than the subject.

c. **Je voudrais**, etc., is milder than **je veux**. It is translated, *I wish*, *I should like*.

4. He wishes he were in Paris. Il voudrait être à Paris.

He wishes you were in Paris. Il voudrait que vous fussiez à Paris.

When the main verb is in the conditional, the dependent verb is usually in the imperfect or pluperfect tense of the subjunctive.

5. If they don't believe me, S'ils ne me croient pas qu'ils  
let them come and see. viennent voir.

Let him go out ! Qu'il sorte !

May he be blessed ! Qu'il soit béni !

Let him come back at once ! Qu'il revienne tout de suite !

Be it so. All right. Soit (t sounded).

The subjunctive is here used *absolutely*—that is, without a main verb. We may consider some part of the verb *vouloir* understood, but the better explanation is that the third person of the subjunctive supplies the *third person of the imperative*.

6. What do you mean ? Que voulez-vous dire ?

What does he mean by that ? Qu'est-ce qu'il veut dire par cela ?

What does this sentence mean ? Que veut dire cette phrase !

*To mean* is translated by **vouloir dire**.

## EXERCISE

1. Il vaut infiniment mieux avoir toujours l'estime des hommes que quelquefois leur admiration. Veuillez me dire où vous avez trouvé cette pensée. C'est une phrase de Jean-Jacques Rousseau. J. J. Rousseau était Suisse. Plusieurs Suisses se sont distingués dans la littérature française.

2. Je voudrais savoir pourquoi ma mère n'a pas reçu cette lettre.

3. Il y a tant de choses qu'on voudrait savoir!

4. Pendant ces jours de malheur je croyais vivre dans un mauvais rêve.

5. Il désire aller au théâtre. Il désire que vous restiez à la maison. Il défend que nous sortions.

6. Je voudrais qu'ils fussent venus de meilleure heure.

7. Vive le roi! Vive la France!

8. Ne voulez-vous pas chanter cet air? Je préfère que vous le chantiez, car vous chantez beaucoup mieux que moi.

9. Louis XIV exigea des principaux fonctionnaires de l'État qu'ils correspondissent directement avec lui.

10. Veuillez répéter cette phrase; je voudrais la copier.

11. Je les attends; qu'ils viennent!

12. Faites comme vous voudrez; je ne veux pas vous donner de conseils.

13. Cet homme ne vaut pas cher, et son frère ne vaut pas mieux. Ce sont des vauriens!

14. Le maître exige que nous écrivions beaucoup. Il désire nous former l'oreille et l'œil en même temps.

## VOCABULARY

défendre, *to forbid.*

une opinion, *an opinion.*

exiger, *to require, to exact.*

une oreille, *an ear.*

l'estime (f.), *esteem.*

NOTES.—2. Je voudrais savoir often means *I wonder*. Another expression for *I wonder* is *je me demande*.

5. Défendre has two meanings.

13. Ne vaut pas cher; *is not much good*. Familiar idiom.

*For Translation*

1. He gave up all his wealth. Why did he give it up?
2. You will never succeed in making him believe that. Give it up. I do not wish to give it up. It is the truth, and I want him to believe it.
3. I wondered if it would not be better to go to the lecture on Victor Hugo than to stay home.
4. Don't you want to have your hair cut? These ladies wish to have some dresses made. They wish you to make them.
5. They would like us to make them a visit. Should you not like to visit them?
6. I wish the weather were fine.
7. How much is that house worth? The house was worth fifty thousand francs. That house will be worth a hundred thousand francs in a few years.
8. I do not believe that house is worth the price they ask.
9. He wants to go to the theater. He desires you to stay home. He forbids our going out. We give up our walk.
10. I wish they had come earlier. I wish I had come earlier.
11. It is agreed that we meet at M. Lassalle's at nine.
12. What do you mean? What does that word mean? I did not understand what he meant by that expression.
13. That means that you will not be here.
14. I want him to remember it. He wants you to remember him. I want them to be punctual. They want us to meet them at 3 o'clock.
15. I should like to speak French fluently. You will succeed if you continue to work at it.
16. He would like to distinguish himself in literature. They would have liked to study French literature.
17. Is it not better to be unhappy than to give up his esteem?



18. Please tell me how much this house is worth.

19. Would it not be better to tell the truth? Would it not have been better to tell the truth?

## LESSON LXV

1. A silk dress.	Une robe <b>de</b> soie.
A silkworm.	Un ver <b>à</b> soie.
A cup of tea.	Une tasse <b>de</b> thé.
A tea-cup.	Une tasse <b>à</b> thé.
A blast of wind.	Un coup <b>de</b> vent.
A windmill.	Un moulin <b>à</b> vent.
A wooden table.	Une table <b>de</b> bois.
A writing-table.	Une table <b>à</b> écrire.
The blue-eyed girl.	La fille <b>aux</b> yeux bleus.

*a.* **De** between two nouns in French may express the relation of *material* or *origin*. The *second* noun then gives the *material* or *origin*.

*b.* **A** between two nouns usually expresses the relation of *purpose* or of *means*, or it expresses a *characteristic*.

2. Learn the verb **falloir**.

**Falloir** is an impersonal verb.

NOTE.—This verb also shows the principle of stem-strengthening. See Lesson LII, Rule 6.

3. It is five o'clock; we must go.	Il est cinq heures, il <b>faut</b> partir.
It was five o'clock; we had to go.	Il était cinq heures, il <b>fallait</b> partir.
We shall have to go in five minutes.	Il <b>faudra</b> partir dans cinq minutes.
He said we should have to start in five minutes.	Il a dit qu'il <b>faudrait</b> partir dans cinq minutes.
To get there on time we should have had to start sooner.	Pour y arriver à temps il <b>aurait fallu</b> partir plus tôt.

The infinitive is used after *falloir*, but only when it is perfectly clear who is meant.

- |                     |                               |
|---------------------|-------------------------------|
| 4. You must get up. | Il faut <b>vous lever</b> .   |
| We must part.       | Il faut <b>nous quitter</b> . |

When the dependent verb is a reflexive verb the infinitive is more usual than the subjunctive, because the pronoun object indicates who is meant.

- |                          |  |
|--------------------------|--|
| 5. You must go at once ; | Il faut que <b>vous partiez</b> tout   |
| Andrew must stay here.   | de suite et qu'André <b>reste</b> ici. |

When it is necessary to indicate specifically the person or thing meant, *falloir* requires the dependent verb to be in the subjunctive.

6. *Falloir* has all the tenses, whereas the English *must* has only one form. The English language makes up this deficiency with such forms as *had to*, *will be obliged to*, etc.

- |                           |                                   |
|---------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 7. You must not touch it. | Il <b>ne faut pas</b> le toucher. |
|---------------------------|-----------------------------------|

a. In the negative, *falloir* itself takes the negative adverb, and not the following infinitive.

b. Do not translate the verb *falloir* by *to be necessary*. The above sentence does *not* mean "It is not necessary to touch it."

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 8. It is going to take an hour to get there.             | Il va <b>falloir</b> une heure pour y arriver.                         |
| It required all my attention to understand what he said. | Il <b>fallait</b> toute mon attention pour comprendre ce qu'il disait. |
| I need a new hat.  | Il <b>me faut</b> un chapeau neuf.                                     |
| What does he want?                                       | Que <b>lui faut-il</b> ?   |

**Falloir** may have a noun or a pronoun as its object. It then means *to need, to require, to want*. The person mentioned as needing, etc., is expressed by a dative.

## EXERCISE

1. Il ne faut pas croire tout ce que cet homme vous a raconté. Je ne dis pas qu'il ait voulu mentir, mais il exagère volontiers.

2. Allons jouer dans la bibliothèque. Non, il ne faut pas y songer. Papa ne veut pas qu'on y aille. Il ne veut pas que nous dérangions ses papiers.

3. J'ai dit à Marie que nous voulions aller jouer dans la bibliothèque, mais elle a dit qu'il ne fallait pas y songer, à cause des papiers de papa qu'il ne veut pas qu'on dérange. Il faut donc rester où nous sommes.

4. Il faut apprendre à se passer de bien des choses. Oui, mais il y a des choses dont on ne peut se passer.

5. Il va falloir nous décider à nous quitter, mon cher enfant.

6. Il faudra que tu partes avant moi. A quelle heure faut-il que je sois de retour?

7. La mode est un tyran dont rien ne nous délivre,  
A son bizarre goût il faut s'accommoder;  
Mais sous ses folles lois étant forcé de vivre,  
Le sage n'est jamais le premier à la suivre  
Ni le dernier à la garder.

8. Il fallut un mois à cet homme pour faire le travail.

9. Combien vous faut-il? Il nous faut cent francs.

10. Nous avons mangé de la tête de veau à la vinaigrette.

11. J'ai trouvé sur la route un fer à cheval. Louis a un petit cheval de fer avec lequel il joue.

12. Un moine allemand a inventé la poudre à canon.

13. Avez-vous tout ce qu'il vous faut? Que vous faut-il de plus?

14. Mon oncle était un homme très grand, aux épaules larges, à la démarche lente.

## VOCABULARY

s'accommoder, <i>to adapt one-self.</i>	le veau, <i>the calf.</i>
décider, <i>to settle, to decide.</i>	bizarre, <i>odd.</i>
se décider, <i>to make up one's mind.</i>	une épaule, <i>a shoulder.</i>
le goût, <i>taste.</i>	un fer à cheval, <i>a horseshoe.</i>
large, <i>broad.</i>	la loi, <i>the law.</i>
mentir (irreg. verb), <i>to lie.</i>	la mode, <i>fashion.</i>
suivre (irreg. verb), <i>to follow.</i>	se passer de, <i>to do without.</i>
la démarche, <i>the bearing,</i>	songer, <i>to think.</i>
<i>walk.</i>	à la vinaigrette, <i>with a sauce of oil and vinegar.</i>

NOTES.—1. **Volontiers** is often stronger than *willingly*. **Il parle volontiers** means *he likes to talk, he is prone to talk*.

2. **Songer** is in many cases a synonym of **penser**. Both verbs require **à**.

4. **Se passer de**. This is an important idiomatic use of **passer**. As it governs its complement by means of the preposition **de**, the relative pronoun complement is **dont**, and the personal pronoun referring to things is **en**.

5. **Décider une question** = *to decide a question*; **décider une personne** = *to convince, to induce, or to persuade a person*; **se décider** = *to decide* in the sense of *to come to a decision*.

7. Notice that **premier** and **dernier** require **à** before the dependent infinitive.

*For Translation*

1. In what countries are silkworms found?
2. Will you have a cup of tea or a cup of coffee? I prefer coffee, if you please.
3. George, bring a wine-glass. Will you have a glass of wine, monsieur?
4. Have you ever read the story of Don Quixote (Don Quichotte) and the windmills?
5. There is a box of cigars. Take some. How do you

say in French *to smoke*? *To smoke* is *fumer*. Well, sir, I do not smoke, thank you.

6. I am going to study my French lesson. Louise and Marie are studying their music lesson. They have a four-hand piece now.

7. We have decided to get up early to-morrow morning. We want to see the sunrise on the lake. You will have to get up before four o'clock. I will be the first to get up.

8. I wanted to catch the three o'clock train. Louis said I should have had to start from the house at two. I did not know it took an hour to get to the station. Yes, it takes at least an hour.

9. It will require all your attention to understand what he says. He speaks very fast.

10. I have lost a gold ring and a pearl necklace. I let them fall crossing the garden. I was carrying a lot (*un tas*) of things—a silk dress, my sister's jewels, a broom, and this morning's paper. Let us look for them together. You must never carry so many things at once.

11. I was thinking of the beautiful days we had passed together.

12. Would you ask her why she was weeping? You mustn't think of it.

13. To ask him directly what he intended to do was impossible. It was not to be thought of.

14. You must not take your father's gold pen. If you have no pen you will have to do without any.

15. There are things one can do without.

16. He will have to get along without my friendship.

17. How much time do you need to finish the work?

18. I decided to pass the winter in Italy. When must we decide?

19. Why do you pick up that horseshoe?

20. Louis and I have not the same tastes.

21. You must make up your mind to part, my children.

## LESSON LXVI

1. Dormir,	dormant,	dormi,	je dors,	je dormis,	<i>to sleep.</i>
Bouillir,	bouillant,	bouilli,	je bous,	je bouillis,	<i>to boil.</i>
Mentir,	méntant,	menti,	je mens,	je mentis,	<i>to lie.</i>
Partir,	partant,	parti,	je pars,	je partis,	<i>to set out.</i>
Sentir,	sentant,	senti,	je sens,	je sentis,	<i>to feel, smell.</i>
Servir,	servant,	servi,	je sers,	je servis,	<i>to serve.</i>
Sortir,	sortant,	sorti,	je sors,	je sortis,	<i>to go out.</i>

The above verbs are all alike. The final consonant of the stem disappears in the present indicative singular.

Like the above :

endormir,	<i>to put to sleep.</i>	s'endormir,	<i>to go to sleep, to fall asleep.</i>
rendormir,	<i>to put to sleep again.</i>	se rendormir,	<i>to go to sleep again.</i>
repartir,	<i>to set out again, reply.</i>	se repentir,	<i>to repent.</i>
consentir,	<i>to consent.</i>	se servir,	<i>make use.</i>

2. We regret that he is ill.	Nous regrettons qu'il soit malade.
I am glad he is back.	Je suis content qu'il soit de retour.
I wonder you are not ill.	Je m'étonne que vous ne soyez pas malade.

A verb expressing *emotion* or *sentiment* (such as *fear, anger, joy, sorrow, wonder*) governs the subjunctive mode.

3. I am afraid he will come.	Je crains qu'il ne vienne.
I am afraid he will not come.	Je crains qu'il ne vienne pas.



I am not afraid he will come. Je ne crains pas qu'il vienne.

I am not afraid he will not come. Je ne crains pas qu'il ne vienne pas.

The verbs *craindre*, *to fear*; *avoir peur*, *to fear*; *trembler*, *to tremble*, when affirmative, require the subjunctive mode dependent upon them to be preceded by *ne*.

4. I doubt he will succeed. Je doute qu'il réussisse.

I do not doubt but that he will succeed. Je ne doute pas qu'il ne réussisse.

The verb *douter*, when negative, requires the dependent subjunctive to be preceded by *ne*.

5. I shall prevent his going out. J'empêcherai qu'il ne sorte.

Take care lest he fall. Prenez garde qu'il ne tombe.

*Empêcher* and *prendre garde* when not interrogative or negative require *ne* before the dependent subjunctive.

NOTE.—According to the rules of the Minister of Public Instruction this so-called expletive *ne* (3, 4, 5 above) may be omitted.

## 6. RÉSUMÉ OF VERBS REQUIRING THE SUBJUNCTIVE

*a.* *Vouloir* and words of like meaning. Such are verbs expressing desire, unwillingness, approval, disapproval, command, prohibition.

*b.* Verbs expressing uncertainty.

These verbs must be either impersonal verbs, or else interrogative or negative verbs.

*c.* Verbs expressing doubt and denial.

*d.* Verbs expressing emotion.

7. Verbs of *thinking, declaring, hoping*, govern the indicative unless they express uncertainty by being negative or interrogative.

#### EXERCISE

1. Je crains qu'il ne soit parti pour Rouen. Il m'a dit hier qu'il comptait y aller bientôt. S'il y est allé je doute qu'il soit de retour avant samedi.

2. Le palais des Papes à Avignon sert aujourd'hui de caserne à plusieurs régiments d'infanterie.

3. Craignez-vous qu'il vienne?

4. Quand les ministres vinrent demander au roi Louis XIV à qui ils s'adresseraient désormais: "A moi," leur répondit-il. Si l'on s'étonne de cette résolution, ce n'est pas qu'il l'ait prise, mais qu'il l'ait tenue.

5. Il est bien à craindre que l'empereur reconnu par les puissances européennes ne soit considéré par beaucoup comme un usurpateur.

6. Cette médecine endort. Le bruit m'a réveillé; ce n'est qu'au bout d'une heure que je me suis rendormi.

7. L'enfant dormait paisiblement; j'hésitais à la réveiller.

8. Servez-vous de mes plumes, si vous en avez besoin. Est-ce que je puis me servir de votre dictionnaire? Mais certainement, servez-vous-en. On se sert de ce beau granit pour bâtir des maisons. Je suis étonné qu'on se serve de bois quand il y a tant de pierre. Servez-vous de ces fruits, je vous prie. De quoi puis-je vous servir?

9. Il dort mal. Je regrette qu'il dorme si mal. Moi, j'ai bien dormi. Je dors toujours bien.

10. J'ai peur que vous ne tombiez. Je suis content que vous ne soyez pas tombé. Je regrette que vous soyez tombé.

11. Je crois qu'il partira demain. Je doute qu'il parte demain. Le roi ne doutait pas que la bataille ne fût gagnée.

12. Il déclare que j'étais avec lui. Je nie qu'il fût avec moi. Je m'étonne qu'il ait menti. Je déclare qu'il a menti.

13. Est-ce qu'ils sont sortis? Croyez-vous qu'ils soient sortis? Je crains qu'ils ne soient sortis. J'espère qu'ils ne sortiront pas.

14. Nous espérons que mon frère guérirait. Nous n'espérons plus qu'il guérisse.

## VOCABULARY

le bout, *the end.*

le pape, *the pope.*

je puis, *I can.*

nier, *to deny.*

paisible, *peaceful.*

la pierre, *the stone.*

NOTES.—2. **Servir de caserne**, *to serve as a barracks.* Notice this use of **de** after **servir**. **Régiment** is masculine. The suffix **-ment** gives masculine nouns. **Infanterie** and all nouns in **-erie** are feminine.

4. Notice **de** after **s'étonner**.

7. **Hésiter** governs the dependent infinitive with **à**.

8. **Se servir de**, *to make use of, to use*; a most important construction to learn.

*For Translation*

1. That stone serves me as a paper-weight (*presse-papier*).

2. I repent of it. Do you repent of it? You will repent of it. He has repented of it. I fear you will repent of it.

3. He falls asleep easily. I was falling asleep. They fell asleep. I knew she would fall asleep. She is afraid I may fall asleep.

4. I wonder at your courage. I wondered that he was so frank.

5. The doctor fears he has sprained his foot. The doctor says he has sprained his foot.

6. Make use of my books. Do not hesitate to make use of my books. Do not use my father's pen. I use that

table. Which table does your mother use? I used that table. You must not use that table. Do not use it.

7. I hope your father will get well. We are sure you will get well. I do not hope she will get well. I fear she will not get well.

8. That will prevent his going out. Nothing will prevent his going out.

9. Good morning, sir; have you slept well? I have slept well, thank you. How long do you sleep usually? I sleep six hours. I hope you will sleep well.

10. The water is boiling. The water was boiling. Bring me some boiling water. They used hot water.

11. I doubt that he is happy. Do you doubt that I am happy? He did not doubt that the money was lost. I am glad the money has been found. He declares that the money has been found. He denies that the money has been found.

12. I fear the money has been lost. I am not afraid that he has lost the money. Are you afraid he has lost the money?

## LESSON LXVII

1. Learn the verb *couvrir*, to *cover*.

Like *couvrir* :

*ouvrir*, to *open*.

*offrir*, to *offer*.

*souffrir*, to *suffer*.

*entr'ouvrir*, to *open slightly*.

*découvrir*, to *discover, uncover*.

*rouvrir*, to *open again*.

*recouvrir*, to *cover again*.

2. He is tall.

How tall he is!

See how heavy he is!

How small it is!

Il est grand.

Qu'il est grand!

Voyez **comme** il est lourd!

Que c'est petit.

In French, after one exclamatory or **comme** there is no inversion as in English.

3. Why didn't you say so? **Que** ne le disiez-vous?

**Que** may be used for *why* instead of *pourquoi* with a negative verb only. *Pas* is then usually omitted.

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 4. I am seeking a man who shall be capable.         | Je cherche un homme qui <b>soit</b> capable.             |
| I know a man who is capable.                        | Je connais un homme qui <b>est</b> capable.              |
| Have you a single friend who is faithful?           | Avez-vous un seul ami qui <b>soit</b> fidèle?            |
| I do not know one man who has succeeded.            | Je ne connais pas un seul homme qui <b>ait</b> réussi.   |
| There is a man who has succeeded.                   | Voilà un homme qui <b>a</b> réussi.                      |
| There are few men who have succeeded in doing that. | Il y a peu de gens qui <b>aient</b> réussi à faire cela. |

The verb in a **Relative Clause** is in the subjunctive when the main clause implies that the antecedent is something that *does not exist*, or *may not exist*.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 5. Paris is the most beautiful city I have ever seen.            | Paris est la plus belle ville que j' <b>aie</b> jamais vue.     |
| I believe he is the only friend who has remained faithful to me. | Je crois qu'il est le seul ami qui me <b>soit</b> resté fidèle. |
| It is the best you can do.                                       | C'est le mieux que vous <b>puissiez</b> faire.                  |

The verb in a **Relative Clause** is in the subjunctive when the main clause is an expression of opinion and the antecedent is accompanied by a **superlative**, or the words *seul*, *unique*, *premier*, *dernier*.

6. That is the only thing C'est la seule chose qu'il a dite.  
he said.

Here there is no expression of opinion, but the statement of a fact. Hence the indicative.

7. Whatever friends he has. Quelques amis qu'il ait.  
Whoever you are. Qui que vous soyez.  
Whatever you do. Quoi que vous fassiez.  
Whatever be your reasons. Quelles que soient vos raisons.  
However that may be. Quoi qu'il en soit.  
Whatever be his power. Quel que soit son pouvoir.

The verb in a Relative Clause is in the subjunctive after *qui*, *quoi*, *quel*. Also after *quelque*, meaning *whatever*.

8. However great he may be. Quelque grand qu'il soit.  
However patient you are. Si patient que vous soyez.

The verb in the clause depending upon the adverbs *quelque*, *si*, meaning *however*, is in the subjunctive.

#### EXERCISE

1. Je suis découragé, je ne fais rien qui vaille.

2. La prose est la langue de l'histoire et la seule qui lui convienne; la forme versifiée, quelles que soient les bonnes intentions de l'auteur, laisse trop de place à la fantaisie personnelle; et la rime et la mesure se concilient difficilement avec l'exacte vérité. Il n'est pas probable toutefois que ce soient des scrupules de ce genre qui aient amené Geoffroi de Villehardouin à rédiger en prose, au commencement du treizième siècle, sa *Chronique* sur la conquête de Constantinople. Mais n'étant ni clerc, ni trouvère, il n'avait ni la science, ni le goût, ni le temps d'écrire, soit en latin, soit en vers; il employa donc la prose vulgaire.

3. Comme elle est gracieuse, comme ils dansent bien !  
Tous les yeux se dirigeaient vers les deux danseurs.



4. S'il n'est pas content ici, que ne s'en va-t-il? Pourquoi parlez-vous de la sorte?

5. Je ne trouve personne qui veuille m'aider. Je cherche quelqu'un qui veuille m'aider. Vous voyez en moi quelqu'un qui veut vous aider.

6. Monsieur Le Maltour n'est pas un homme qu'on puisse traiter comme cela. Je veux que vous soyez poli avec lui comme avec tout le monde.

7. Je cherche quelque chose qui serve de remède à cela. Tâchez de découvrir quelqu'un qui ait l'argent nécessaire. Nous avons découvert quelqu'un qui a les connaissances nécessaires.

8. Ce monsieur n'est pas difficile. Il se contente de quoi que ce soit.

9. On ne croit plus un menteur, quoi qu'il dise.

10. Le chien est le seul animal dont la fidélité soit sûre.

11. Quelque riche qu'il soit, il n'est pas heureux.

12. Quelque petit que soit un objet on peut toujours en concevoir un qui le soit davantage.

13. Qu'il est joli, ce petit chien!

14. Quoi que vous disiez, évitez de mentir.

15. Qui que ce soit qui vous ait dit cela, c'est un sot.

16. Est-ce que Christophe Colomb est véritablement le premier qui ait découvert l'Amérique?

## VOCABULARY

se concilier, *to harmonize.*

le clerc, *the churchman.*

éviter, *to avoid.*

le genre, *the kind, sort.*

gracieux, gracieuse, *graceful.*

rédiger, *to compose, to write.*

le remède, *the remedy.*

toutefois, *however.*

la chronique, *the chronicle.*

davantage, *more.*

le trouvère, *poet (of the*

*Middle Age in Northern France).*

la fantaisie, *fancy, fantasy.*

la rime, *rhyme.*

traiter, *to treat.*

la vérité, *truth.*

vulgaire, *ordinary, common,*

*vulgar.*

NOTES.—8. **Difficile**, applied to persons, means *hard to please*.

12. **le soit davantage**. The pronoun **le** is used here to avoid repeating the adjective **petit**. In English we generally use *so* for this purpose. **Davantage** has the same meaning as **plus**, but there must be no complement after it. You may not say *davantage grand* or *davantage que moi*.

*For Translation*

1. Is that really the first church that was built in this town? Yes; it is the oldest church in the town.

2. What a beautiful bird! How beautiful that bird is! How beautiful peacocks are! However beautiful they are I do not like them, because they have disagreeable voices.

3. Whatever his faults may be, you must not deny that he is very generous. That is true; I do not know any one who is more so.

4. How heavy those books are! See how heavy they are! However heavy they may be, we must have them carried up-stairs without unpacking them. Why did you not say so sooner? I have already begun to unpack them.

5. I do not know any one who has suffered as he has. He has suffered a great deal. He does not suffer any more now.

6. Whatever he does, his sister thinks he is right.

7. The rhymes are very beautiful. However beautiful they may be, they do not prove that he is a poet. Do you know a poet who has written more beautiful verses?

8. Was that German monk really the first that invented gunpowder?

9. Are there any Swiss who have distinguished themselves in French literature? Is Rousseau the only one who has distinguished himself in French literature?

10. If he treated you badly, why did you not go away?

11. However difficult your exercises are, do not be discouraged. Try to understand the rules.

12. I am looking for some one who is willing to keep me company this evening.

13. Louis is the only one of the family who is always punctual.

14. Whatever he said, I am sure his intention was to tell the truth. It is the first time that he has been accused of lying.

15. Do you know that man? Whoever he is, he is very disagreeable.

16. Patient as your sister may be, she will not suffer you to say anything whatever against Mlle. Claire.

To unpack,	déballer.
Disagreeable,	désagréable.

### LESSON LXVIII

1. Learn *asseoir*, to seat; *pleuvoir*, to rain; *pourvoir*, to provide; *prévoir*, to foresee; *voir*, to see.

Like *voir* conjugate *revoir*, to see again.

NOTE.—*S'asseoir* means to seat oneself, to sit down.

2. Although he is ill, he Bien qu'il soit malade, il viendra.  
will come.

He got away without my Il s'est échappé sans que je  
having seen him. l'aie vu.

The subjunctive is required after certain conjunctions. The following are of frequent occurrence:

avant que,	before.	pourvu que,	provided that.
afin que,	in order that.	sans que,	without.
pour que,	in order that.	soit que,	whether.
bien que,	although.	à moins que,	unless.
quoique,	although.	de crainte que,	for fear that.
loin que,	far from.	de peur que,	for fear that.
jusqu'à ce que,	until.	en attendant que,	until.
non que,	not that.	non pas que,	not that.

NOTE.—*Quoique*, meaning *though*, is written as one word; *quoi que*, meaning *whatever*, as two words.

3. Before you open that window shut this one. **Avant d'ouvrir** cette fenêtre-là, fermez celle-ci.  
 In order that I may prove it to you, I am going to show you his letter. **Afin de** vous le prouver je vais vous montrer sa lettre.

For some of the conjunctions mentioned above in Rule 2, we may substitute prepositions when the dependent verb has not a different subject from the main verb. These prepositions govern the infinitive, of course. This principle of avoiding the subjunctive by using an infinitive construction has been seen in Lesson LXIV, Rule 3, and in Lesson LXV, Rules 4 and 5.

Such prepositions are: **avant de**, **afin de**, **pour**, **à moins de**, **sans**, **de crainte de**, **de peur de**.

NOTE.—The conjunction *after* is **après que**, and requires the Indicative. For the Rule of the preposition **après** see Lesson LX, Rule 8.

4. I'll be back to-morrow unless some unforeseen business detains me. Je serai de retour demain à moins que quelque affaire imprévue ne me retienne.  
 I seized him by the arm lest he should fall. Je le saisis au bras de peur qu'il ne tombât.

**A moins que**, **de crainte que**, and **de peur que** require the subjunctive preceded by **ne**.

5. A certain man told me so. Un certain homme me l'a dit.  
 We have received positive news. Nous avons reçu une nouvelle certaine.  
 He is a tall man. C'est un homme grand.  
 He was a great man. C'était un grand homme.  
 Poor man ! Le pauvre homme !

He is a poor man.	C'est un homme <b>pauvre</b> .
An expensive dress.	Une robe <b>chère</b> .
My dear child.	Mon <b>cher</b> enfant.
He is a fine fellow.	C'est un <b>brave</b> garçon.
He is a brave man.	C'est un homme <b>brave</b> .
The last week.	La <b>dernière</b> semaine.
Last week.	La semaine <b>dernière</b> .

Many adjectives in French have different meanings according as they precede or follow the noun.

## EXERCISE

1. Il était là depuis midi, le pauvre petit ! Sa mère l'avait assis sur une chaise et lui avait dit : Sois sage ! et il n'avait pas bougé.

2. Il est probable, quoiqu'il soit impossible de le prouver, que dès l'époque où il fut élu chef, Boniface de Montferrat forma le dessein secret de détourner vers Constantinople la Croisade, officiellement dirigée contre Jérusalem.

3. Loin qu'il soit votre ennemi, il a toujours essayé de vous aider.

4. Asseyez-vous en attendant qu'il revienne.

5. Soit qu'il parte ou qu'il reste je suis décidé à m'en aller demain.

6. Il n'a pas voulu accepter l'invitation, non qu'il fût réellement froissé, mais il croyait qu'il vaudrait mieux ne pas s'engager dans cette affaire.

7. Pour qu'une révolution s'accomplisse, il ne suffit pas qu'il y ait beaucoup de choses à-changer, il faut qu'il y ait des hommes propres à faire ce changement.

8. Au revoir, monsieur. A demain, n'est-ce pas ?

9. Je vous reverrai à trois heures, n'est-ce pas ? Oui. A tout à l'heure.

10. Il ne reste qu'à essayer de traverser ce torrent. Pourvu que ce soit possible !

11. Rentrons avant qu'il pleuve.

## VOCABULARY

<b>accomplir</b> , <i>to accomplish.</i>	<b>bouger</b> , <i>to budge, to stir.</i>
<b>le dessein</b> , <i>the purpose.</i>	<b>la croisade</b> , <i>the crusade.</i>
<b>détourner</b> , <i>to turn aside.</i>	<b>froisser</b> , <i>to offend.</i>
<b>propre</b> , <i>fit, proper, able.</i>	<b>réel</b> , <i>réelle, real.</i>
<b>sage</b> , <i>wise, good.</i>	

NOTES.—1. **Sage**, when applied to children, means *good, well-behaved.*

8. **Au revoir** is said at parting by persons who expect to meet again. Other expressions are: **à demain**, **à mardi soir**, **à la semaine prochaine**, etc.

*For Translation*

1. Is it raining? Has it rained? I hope it will not rain. I was sure it would rain. Let us go before it rains.

2. Be seated, I pray you. I was seated. I sat down. I had sat down. She was seated. She seated herself. Where do you wish to sit? I do not wish to sit down. He desires us to sit here. Where do you want me to sit? I shall sit there.

3. Hide yourself behind the tree for fear he may see you.

4. I use this dictionary, while waiting for a better.

5. Can you pass without our getting up?

6. I give you this explanation in order that you may remember the facts better. I tell you this to encourage you.

7. I shall go to bed now, not that I am sleepy, but because it is better that I should remain quiet during an hour or two.

8. We shall go to see him provided we have the time.

9. I shall not wait any longer, unless you think he will be here soon.

10. I shall stay home this evening, unless you want to go to the theater.

11. Days and days passed without our receiving any news of him.

12. I shall remain here until all have gone away.



13. Although this story is very amusing, we shall finish it another time. I want to write a letter now. I shall read this book until you have finished your letter.

14. I am astonished that you should have read my letter; not that there is any secret in it (*là dedans*), but because the letter is not for you.

15. We went out without Louis seeing us. They came in without seeing us. Will he get up on time without your calling him?

16. I shall hold your hand lest you fall. I shall hold your hand for fear of falling.

17. Although we beg him every day to come with us, he refuses every time. Although he has been our neighbor for several years we scarcely know him.

18. My dear girl, where were you last week? Louise and I were at our uncle's four weeks. During the last week of our stay in the country it rained every day.

19. I wish to speak to you before you go out. I wish to speak to you before I go out.

20. After you, sir! After finishing his letter he went out. After he had shown me the letter, I asked him what he thought of it.

## LESSON LXIX

### 1. Learn connaître and naître.

NOTE.—Wherever the *i* comes before *t* it has the *circumflex accent*.

Like connaître :

reconnaître, to recognize.

apparaître, to appear, come  
into sight.

paraître, to appear, seem.

disparaître, disappear.

Like naître :

renaître, to be born again, to revive.

Learn *mettre* and *vivre*.

Like *mettre* :

<i>se mettre</i> , to begin.	<i>remettre</i> , to put back, hand over
<i>émettre</i> , to emit.	<i>commettre</i> , to commit.
<i>promettre</i> , to promise.	<i>permettre</i> , to permit, allow.
<i>admettre</i> , to admit.	<i>soumettre</i> , to subdue.
<i>omettre</i> , to leave out.	<i>se soumettre</i> , to submit.

2. I allow him to go out.      Je permets qu'il sorte.  
 I shall allow him to go out.      Je permettrai qu'il sorte.  
 I doubt that he has gone out.      Je doute qu'il soit sorti.  
 I shall doubt that he has paid the money until I have proof of it.      Je douterai qu'il ait payé l'argent, jusqu'à ce que j'en aie la preuve.

a. The **Present Subjunctive** depends usually upon a main verb in the **Present** or **Future Tense**.

b. The **Past Subjunctive**, denoting a completed action, likewise depends upon a main verb in the **Present** or **Future Tense**.

3. I wanted him to go out.      Je voulais qu'il sortît.  
 I had wished him to go out.      J'avais voulu qu'il sortît.  
 I should have preferred it if he had gone away.      J'aurais préféré qu'il fût parti.

a. The **Imperfect Subjunctive** depends usually upon a main verb in some **past tense** or in the **conditional**.

b. The **Pluperfect Subjunctive**, denoting a completed action, likewise depends upon a main verb in some **past tense** or in the **conditional**.

However, the meaning often requires the above rules to be violated. For instance :

I do not say he is to blame.      Je ne dis pas qu'il soit à blâmer.

### But

I do not say he was to blame.      Je ne dis pas qu'il fût à blâmer.

4. He was born in France.      Il est né en France.  
Where were you born?      Où êtes-vous né?

5. Take note that *je suis né* is the Past Indefinite of *naître*, and is not therefore to be translated *I am born*, etc., but *I was born*, etc.

### EXERCISE

1. L'ennemi fut mis en fuite.
2. Il a menacé de me mettre en prison.
3. Cette jeune fille est toujours bien mise.
4. Paul a tout mis sens dessus dessous dans sa chambre (§ 58, 9, c).
5. L'auteur dépeint les maux qui existent en Chine; il dit que malheureusement ces maux ne paraissent pas près de disparaître.
6. L'homme n'est pas né pour devenir esclave.
7. De nouvelles difficultés naissent tous les jours. J'avais prévu que de nouvelles difficultés naîtraient tous les jours.
8. C'est la femme la plus désagréable que je connaisse.  
C'est la femme la plus désagréable que j'aie jamais connue.  
C'était la femme la plus désagréable que je connusse.  
C'était la femme la plus désagréable que j'eusse jamais connue.
9. Mon oncle est mort quand j'étais bien jeune; je ne l'ai jamais connu.

10. Les plantes poussaient pêle-mêle dans ce jardin, sans que personne s'en souciât le moins du monde.

L'enfant grandissait, sans que personne s'en occupât.

11. Mon élève ne fit pas beaucoup de progrès ; non pas qu'il eût la tête dure, il apprenait avec facilité ; mais il était paresseux.

12. Permettez-moi de vous aider. Voilà une chose qui n'est pas permise. Voilà une phrase que vous avez omise. Louis a récité la liste sans omettre un seul nom. Ne remettons pas à demain ce que nous pouvons faire aujourd'hui.

13. Ces difficultés disparaîtront à mesure que vous avancerez dans vos études.

14. C'est Mme. Dupont, née Pavol. La connaissez-vous ?

15. Il se mit à nous raconter son histoire. Nous nous mîmes à manger les bonnes choses qu'on nous avait apportées.

16. Espérez-vous qu'il se soumette ? Espérez-vous qu'il se soumit ? Croyez-vous qu'il soit rentré ? Croyiez-vous qu'il fût rentré ? Préférez-vous que nous sortions ? Auriez-vous permis que nous partissions sans vous voir ?

## VOCABULARY

dépeindre, <i>to depict.</i>	étrange, <i>strange.</i>
un esclave, <i>a slave.</i>	une étude, <i>a study.</i>
grandir, <i>to grow up.</i>	la fuite, <i>flight.</i>
menacer, <i>to threaten.</i>	la facilité, <i>facility.</i>
à mesure que, <i>as (in proportion as).</i>	bien mis, <i>well dressed.</i>
s'occuper de, <i>to concern oneself about.</i>	mal mis, <i>ill dressed.</i>
le progrès, <i>progress.</i>	pousser, <i>to grow.</i>
se soucier de, <i>to care about.</i>	la prison, <i>the prison.</i>
	sens dessus dessous, <i>upside-down, topsy-turvy.</i>

NOTES.—6. **Devenir esclave.** Another example of a predicate noun without an article.

7. **Naissent.** This verb often has the meaning *arise, spring up.*

12. **Remettre** often means *to put off, postpone.*

*For Translation*

1. Do you recognize him? Did you not recognize him? Would you have recognized him?

2. Put on your hat. I was putting on my hat. I put on my hat. Must I put on my new hat? I must put on my glasses.

3. We omit that course this year. We used to omit that course every other year.

4. I admit it. My brother was unwilling to admit it. They admit that you are right. Let us admit for the moment that he is right.

5. I submit. He submitted. She submitted. You must submit.

6. Men of genius (*génie*) are not born every day.

7. In what year was your brother born? All the children were born in France.

8. Where does he live? How does he live? Are they still living? She was still living. He will live a long while yet. He lived in the (*au*) time of Louis XIV.

9. She said she would be back to-morrow unless she were detained.

10. I tried to find some one who had the necessary money.

11. He wished us to be polite with everybody.

12. Whatever their reasons were, they refused to promise what we asked. Whatever your reason may be, I think you are wrong.

13. Before I went to Paris, Dijon was the largest city I had ever seen.

14. I was afraid they had started from Lyons.

15. It was greatly to be feared that the emperor, recognized by the European powers, would be considered by many as a usurper.

16. He says the house is for sale. He said the house was for sale. He did not say the house was for sale.

17. He is the youngest officer I know. He was the youngest officer we knew. Which of those officers do you know? It is the youngest one that I know.

18. The difficulties kept disappearing as we advanced in our studies.

19. The army was put to flight. The poor man was put in prison. He threatened to have me put in prison. I asked him what crime I had committed.

NOTES.—2. **Mettre** means *to put on* when applied to articles of clothing, etc.

8. Do not forget the difference between **demeurer** and **vivre**.

17. Why must **connaître** be in a different mode in the first sentence and in the fourth?

## LESSON LXX

- |                                      |                                      |
|--------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| 1. I want to go.                     | Je désire <b>aller</b> .             |
| I want you to go.                    | Je désire que vous <b>alliez</b> .   |
| He thinks he is very im-<br>portant. | Il croit <b>être</b> très important. |
| He is afraid I will fall.            | Il craint que je ne <b>tombe</b> .   |
| He is afraid he will fall.           | Il craint de <b>tomber</b> .         |

a. The infinitive is used when the dependent verb has not a different subject from the main verb.

b. In this way the subjunctive is *avoided*.

c. When the main verb calls for the indicative the construction is optional. You may say *Il dit être malade*, or *Il dit qu'il est malade*. The latter is more usual.

See Lessons LXIV, Rule 3; LXV, Rules 3 and 4; and LXVIII, Rule 3.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 2. He likes better to play<br>than to sing.    | Il aime mieux <b>jouer</b> que de<br>chanter.                   |
| He likes to stay home as<br>well as to go out. | Il aime autant <b>rester</b> chez lui<br>que de <b>sortir</b> . |



After *aimer mieux* the first infinitive is not preceded by a preposition ; the infinitive expressing the second term of comparison is preceded by *que de*.

3. He is going to write.	Il <b>va écrire</b> .
I intend to start early.	Je <b>compte partir</b> de bonne heure.
He thought he would die.	Il <b>croyait mourir</b> .
We desire to see you.	Nous <b>désirons vous voir</b> .
He was sent about his business.	On l'a <b>envoyé promener</b> .
We hope to come.	Nous <b>espérons venir</b> .
He came near falling.	Il <b>a failli tomber</b> .
He dare not speak.	Il <b>n'ose pas parler</b> .
He appears to want something.	Il <b>paraît désirer</b> quelque chose.
He prefers to stay here.	Il <b>préfère rester ici</b> .
He happened to be absent.	Il <b>se trouvait être</b> absent.

Many verbs require the infinitive directly without a preposition. They are best remembered by fixing examples of their use in the mind.

4. To promise and to keep a promise are two different things.	<b>Promettre et tenir</b> sont deux.
To tell the whole story would take too long.	<b>Dire</b> toute l'histoire, ce serait trop long.

The infinitive may stand at the beginning of a sentence as subject.

5. I prefer not to go.	Je <b>préfère ne pas partir</b> .
He promised to say nothing.	Il a promis de <b>ne rien dire</b> .
I hope not to come here again.	J' <b>espère ne plus revenir</b> ici.

**Pas, plus, point, rien**, are generally placed before the infinitive. However, **n'être pas** and **n'avoir pas** are quite usual.

6. He refused me flatly. Il m'a refusé **net** (t sounds).  
 You will pay me dearly for this. Vous me le payerez **cher**.

These flowers smell good. Ces fleurs sentent **bon**.

There are a few adjectives in French that are used as adverbs in certain expressions. See Lesson XXXIX, Sentence 15.

7. The crowd of children was great. La foule d'enfants était grande.  
 A crowd of children were playing in the street. Une foule d'enfants jouaient dans la rue.  
 The majority are in favor of the bill. La plupart sont en faveur du projet.

a. Collective nouns preceded by the Definite Article usually require a singular verb.

b. Collective nouns preceded by the Indefinite Article, and followed by a plural complement, require a plural verb.

c. **La plupart** requires a plural verb.

### EXERCISE

1. Est-ce que c'est moi que ces dames saluent? Je ne crois pas les connaître. Si, on vous\_a présenté à elles l'autre soir chez Madame Lebrun. Il va y avoir prochainement un concert chez\_elle. Comptez-vous\_y aller?

2. Cet\_homme, quoique bien pauvre, voulait adopter un petit\_enfant trouvé dans la rue. On lui a demandé s'il avait des\_enfants. Si j'en\_ai! J'en\_ai trois. Avec celui-là, ça fera quatre; mais bah! quand\_il y en\_a pour trois,

il y en a pour quatre. Des cas de générosité pareille ne sont pas rares chez les pauvres.

3. Le roi adresse deux ou trois questions à Elsa. Elle s'incline tristement sans rien répondre.

4. Le comité s'est réuni hier soir.

5. Un petit nombre de soldats se sauvèrent.

6. Le quart de l'armée a péri.

7. La moitié seulement des habitants répondit à l'appel.

8. La soie coûte cher depuis l'an dernier.

9. Il faut parler net et sans ambiguïté.

10. Vouloir c'est pouvoir. Qui veut la fin veut les moyens.

11. Je voudrais vous faire une question. Je répondrai de mon mieux à toutes les questions que vous me ferez. J'aime mieux ne pas répondre à cette question-là. Si vous avez des questions à me faire, j'essaierai d'y répondre. Je ferai de mon mieux pour y répondre.

## VOCABULARY

**un appel**, *a call, an appeal.*      **la fin**, *the end.*

**s'incliner**, *to bow.*

**saluer**, *to greet, to salute.*

**prochainement**, *shortly, soon.*

**se sauver**, *to run away, to escape.*

**se réunir**, *to meet.*

**la faveur**, *the favor.*

NOTES.—**Faillir** is oftenest found in the Past Indefinite with the meaning *I came near*, etc. It is a defective verb. **Payer** has a different construction in French from *pay* in English. The thing paid for is the direct object usually, and the price is given without a preposition. **Acheter** has the same construction.

2. **Si j'en ai.** In repeating a question just asked, the French usually begin with **si**. *Have you any money? Have I any money? Si j'ai de l'argent?*

10. **Qui.** In proverbial expressions the antecedent of *qui* is frequently left understood.

11. Notice that *to ask a question* is **faire une question**. It is not French to say *demandeur une question* in this sense. Notice the expression **de mon mieux**.

*For Translation*

1. I think I am ill. He thinks he is stronger than I. We think we are right. You think you are his friend. They think they are better than other mortals.

2. He is afraid you will fall. Are you afraid of falling? We were afraid he might fall. He was not afraid of falling.

3. I would rather do anything whatever than accept a present from him. He would rather stay home than go to the concert. I should as lief stay home as go to the concert. Is there going to be a concert?

4. I wonder what he is going to say to me. I wondered what questions he was going to ask me. When are we going to see you again?

5. When do you intend to ask your brother for that little sum of money? He desires to pass the examination. My mother sent me to look for some roses. I hope to have my new dress this afternoon. We came near missing the train. He came near being late. She came near breaking her arm.

6. I dare not hope to succeed in that affair. Dare to tell the truth. She said she did not dare to accept the money.

7. You appear to have a good idea. She appeared to want to say something.

8. To tell you why, would be too long. Seeing is believing. To abandon the child would be shameful.

9. Not to finish my studies now would be a cause of sorrow for my parents. I shall do my best to finish them.

10. To be or not to be, that's the question.

11. I hope never to see him again.

12. That rose smells good. The hay smelt so good!

13. Your stupidity has cost me dear.

14. Most of the boys have passed their examination successfully. Most of the pupils will be promoted.

15. A great crowd of foreigners were seated in the waiting-room impatient to start.

16. The people are certainly against that law. The French people are a great people. The crowd gathered before the Hôtel de Ville.

17. He looked at me without saying anything.

18. Where there's a will there's a way.

19. How many soldiers escaped? Half of them perished.

20. Have the committee met yet? The committee will meet shortly—to-morrow, I think.

### LESSON LXXI

- |  |                                      |
|--|--------------------------------------|
| 1. Learn <b>prendre</b> , <i>to take</i> . | <b>rire</b> , <i>to laugh</i> .      |
| <b>suivre</b> , <i>to follow</i> .         | <b>vaincre</b> , <i>to conquer</i> . |

Like **prendre** conjugate :

**apprendre**, *to learn, to teach*.      **se méprendre**, *to be mistaken*.

**comprendre**, *to understand*.      **reprendre**, *to take back, resume*.

**entreprendre**, *to undertake*.      **surprendre**, *to surprise*.

Like **rire** : **sourire**, *to smile*.

Like **suivre** : **poursuivre**, *to pursue, to continue*

Like **vaincre** : **convaincre**, *to convince*.

NOTE.—**Prendre** shows the principle of stem-strengthening explained in Lesson LII, Rule 6.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 2. Are you tired?                        | Êtes-vous fatigué?                                |
| I am.                                    | Je le suis.                                       |
| Are they French?                         | Sont-ils Français?                                |
| They are.                                | Ils le sont.                                      |
| That tower appears<br>higher than it is. | Cette tour paraît plus haute<br>qu'elle ne l'est. |
| We shall go if you wish.                 | Nous irons si vous le désirez.                    |
| Is he going with us?                     | Est-ce qu'il va avec nous?                        |
| I think so.                              | Je le pense.                                      |

The pronoun *le* is used to stand in place of an adjective, or to avoid repeating a preceding clause.

In the former case it is usually unexpressed in English; in the latter, it is often rendered by *so*.

- |                        |                      |
|------------------------|----------------------|
| 3. Are you the bride?  | Êtes-vous la mariée? |
| I am.                  | Je <b>la</b> suis.   |
| Are they your friends? | Sont-ce vos amis?    |
| They are.              | Ce <b>les</b> sont.  |

*Le, la, les*, are used as predicate pronouns, agreeing in gender and number with the noun they stand for.

*Le* is *invariable* when it stands for an adjective or a clause.

- |                               |  |
|-------------------------------|--|
| Are you tired, madame?        | Êtes-vous <b>fatiguée</b> , madame?          |
| I am.                         | Je <b>le</b> suis.                           |
| 4. I see him coming.          | Je le vois <b>qui vient</b> .                |
| I saw him fall.               | Je l'ai vu <b>tomber</b> .                   |
| I hear him singing.           | Je l'entends <b>qui chante</b> .             |
| Have you ever heard her sing? | L'avez-vous jamais entendue <b>chanter</b> ? |

Verbs of *feeling, hearing, seeing*, generally have a relative clause with *qui* where the English has the present participle, and the infinitive without a preposition where the English has the infinitive.

- |                                 |  |
|---------------------------------|--|
| 5. He likes to sing.            | Il aime <b>à chanter</b> .                 |
| There's no use talking.         | Il n'y a pas <b>à dire</b> .               |
| We have to copy our sentences.  | Nous avons <b>à copier</b> nos phrases.    |
| He invited us to accompany him. | Il nous a invités <b>à l'accompagner</b> . |



Help me to shut this window.      Aidez-moi à fermer cette fenê-  
nêtre.

The thing is to be done again.      La chose est à refaire.

A great number of verbs require the preposition *à* before the following infinitive.

6. It is easy to do that.      Il est facile de faire cela.  
It is useless to try to see him.      Il est inutile d'essayer de le voir.

The infinitive after an impersonal verb made up of *être* + an adjective, is preceded by *de*. The infinitive is here the *real* subject of the sentence.

7. The problem is easy to solve.      Le problème est facile à résoudre.  
It is easy to solve (*meaning the problem*).      C'est facile à résoudre.

Here the infinitive with *à* depends upon the adjective, and is *not* the logical subject; it therefore does not come under Rule 6.

#### EXERCISE

1. Une foule s'était assemblée autour du petit enfant perdu. L'agent l'avait pris par la main pour le conduire au poste. Voyons, personne ne le réclame? Un instant! Tout le monde se retourna. Et l'on vit un homme qui souriait. Si personne n'en veut, je le prends, moi. A la bonne heure! C'est bien, ce que vous faites là. Vous êtes un brave homme.

2. L'agent demanda: Personne n'a vu les parents s'en aller?

3. Je crains que vous n'ayez entrepris là une tâche qui dépasse vos forces.

4. Lorsqu'il a su que ses ennemis avaient péri, il n'a pas craint de dire qu'ils méritaient leur sort, tant il est aisé de croire que ceux qui ne jugent pas comme nous sont des méchants.

5. Cinq minutes après nous reprîmes notre marche lente, interrompue par des haltes de plus en plus longues.

6. A qui avez-vous pris cet argent? Je ne l'ai pris à personne, je l'ai trouvé. J'ai pris toutes ces citations dans les pièces de Victor Hugo.

7. Il faudra qu'elle gagne sa vie. Qu'elle apprenne un métier.

8. Il est soldat. Je le suis aussi.

9. Il est très modeste. Il ne cherche pas à se mettre en avant.

10. La nouvelle de sa mort ne surprit personne.

11. Elle fut furieuse, "Je vous apprendrai à me faire attendre," dit-elle.

### VOCABULARY

en avant, <i>forward</i> .	une citation, <i>a quotation</i> .
un agent, <i>a policeman, agent</i> .	à la bonne heure! <i>good!</i>
dépasser, <i>to exceed</i> .	<i>that's fine! I'm glad to</i>
méchant, <i>bad, wicked,</i>	<i>hear it!</i>
<i>naughty.</i>	réclamer, <i>to claim</i> .
le poste, <i>the police-station</i> .	la tâche, <i>the task</i> .

NOTES.—1. **Agent** is here used for **agent de police**. **La poste** is *the post-office*. There are many nouns of the same form but of different genders and meanings. **En veut**. **En** is here used idiomatically. **Moi**, added for emphasis. There can be no emphasis upon the word **je**.

4. **Tant il est aisé**. See Lesson LXVII, Rule 2.

5. **De plus en plus**, *more and more*.

6. *To take from a person* is **Prendre à une personne**. *To take something out of a drawer* is **Prendre dans un tiroir**. *I took it from him* = *je le lui ai pris*.

11. When **apprendre** is used to mean *to teach*, it is usually followed by an infinitive. With a noun object, *to teach* is usually **enseigner**.

*For Translation*

1. Can it be that he does not understand you? I am convinced of it.

2. Did you take those handkerchiefs out of my box? I took all those words out of that poem. Out of which book did you take all those quotations?

3. The thief took his watch from him.

4. Why do you laugh? I knew you would laugh. We laughed a great deal. He likes to laugh.

5. I follow you. He is following me. The policeman was pursuing the thief. The man invited us to follow him.

6. Let us resume our lesson at the place where we stopped.

7. Is he in Paris? He is. Is he ill? He is. Has he my book? He has. Has he any books? He has. Is he the doctor? He is.

8. He will go if we wish. I will sing the air if your mother wishes. Does she wish it? I think so.

9. Are you the dressmaker? I am.

10. It is natural that he should be tired. It is also (natural) that he should want to finish his work.

11. I saw a man writing at a table. Did you see her fall? I hear my sister playing the piano. We saw some one crossing the garden. We saw some one while crossing the garden. Did you see my brother go out? I heard some one going out a moment ago, but I did not see him.

12. I heard my brother talking to some one in the garden.

13. I do not like to wait. Would you like to own that house?

14. We have been invited to dine at the palace.

15. Help me to dress. You told me you would help me look for my book.

16. Are you the men who were here yesterday? We are.

17. It is difficult to say why he wrote the letter. It was difficult not to lose patience. It will be difficult to find a piece of silk like this one. This door is hard to open. I say it is difficult to open. These rules are difficult to learn. They are difficult to learn. They are useful to know. He is hard to convince.

18. Will you teach me to dance? That will teach you to be prudent.

## LESSON LXXII

1. Learn **conclure**, *to conclude*.      **coudre**, *to sew*.  
                  **croître**, *to grow*.                      **plaire**, *to please*.  
                  **taire**, *to say nothing*      **résoudre**, *to resolve, to solve*.  
                                       *about.*

Like **conclure**: **exclure**, *to exclude*.

Like **plaire**: **déplaire**, *to displease*.

**Se taire** means *to keep silent, to hold one's peace*.

2. He liked the play.                      La pièce lui a plu.  
   I didn't like his behavior.            Sa conduite m'a déplu.  
   It is impossible to please            Il est impossible de plaire  
                  everybody.                                      à tout le monde.

**Plaire** can not have a direct object. The noun object is preceded by **à**. The pronoun object is a dative.

3. I was greatly pleased by the      La représentation m'a beau-  
      performance.                              coup plu.

**Plaire** can not be used passively.

4. Obey your parents.                      Obéissez à vos parents.  
   He disobeyed the order.                Il a désobéi à l'ordre.  
   He will be obeyed.                        Il veut être obéi.

**Obéir** also requires **à**, but is used in the passive.

- |                |                   |
|----------------|-------------------|
| 5. God forbid. | A Dieu ne plaise. |
| Would to God.  | Plût à Dieu.      |

Notice the above special uses of the subjunctive of *plaire*.

- |                                |                                |
|--------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| 6. I apply to you.             | Je m'adresse à vous.           |
| He applied to me.              | Il s'est adressé à moi.        |
| We shall apply to him.         | Nous nous adresserons à lui.   |
| The lady applied to her.       | La dame s'est adressée à elle. |
| I shall introduce you to them. | Je vous présenterai à eux.     |
| He introduced himself to us.   | Il s'est présenté à nous.      |

When the direct object pronoun is *me*, *te*, *se*, *nous*, or *vous*, the dative pronoun must not precede the verb, but is placed after it, governed by *à*.

- |                 |                   |
|-----------------|-------------------|
| 7. Come to me.  | Venez à moi.      |
| I think of him. | Je pense à lui.   |
| He ran to us.   | Il courut à nous. |

With verbs of *motion* and some others the conjunctive pronoun can not be used. The disjunctive form is used with *à*.

(That is, it is not French to say *Je vous pense* or *Je vous vais*.)

- |                                       |  |
|---------------------------------------|--|
| 8. He thinks only of himself.         | Il ne pense qu'à lui.                  |
| Each one thinks only of himself.      | Chacun ne pense qu'à soi.              |
| One should not think only of oneself. | On ne doit pas penser seulement à soi. |

*Soi* is rarely used in modern French except in an indefinite, general sense.

## EXERCISE

1. Aimer quelque chose plus que soi-même, là est le secret de tout ce qui est grand; savoir vivre en dehors de sa personne, là est le but de tout instinct généreux.

2. Mes parents voulaient faire de moi un avocat, mais le droit ne me plaisait guère.

3. Un individu, dont je tairai le nom, s'est adressé à moi pour savoir si je n'allais pas voter contre vous.

4. Voulez-vous vous taire? Taisez-vous. Mon frère m'a conseillé de me taire. Je me suis tu. Pourquoi est-ce que je me tairais? Tais-toi, Jean.

5. Il résolut de quitter le pays. Voici un problème que je n'ai pas pu résoudre. Tous ces problèmes sont difficiles à résoudre.

6. Nous aurions eu plaisir à vous voir chez nous.

7. Le roi Louis XIII, mal obéi pendant sa vie, espérait l'être mieux après sa mort. Il ne le fut pas pourtant. Le parlement cassa le testament du roi.

8. A Dieu ne plaise que je dise du mal de mes collègues; mais je suis le seul ici qui ait de la conscience.

9. Ici chacun travaille pour soi, sans s'intéresser aux autres.

## VOCABULARY

le but, *the aim, the object.* en dehors de, *outside of.*

See § 59, 5.

un individu, *an individual.*

le collègue, *the colleague.*

le testament, *the will, testa-*

le droit (*right*), *law.*

*ment.*

NOTES.—1. Tout, *every.* Instinct. See § 42, 8.

8. La conscience has the three meanings of *conscience* and *conscientiousness* and *consciousness*.

9. S'intéresser requires à after it.



*For Translation*

1. I interested myself in his affairs. He interested himself in me.

2. My brother is studying law. That is a study I should not like. What do you know about it? You would interest yourself in it if you felt the importance of it.

3. Keep still. Why don't you keep still? I told him to keep still. In your place (*à votre place*) I should have kept still. There are moments when it is better to say nothing. Learn to hold your peace. We resolved to keep silence.

4. Did you like the concert? How did the performance please you? Do not try to please everybody.

5. I dislike his behavior very much. His behavior greatly displeased my mother. I am seeking the way to please him.

6. He received the order to go away. He obeyed (it) that same day. The captain ordered the crowd to disperse. The order was obeyed on the instant.

7. If those are the orders that were given you, you must obey them.

8. They are your superiors; you must obey them.

9. He applied to me to obtain my consent.

10. Will you introduce me to that lady? Who introduced you to her? He said he would introduce us to his sisters. Did he introduce you to them?

11. Go to him. Offer him our compliments. Ask him to accept this book.

12. What are you thinking of? I am thinking of those poor wounded soldiers.

13. My brother is very ill; I think of him constantly. The doctor does not think he will live more than a day or two. Try to think of something else.

14. She is unhappy because of her brother's illness. She is thinking of it constantly.

15. Remember what I have told you. Think of it.

16. The two girls were sewing at a table beside the window.

17. Each one for himself. Is it easy to love another better than oneself? One always finds a greater than oneself.

18. A treaty was concluded between the United States and England. Those questions were excluded.

### LESSON LXXIII

1. Learn *boire, to drink; recevoir, to receive.*

Like *recevoir* :

*apercevoir, to perceive; concevoir, to conceive.*

*décevoir, to deceive; devoir, to owe.*

NOTE.—*a.* All these verbs show the principle of stem-strengthening.

*b.* The past participle masculine of *devoir* is *dû*, written with the circumflex accent to distinguish it from the article *du*. The feminine is *due*, without any accent.

2. How much do you owe him? *Combien lui devez-vous?*

I owe him eighty francs.	<i>Je lui dois quatre-vingts francs.</i>
I owed him all my happiness.	<i>Je lui devais tout mon bonheur.</i>

Followed by a *noun*, the verb *devoir* expresses the idea of *debt*, and is translated by *to owe*.

3. I did it because I thought I ought to do it. *Je l'ai fait, parce que j'ai cru devoir le faire.*

You ought to tell him the whole truth.	<i>Vous devriez lui dire toute la vérité.</i>
--	---

You ought to have told him the whole truth.	<i>Vous auriez dû lui dire toute la vérité.</i>
---	---

Followed by an infinitive, **devoir** often expresses *duty, obligation*.

a. The conditional present of **devoir** + *an infinitive present* is usually translated by *ought* + the **Present infinitive** in English.

b. The conditional past of **devoir** + *an infinitive present* is usually translated by *ought* + the **Perfect infinitive** in English.

c. *Ought* has no past in English, so we change the following infinitive to express past time; whereas in French **devoir** is a complete verb, having *all* its tenses.

4. You should begin earlier    Vous **devriez** commencer plus  
     (meaning, you ought to      tôt.  
     begin earlier).

We should have begun    Nous **aurions dû** commencer  
     later (meaning, we      plus tard.  
     ought to have begun  
     later).

Similarly, when **should** or **should have** are equivalent in meaning to **ought** or **ought to have**, translate by the conditional of **devoir**, followed by a present infinitive.

5. Children ought to respect    Les enfants **doivent** respecter  
     their parents.                    leurs parents.

I did not know what it    Je ne savais pas ce que je  
     was my duty to do.            **devais** faire.

The indicative mode of *devoir* is also often equivalent to *ought*. It then usually expresses some *general* obligation or duty, a *moral* obligation.

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 6. I am to go to New York<br>this afternoon.    | Je <b>dois</b> aller à New York cette<br>après-midi.      |
| He was to arrive by the<br>three-o'clock train. | Il <b>devait</b> arriver par le train<br>de trois heures. |
| They are to start soon.                         | Ils <b>doivent</b> partir bientôt.                        |
| They were to start be-<br>fore us.              | Ils <b>devaient</b> partir avant nous.                    |

The present and imperfect of *devoir* + *an infinitive* are often expressed in English by *am to, was to, etc.* The verb here expresses *probable futurity*, with more or less of the idea of obligation.

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 7. He is covered with dust;<br>he must have fallen.             | Il est couvert de poussière, il<br><b>a dû</b> tomber.                         |
| She must have been beau-<br>tiful in her youth.                 | Elle <b>a dû</b> être belle dans sa<br>jeunesse.                               |
| After so long a journey<br>you must be tired.                   | Après un si long voyage, vous<br><b>devez</b> être fatigué.                    |
| His overcoat and hat are<br>not here; he must have<br>gone out. | Son pardessus et son chapeau<br>ne sont pas ici, il <b>doit</b> être<br>sorti. |

*Must*, implying *inference* on the part of the speaker, is usually expressed by the verb *devoir* (sometimes, however, by *falloir*).

*Must*, expressing *necessity*, is *falloir*.

8. Shall I accompany you? **Dois-je** vous accompagner?

*Shall I?* is commonly rendered by *dois-je?*

#### EXERCISE

1. Un homme ne doit jamais rougir d'avouer qu'il a tort, car, en faisant cet aveu, il prouve qu'il est plus sage aujourd'hui qu'hier.

2. Il signa un traité avec les Vénitiens, par lequel ceux-

ci s'engageaient à transporter en Syrie 33,500 hommes et 3,500 chevaux; de plus, ils devaient fournir cinquante galères armées.

3. Nous devions prendre part à l'expédition; nous en avons été empêchés à la dernière minute.

4. Vous auriez dû comprendre que vous n'aviez pas le droit de parler ainsi à un homme plus âgé que vous.

5. Je bois à la santé de monsieur votre père! A votre santé, monsieur! A la vôtre! Dans quel verre est-ce que j'ai bu?

6. Ce qui est bien remarquable, c'est que ce jeune prince, qui prenait si hardiment le pouvoir, avait déjà conçu le plan de sa politique.

7. Louis XIV croyait que les rois ont aussi des devoirs à remplir; nous devons, disait-il, considérer le bien de nos sujets plus que le nôtre propre.

8. Quiconque cherche la vérité ne doit être d'aucun pays.

9. Quel couteau dois-je prendre? Prenez un couteau quelconque.

10. Lorsque j'ai vu les chutes du Niagara pour la première fois j'ai été un peu déçu.

11. Quelle amère déception pour lui, lorsqu'il a su la trahison de son ami!

## VOCABULARY

un **aveu**, *a confession.*

le **bien**, *the good, the welfare.*

le **devoir**, *the duty.*

**propre**, *own.*

**quiconque**, *whoever.*

un **traité**, *a treaty.*

**s'engager**, *to pledge oneself.*

la **galère**, *the galley.*

**hardi**, **hardie** (*h asp.*), *bold.*

la **politique**, *the policy.*

**quelconque**, *any . . . whatever.*

**de plus**, *furthermore.*

NOTES.—1. **Rougir** requires **de** before the infinitive it governs.

2. **Engager** governs the infinitive by means of the preposition **à**.

3. **Prendre part** requires the preposition **à**; hence it requires the pronoun **y**.

5. *To drink out of a glass* is *boire dans un verre*; like *prendre dans une boîte*.

7. *Remplir* is here translated *to fulfil*. *Propre*, *clean*; hence *propreté*, *cleanliness*. *Propre*, meaning *own*, and *propriété*, *property*, are to be associated together. *Propre* also has the meaning *fit*.

10. *Décevoir* generally means *to disappoint*, *to disillusion*.

11. *Déception*, *disappointment*, *disenchantment*.

### *For Translation*

1. Must I drink this water? We were drinking chocolate. He drank a glass of milk. I was sure you would not drink that wine. Let us drink to your mother's health! To your health! You ought not to drink out of that glass; it is not clean.

2. You will receive an answer to your letter in a few days. I was sure you would receive an answer to-day. These ladies receive flowers every day. We used to receive a letter from our brother every day.

3. You speak French well; you must have made a long stay in France.

4. The door was open; he must have heard everything.

5. I have a duty to fulfil. He tries to fulfil all his duties.

6. Every good citizen ought to vote. Every man ought to love his country and work for its good. Children ought to honor their parents. A man who respects himself ought never to act thus.

7. I am to dine with Dr. Goupil this evening. That lady was to sing this evening, but she has a cold.

8. Louis ought to have brought his copy-book.

9. We were to arrive at eleven, but it was half an hour past midnight when we got home. The train was over an hour late. (See Lesson XXXIII.)

10. I am waiting for the postman. He is likely to arrive at any moment.

11. Your grandfather must be over eighty. Oh, yes; he was born in 1820.



12. There must be some forks in that drawer; I have not taken any.

13. I hear a (*du*) noise in John's room. He must be up.

14. You should not have forgotten to mail that letter; I told you it was very important.

15. I ought to pay back that money at the end of the month. I ought to have paid back that money last week. How much do you owe him?

16. I owed him a visit.

17. Are you not going to attend the wedding? You ought not to miss it.

18. Those young men should have understood that they had no right to speak thus to a man older than themselves.

19. He owes all he has to his own energy. He said he owed all his happiness to me.

20. You ought not to risk your money in that affair. You ought not to have acted without consulting your father.

21. What shall I do to win his esteem?

22. The boys must have received the presents they were waiting for; they look so happy (*ils ont l'air*, etc.).

23. Ought one always to tell the whole truth?

24. Were you to take part in the ceremony? We were to take part in it. What prevented you from taking part in it?

## LESSON LXXIV

### 1. Learn *pouvoir*, *to be able*.

NOTE.—*Puis-je*, and not *peux-je*, is the proper interrogative form.

2. He is better; he can walk now. Il va mieux, il peut marcher maintenant.

Not being able to open the door, I got in through the window. Ne pouvant pas ouvrir la porte, je suis entré par la fenêtre.

He says he could not lift the weight.	Il dit qu'il ne <b>pouvait</b> pas soulever le poids.
I tried to open it; I could not.	J'ai essayé de l'ouvrir; je n' <b>ai</b> pas <b>pu</b> .
He can 'not have said that.	Il n'a pas <b>pu</b> dire cela.
Can he have escaped?	<b>A-t-il pu</b> s'échapper?

**Pouvoir** expresses the idea of *possibility*. In English it is rendered by the words *can, could, the forms of to be able, may, might, etc.*

#### PRESENT INDICATIVE

May I help you?	<b>Puis-je</b> vous aider?
You may go with him.	Vous <b>pouvez</b> aller avec lui.
He is unable to raise his arm.	Il ne <b>peut</b> pas lever le bras.

#### IMPERFECT INDICATIVE

The stone might have fallen at any moment (meaning it was possible all along).	La pierre <b>pouvait</b> tomber à tout moment.
Couldn't he come with us?	Ne <b>pouvait-il</b> pas venir avec nous?
He was possibly twenty years of age.	Il <b>pouvait</b> avoir vingt ans.

#### PAST INDEFINITE

I did what I could to please him.	J'ai fait ce que j' <b>ai pu</b> pour lui plaire.
Were you able to find it?	L' <b>avez-vous pu</b> trouver?

#### PAST DEFINITE

After a siege of three weeks they were finally able to get into the city.	Après un siège de trois semaines ils <b>purent</b> enfin pénétrer dans la ville.
---	--

## PLUPERFECT INDICATIVE

I should have gone had it been possible. J'y serais allé si j'avais pu.

He said he had not been able to find the man. Il a dit qu'il n'avait pas pu trouver l'homme.

## FUTURE INDICATIVE

I think he will be able to let us know to-morrow. Je crois qu'il pourra nous le faire savoir demain.

We shall do all we can. Nous ferons tout ce que nous pourrons faire.

## CONDITIONAL PRESENT

He wrote that he would be able to start to-day. Il a écrit qu'il pourrait partir aujourd'hui.

If we had the key we could open this door. Si nous avions la clé nous pourrions ouvrir cette porte.

You might tell him what I say. Vous pourriez lui dire ce que je dis.

## CONDITIONAL PAST

You might have gone with him. Vous auriez pu l'accompagner.

He could have gone if he had received the money. Il aurait pu partir s'il avait reçu l'argent.

## PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE

I do not believe he can go out. Je ne crois pas qu'il puisse sortir.

3. In choosing the proper form of *pouvoir* in translating into French, the student must get at the *real meaning* of the English word. *I could* = *I was able all along*, or *I was able at that moment*, or *I should be able*.

4. He could do nothing      Il ne pouvait rien contre un  
     against such an enemy.      tel ennemi.  
     He thought he could do      Il croyait qu'il pouvait tout.  
     everything.

**Pouvoir** is sometimes used without an infinitive after it.

5. Can that be?      Est-ce que cela se peut?  
     Can it be that he is dead?      Se peut-il qu'il soit mort?  
     That can not be.      Cela ne se peut pas.

**Se pouvoir** is used only in the third person.

6. May he succeed!      Puisse-t-il réussir!  
     May you be happy!      Puissiez-vous être heureux!  
     May I never see him      Puissé-je ne jamais le revoir!  
     again!

The present subjunctive of **pouvoir** is used absolutely to express a wish.

*a.* The accent in **puissé-je** (pron. *puissèje*) is to be explained as in **porté-je**.

7. Notice the analogies in the two tenses of the conditional of **devoir**, **pouvoir**, and **vouloir**.

You ought to go.	Vous devriez aller.
You might go (if you chose).	Vous pourriez aller.
You would like to go.	Vous voudriez aller.
You ought to have gone.	Vous auriez dû aller.
You might have gone.	Vous auriez pu aller.
You would have liked to go.	Vous auriez voulu aller.

#### EXERCISE

1. En descendant la montagne à dos de mulet ma sœur avait peur, mais l'homme qui conduisait l'a rassurée en lui disant que les mulets ont le pied sûr, on peut s'y fier.

2. Quoi qu'on puisse dire, sa conduite a été singulière !

3. Il ne me semble pas que ce monsieur ait rien dit qui puisse vous blesser.

4. De tels nœuds n'ont pu être faits que par un matelot.

5. Il faut se garder de faire quoi que ce soit qui puisse troubler l'ordre dans les provinces.

6. Quelles que puissent être les difficultés de l'entreprise, il n'est pas douteux que les puissances coalisées auront raison de la résistance des Chinois.

7. A présent, vous pouvez continuer ; j'espère que nous ne serons plus interrompus.

8. Le père dit à ses fils : Tant que vous serez bien unis, vous serez forts et personne ne pourra vous vaincre.

9. Il leur dit que tant qu'ils seraient bien unis, ils seraient forts et que personne ne pourrait les vaincre.

10. Ne pouvant pas le voir, je lui ai écrit.

11. Votre ennemi est trop puissant, pour que vous pensiez à vous venger. Vous ne pouvez rien contre lui.

12. L'astrologue dit au roi, "Je suis certain de mourir trois jours avant votre majesté." Le roi fit donc tout ce qui était en son pouvoir pour retarder la mort de celui qu'il devait sitôt suivre.

13. Puis-je sortir ? Vous pouvez sortir. Il m'a dit que je pouvais sortir. Le médecin m'a dit que je pourrais sortir la semaine prochaine.

## VOCABULARY

un astrologue, <i>an astrologer.</i>	se garder de faire, <i>to take care not to do.</i>
le mulet, <i>the mule.</i>	
le matelot, <i>the sailor.</i>	la majesté, <i>the majesty.</i>
le nœud, <i>the knot.</i>	avoir raison de quelque chose, <i>to overcome something.</i>
retarder, <i>to delay.</i>	venger, <i>to avenge.</i>
sitôt, <i>so soon.</i>	se venger, <i>to take vengeance.</i>
se fier à quelqu'un, <i>to trust some one.</i>	

NOTES.—1. **A dos de mulet**: Idiomatic phrase.

5. **Se garder de**. Literally *to keep oneself from*.

6. **Auront raison de**. This phrase often means *to overcome, to get the better of*.

8, 9, 13. Notice that in indirect quotation the tenses change. The Present becomes the Imperfect, the Future becomes the Conditional.

11. **Venger, se venger**. We have remarked before that the meaning of a reflexive verb can not always be readily inferred from the simple verb.

12. **Astrologue**. So *an astronomer* is **un astronome**; *a philosopher*, **un philosophe**; *a photographer*, **un photographe**.

### *For Translation*

1. Can you tell me the names of all these animals?

2. Can I trust you? Can he be trusted? Can they not trust me? You may trust yourself to his honor. He said I might trust him. That mule is sure-footed; we may trust it.

3. I do not believe he has done anything that can displease you.

4. Only a sailor can have made such a knot.

5. I shall take care not to say anything to him that can wound him.

6. It seems to me that the allied powers might have got the better of the resistance of the Chinese. That is what they did!

7. May I go on? Go on, please. Why do you hesitate? I thought we might be interrupted.

8. Can it be that he is ill again? Could it be that he was ill again?

9. May we sit down here? You may sit down here. The doctor says my brother will be able to go out to-morrow. The doctor said my brother would be able to go out to-morrow.

10. I shall do all that is in my power to render him happy.

11. He said, "May I die if I am not telling the truth!"



12. May he be happy! That is all I ask. May they never learn the truth!

13. He might have gone to the concert if he had wished (*it*).

14. Whatever may be your reasons, I consider your conduct very peculiar.

15. The doctor says he may die at any moment. The doctor said he might die at any moment.

16. After waiting hours we were at last able to see him.

17. I answered that we had not been able to see him.

18. How have they been able to see each other?

19. You might have escaped easily. How might I have escaped?

20. Could you not send for a doctor? That is what I should have done.

21. We looked for the house this morning, but we were unable to find it. We should have asked if it was for sale, if we had been able to find it.

---

## LESSON LXXV

1. Learn **savoir**, *to know*.

2. Can you swim?

**Savez-vous** nager?

Do you know how to play  
the piano?

**Savez-vous** jouer du piano?

**Savoir** + an infinitive means *to know how*. When *can* has the meaning *to know how*, translate it by **savoir**. *How* is not expressed here.

3. I can not help you.

**Je ne saurais** vous aider.

The conditional of **savoir**, preceded by **ne**, is often translated by *can*.

4. He did not cease tormenting me. Il ne cessait de me tourmenter.  
 I did not dare tell him. Je n'osais le lui dire.  
 He can't be far. Il ne peut être loin.  
 We didn't know what to do. Nous ne savions que faire.

The word **ne** without **pas** suffices for the negative forms of the four verbs **cesser**, **oser**, **pouvoir**, **savoir**.

However, the word **pas** may be used.

5. He has never written since he went away, as far as I know. Il n'a jamais écrit depuis son départ, que je sache.

Notice the above idiomatic use of the subjunctive present of **savoir**.

6. There was an indefinable something in his look that was extraordinary. Il y avait un je ne sais quoi d'extraordinaire dans son regard.

The phrase **je ne sais quoi** is of very frequent use in French.

7. Do you know whether he will come? Savez-vous s'il viendra?  
 I did not know if he would come. Je ne savais s'il viendrait.

**Si**, in conditional sentences, can not be followed by either the future or the conditional. See Lesson XXXIX.

But **si**, introducing an indirect question, may be followed by any tense whatever of the indicative or conditional. **Si** is then equivalent to *whether*.

8. Another man would have been discouraged. { Un autre eût été découragé.  
Un autre se fût découragé.  
You would have done better if you had gone away at once. Vous eussiez mieux fait si vous fussiez parti sur-le-champ.

The pluperfect subjunctive is used both in the supposition and in the conclusion of a conditional sentence, instead of the pluperfect indicative and past conditional respectively. This construction is confined, as a rule, to literary style.

9. If you offered me double, I should not be willing to accept it. Vous m'offririez le double que je ne voudrais pas l'accepter.  
If I were losing my own brother, I should not feel so badly. Je perdrais mon propre frère que j'aurais moins de chagrin.

Very often, in French, both clauses of a conditional sentence are put in the conditional. In that case the conjunction *que* introduces the conclusion, and the supposition is without any conjunction.

10. Even though I should die for it, I would not do it. Quand même j'en mourrais je ne le ferais pas.

*Quand même* is followed by the conditional.

#### EXERCISE

1. On poussa devant l'homme un gros livre. Comme il ne savait pas écrire, il fit une croix au bas de la page.

2. La Croisade, c'est le grand événement du moyen âge; on n'en saurait grossir l'importance.

3. On ignore si Villehardouin naquit dans le château de

ses ancêtres. Tout ce qu'on sait de lui, avant le temps de la Croisade, c'est qu'il était maréchal de Champagne en 1191.

4. Si j'ai su profiter des circonstances, j'ai fait ce que tout autre aurait fait à ma place.

5. Cette nomination ne saurait être que favorablement accueillie.

6. Il gagna la victoire et il sut en profiter.

7. Savez-vous patiner? Votre frère sait-il danser? Ces petites filles savent-elles coudre?

8. Le petit chien n'osait toucher à ce qui lui était offert.

9. Il y avait un tel désordre dans la maison qu'on ne savait plus où se mettre.

10. Sachez, mon ami, qu'il n'y a pas d'erreur plus grande que de croire qu'on puisse conserver longtemps l'estime des gens sans la mériter.

11. Cette maison, vous l'eussiez prise pour un arsenal, tant il y avait de fusils, de coutelas et de sabres pendus aux parois.

12. Savez-vous quels appointements il recevra? Nous le saurons demain. Nous avons un rendez-vous avec M. Dubois pour demain soir.

13. Nous ne savions pas quelle différence il y a entre chrétienté et christianisme, avant que vous nous l'eussiez expliquée.

14. Quand vous arriverez à Paris faites-le-moi savoir.

15. Je connais bien M. Vergnet; je l'ai toujours considéré comme un homme sensé.

16. Louis a pleuré quand il a su le malheur qui est arrivé à son frère; il est très sensible.

17. Le général prit son parti sans hésiter. Je ne sais quel parti prendre.

18. La Russie a eu la part du lion.

19. Le parti royaliste a perdu des votes dans cette élection.

20. Divisez le gâteau en six parties égales.

21. J'ai pris part à la conversation. J'y ai pris part.

22. Combien de parties avons-nous gagnées, savez-vous?

## VOCABULARY

les appointements (m.), <i>salary.</i>	le rendez-vous, <i>the appointment.</i>
un coutelas, <i>a cutlass.</i>	sensible, <i>tender-hearted, full of feeling.</i>
un événement, <i>an event.</i>	la chrétienté, <i>Christendom.</i>
le gâteau, <i>the cake.</i>	le christianisme, <i>Christianity.</i>
ignorer, <i>not to know.</i>	grossir, <i>to magnify.</i>
le moyen âge, <i>the Middle Age.</i>	maman, <i>mamma.</i>
patiner, <i>to skate.</i>	le maréchal, <i>the marshal.</i>
le parti, <i>the party (political), the course of conduct.</i>	la paroi, <i>the wall.</i>
prendre parti, <i>to decide one way or the other.</i>	la part, <i>the share.</i>
prendre part à, <i>to take part in.</i>	la partie, (1) <i>the part</i> , (2) <i>the game.</i>
	profiter de, <i>to take advantage of.</i>
	sensé, <i>sensible.</i>

NOTES.—3. Ignorer. This verb does not translate the English *ignore*; it means merely *not to know, to be unaware.*

4. Si j'ai su. We have here the past indefinite after *si*, because there is no hypothesis, but a statement of fact.

11. Pendus aux parois. So *hanging from the ceiling* is *pendu* or *suspendu au plafond.*

*For Translation*

1. Do you know how to skate? Does your sister know how to play the piano? I thought you knew how to dance.

2. Where does Mme. Blanc live? I can not tell you.

3. He was sleeping peacefully; we dared not waken him.

4. Tell me the whole truth. I dare not.

5. I do not know what to do. I did not know what to answer. I did not know what to decide upon.

6. I am looking for a man who knows Spanish. There is no one here who knows Spanish.

7. Those two boys did not cease quarreling. Louis says now, that he did not have his share of the cake.

8. The two friends never saw each other again, as far as I know.

9. Do you know whether he will go to Naples? I did not know if we should ever see each other again. If you saw him again, would you recognize him? I do not know whether I should recognize him.

10. If I saw all abandon you, I should not cease to be your friend; know that.

11. I am not unaware that he lied to you. Can you not forgive him? Even though he should beg me to forgive him, I could not do it; I can never forget his betrayal.

12. There used to be many persons who did not know how to write. Often they would make a cross instead of writing their names.

13. Can it be that he does not know what is meant by the Middle Age! Has he never studied history?

14. One must know how to profit by the opportunities that offer themselves.

15. How do they know what they would have done?

16. A girl ought to know how to sew.

17. I am astonished that you do not know how to swim.

18. You would have believed that he was the equal of a king, if you had seen the airs he gave himself.

19. I did not know your brother had so much feeling.

20. Do you know who won the last game?

21. When you wish to see me, let me know.



THE AUXILIARY VERB **AVOIR**

Pres. inf.	<b>avoir.</b>	Past inf.	<b>avoir eu.</b>
Pres. part.	<b>ayant.</b>	Comp. part.	<b>ayant eu.</b>
Past part.	<b>eu.</b>		

## INDICATIVE MODE

Present.	j'ai, tu as, il a, nous avons, vous avez, ils ont.	Past indef.	j'ai eu, tu as eu, il a eu, nous avons eu, vous avez eu, ils ont eu.
Imperfect.	j'avais, tu avais, il avait, nous avions, vous aviez, ils avaient.	Pluperfect.	j'avais eu, tu avais eu, il avait eu, nous avions eu, vous aviez eu, ils avaient eu.
Past definite.	j'eus, tu eus, il eut, nous eûmes, vous eûtes, ils eurent.	Past ant.	j'eus eu, tu eus eu, il eut eu, nous eûmes eu, vous eûtes eu, ils eurent eu.
Future.	j'aurai, tu auras, il aura, nous aurons, vous aurez, ils auront.	Future ant.	j'aurai eu, tu auras eu, il aura eu, nous aurons eu, vous aurez eu, ils auront eu.

## CONDITIONAL MODE

Present.	j'aurais, tu aurais, il aurait, nous aurions, vous auriez, ils auraient.	Past.	j'aurais eu, tu aurais eu, il aurait eu, nous aurions eu, vous auriez eu, ils auraient eu.
----------	---	-------	---

## SUBJUNCTIVE MODE

Present.	j'aie, tu aies, il ait, nous ayons, vous ayez, ils aient.	Past.	j'aie eu, tu aies eu, il ait eu, nous ayons eu, vous ayez eu, ils aient eu.
Imperfect.	j'eusse, tu eusses, il eût, nous eussions, vous eussiez, ils eussent.	Pluperfect.	j'eusse eu, tu eusses eu, il eût eu, nous eussions eu, vous eussiez eu, ils eussent eu.

## IMPERATIVE MODE

aie,	ayons,	ayez.
------	--------	-------

## THE AUXILIARY VERB ÊTRE

Pres. inf.	être.	Past inf.	avoir été.
Pres. part.	étant.	Comp. part.	ayant été.
Past part.	été.		

## INDICATIVE MODE

Present.	je suis, tu es, il est, nous sommes, vous êtes, ils sont.	Past indef.	j'ai été, tu as été, il a été, nous avons été, vous avez été, ils ont été.
Imperfect.	j'étais, tu étais, il était, nous étions, vous étiez, ils étaient.	Pluperfect.	j'avais été, tu avais été, il avait été, nous avions été, vous aviez été, ils avaient été.

Past definite.	je fus, tu fus, il fut, nous fûmes, vous fûtes, ils furent.	Past ant.	j'eus été, tu eus été, il eut été, nous eûmes été, vous eûtes été, ils eurent été.
Future.	je serai, tu seras, il sera, nous serons, vous serez, ils seront.	Future ant.	j'aurai été, tu auras été, il aura été, nous aurons été, vous aurez été, ils auront été.

### CONDITIONAL MODE

Present.	je serais,	Past.	j'aurais été,
	tu serais,		tu aurais été,
	il serait,		il aurait été,
	nous serions,		nous aurions été,
	vous seriez,		vous auriez été,
	ils seraient.		ils auraient été.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MODE

Present.	je sois, tu sois, il soit, nous soyons, vous soyez, ils soient.	Past.	j'aie été, tu aies été, il ait été, nous ayons été, vous ayez été, ils aient été.
Imperfect.	je fusse, tu fusses, il fût, nous fussions, vous fussiez, ils fussent.	Pluperfect.	j'eusse été, tu eusses été, il eût été, nous eussions été, vous eussiez été, ils eussent été.

## IMPERATIVE MODE

sois,            soyons,            soyez.

## THE THREE REGULAR CONJUGATIONS

I.

II.

III.

## PRESENT INFINITIVE

porter.

finir.

rendre.

## PRESENT PARTICIPLE

portant.

finissant.

rendant.

## PAST PARTICIPLE

porté.

fini.

rendu.

## INDICATIVE MODE

## PRESENT

je porte,  
tu portes,  
il porte,  
nous portons,  
vous portez,  
ils portent.

je finis,  
tu finis,  
il finit,  
nous finissons,  
vous finissez,  
ils finissent.

je rends,  
tu rends,  
il rend,  
nous rendons,  
vous rendez,  
ils rendent.

## IMPERFECT

je portais,  
tu portais,  
il portait,  
nous portions,  
vous portiez,  
ils portaient.

je finissais,  
tu finissais,  
il finissait,  
nous finissions,  
vous finissiez,  
ils finissaient.

je rendais,  
tu rendais,  
il rendait,  
nous rendions,  
vous rendiez,  
ils rendaient.

## PAST DEFINITE

je portai,  
tu portas,  
il porta,  
nous portâmes,  
vous portâtes,  
ils portèrent.

je finis,  
tu finis,  
il finit,  
nous finîmes,  
vous finîtes,  
ils finirent.

je rendis,  
tu rendis,  
il rendit,  
nous rendîmes,  
vous rendîtes,  
ils rendirent.

## I.

je porterai,  
tu porteras,  
il portera,  
nous porterons,  
vous porterez,  
ils porteront.

## II.

## FUTURE

je finirai,  
tu finiras,  
il finira,  
nous finirons,  
vous finirez,  
ils finiront.

## III.

je rendrai,  
tu rendras,  
il rendra,  
nous rendrons,  
vous rendrez,  
ils rendront.

## CONDITIONAL MODE

## PRESENT

je porterais,  
tu porterais,  
il porterait,  
nous porterions,  
vous porteriez,  
ils porteraient.

je finirais,  
tu finirais,  
il finirait,  
nous finirions,  
vous finiriez,  
ils finiraient.

je rendrais,  
tu rendrais,  
il rendrait,  
nous rendrions,  
vous rendriez,  
ils rendraient.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MODE

## PRESENT

je porte,  
tu portes,  
il porte,  
nous portions,  
vous portiez,  
ils portent.

je finisse,  
tu finisses,  
il finisse,  
nous finissions,  
vous finissiez,  
ils finissent.

je rende,  
tu rendes,  
il rende,  
nous rendions,  
vous rendiez,  
ils rendent.

## IMPERFECT

je portasse,  
tu portasses,  
il portât,  
nous portassions,  
vous portassiez,  
ils portassent.

je finisse,  
tu finisses,  
il finît,  
nous finissions,  
vous finissiez,  
ils finissent.

je rendisse,  
tu rendisses,  
il rendît,  
nous rendissions,  
vous rendissiez,  
ils rendissent.

## IMPERATIVE MODE

porte,  
portons,  
portez.

finis,  
finissons,  
finissez.

rends,  
rendons,  
rendez.

## THE IRREGULAR VERBS

The following is not a list of all the irregular verbs in French, but of the most important ones for a beginner. See Lessons XLIX and LII, Rule 6.

## IRREGULAR VERBS

VERBS IN **-ER**

PRESENT INFINITIVE.	PRESENT PARTICIPLE.	PAST PART.	PRESENT INDICATIVE.	PAST DEFINITE.
<b>Aller, to go.</b> j'irai	allant ils vont j'aille, -es, -e, -ent	allé Conju- gated with être.	je vais tu vas il va IMPERATIVE va (vas)	j'allai
<b>Envoyer, to send.</b> j'enverrai	envoyant ils envoient j'envoie, -es, -e, -ent	envoyé	j'envoie	j'envoyai

VERBS IN **-IR**

<b>Acquérir, to acquire.</b> j'acquerrai	acquérant ils acquièrent j'acquière, -es, -e, -ent	acquis	j'acquièrs	j'acquis
<b>Assaillir, to assail.</b>	assaillant	assailli	j'assaille	j'assaillis
<b>Bouillir, to boil.</b>	bouillant	bouilli	je bous	je bouillis
<b>Courir, to run.</b> je courrai	courant	couru	je cours	je courus
<b>Couvrir, to cover.</b>	couvrant	couvert	je couvre	je couvris
<b>Cueillir, to gather.</b> je cueillerai	cueillant	cueilli	je cueille	je cueillis
<b>Dormir, to sleep.</b>	dormant	dormi	je dors	je dormis
<b>Mentir, to lie.</b>	mentant	menti	je mens	je mentis
<b>Partir, to set out.</b>	partant	parti	je pars	je partis
<b>Se repentir, to repent.</b>	se repentant	repenti	je me repens	je me repentis
<b>Sentir, to feel.</b>	sentant	senti	je sens	je sentis
<b>Servir, to serve.</b>	servant	servi	je sers	je servis
<b>Fuir, to flee.</b>	fuyant	fui	je fuis	je fuis
<b>Gésir, to lie.</b>	gisant	—	—	—
Future and Condi- tional lacking.	Present Sub- junctive lacking.		il gît	



PRESENT INFINITIVE.	PRESENT PARTICIPLE.	PAST PART.	PRESENT INDICATIVE.	PAST DEFINITE.
<b>Hair, to hate.</b>	haïssant	haï	je hais	je haïs
<b>Mourir, to die.</b> je mourrai	mourant ils meurent je meure, -es, -e, -ent	mort être	je meurs	je mourus
<b>Tenir, to hold.</b> je tiendrai	tenant ils tiennent je tiens, -es, -e, -ent	tenu	je tiens	je tins
<b>Venir, to come.</b> je viendrai.	venant ils viennent je vienne, -es, -e, -ent	venu être	je viens	je vins

VERBS IN **-RE**

<b>Battre, to beat.</b>	battant	battu	je bats tu bats il bat	je battis
<b>Boire, to drink.</b>	buvant ils boivent je boive, -es, -e, -ent	bu	je bois	je bus
<b>Conclure, to conclude.</b>	concluant	conclu	je conclus	je conclus
<b>Conduire, to conduct, lead.</b>	conduisant	conduit	je conduis	je conduisis
<b>Connaître, to know.</b>	connaissant	connu	je connais	je connus
<b>Coudre, to sew.</b>	cousant	cousu	je couds	je cousis
<b>Craindre, to fear.</b>	craignant	craint	je crains	je craignis
<b>Croire, to believe.</b>	croyant	cru	je crois	je crus
<b>Croître, to grow.</b>	croissant	crû	je crois	je crûs
<b>Dire, to say, to tell.</b>	disant vous dites	dit	je dis	je dis
<b>Écrire, to write.</b>	écrivant	écrit	j'écris	j'écrivis
<b>Faire, to do, to make.</b> je ferai	faisant vous faites ils font je fasse, -es, -e -ions, -iez, -ent	fait	je fais	je fis
<b>Lire, to read.</b>	lisant	lu	je lis	je lus
<b>Luire, to shine.</b>	luisant	lui	je luis	—
<b>Mettre, to put.</b>	mettant	mis	je mets	je mis
<b>Naitre, to be born, arise.</b>	naissant	né être	je nais	je naquis

PRESENT INFINITIVE.	PRESENT PARTICIPLE.	PAST PART.	PRESENT INDICATIVE.	PAST DEFINITE.
Nuire, <i>to injure.</i>	nuisant	nui	je nuis	je nuisis
Plaire, <i>to please.</i>	plaisant	plu	je plais il plaît	je plus
Prendre, <i>to take.</i>	prenant ils prennent je prenne, -es, -e, -ent	pris	je prends	je pris
Résoudre, <i>to resolve.</i>	résolvant	résolu or résous	je résous	je résolus

The second form of the participle has no feminine.

Rire, <i>to laugh.</i>	riant	ri	je ris	je ris
Suffire, <i>to suffice.</i>	suffisant	suffi	je suffis	je suffis
Suivre, <i>to follow.</i>	suivant	suivi	je suis	je suivis
Taire, <i>to keep still about.</i>	taisant	tu	je tais	je tus
Vaincre, <i>to conquer.</i>	vainquant	vaincu	je vaincs il vaine	je vainquis
Vivre, <i>to live.</i>	vivant	vécu	je vis	je vécus

#### VERBS IN -OIR

Asseoir, <i>to seat.</i>	asseyant	assis	j'assieds	j'assis
j'assiérai	or		or	
j'asseyerai	assoyant		j'assois	
j'assoirai				
Devoir, <i>to owe.</i>	devant	dû	je dois	je dus
je devrai	ils doivent je doive, -es, -e, -ent	Fem. due		
Falloir, <i>to be necessary.</i>	—	fallu	il faut	il fallut
il faudra	il fallait il faille			
Mouvoir, <i>to move.</i>	mouvant	mû	je meus	je mus
je mouvrirai	ils meuvent je meuve, -es, -e, -ent	Fem. mue		
Pleuvoir, <i>to rain.</i>	pleuvant	plu	il pleut	il plut
il pleuvra				
Pourvoir, <i>to provide.</i>	pourvoyant	pourvu	je pourvois	je pourvus
Pouvoir, <i>to be able.</i>	pouvant	pu	je peux	je pus
je pourrai	ils peuvent je puisse, -es, -e -ions, -iez, -ent		or je puis tu peux il peut	
Prévoir, <i>to foresee.</i>	prévoyant	prévu	je prévois	je prévis

PRESENT INFINITIVE.	PRESENT PARTICIPLE.	PAST PART.	PRESENT INDICATIVE.	PAST DEFINITE.
<b>Recevoir, to receive.</b> je recevrai	recevant ils reçoivent je reçoive, -es, -e, -ent	reçu	je reçois	je reçus
<b>Savoir, to know.</b> je saurai	sachant nous savons vous savez ils savent, je savais, etc.	su	je sais sache sachons sachez	je sus
<b>Valoir, to be worth.</b> je vaudrai	valant je vaille, -es, -e, -ent	valu	je vaudrai	je valus
<b>Voir, to see.</b> je verrai	voyant	vu	je vois	je vis
<b>Vouloir, to will.</b> je voudrai	voulant ils veulent je veuille, -es, -e, -ent	voulu	je veux  IMPERATIVE. veuillez	je voulais



## VOCABULARIES

---

The student is advised to have recourse to the vocabularies only as a last resort. If a word has been used in the examples, or is found in the special vocabulary and notes belonging to the same lesson, or if its meaning, gender, etc., are obvious from the context, it is not inserted in these general vocabularies.

Numerals, the names of days and months, are not inserted, nor are the common pronouns and demonstrative and interrogative adjectives. These are fully explained in the Lessons.

Words are given only with the meanings that occur in this book.

Numbers refer to pages.

### FRENCH-ENGLISH

#### A

à, to, at, in.

abord (*d'*), at first.

accueillir (*irr. v.*), receive, welcome.

acheter, buy.

achever, complete, finish.

agir, act.

aimer, love, like.

ainsi, thus.

air (*avoir l'*), to look like; *en plein*  
air, in the open air.

aisé, easy.

Allemagne, *f.* Germany.

allemand, German.

aller (*irr. v. être*), go.

alors, then.

amener, lead.

amer (*r sounded*), amère, bitter.

ami, amie, friend.

an, *m.* year.

année, *f.* year.

appeler, call.

appointements, *m.* salary.

apporter, bring.

apprendre (*irr. v.*), learn.

après, *prep.* after.—*adv.* afterward.

après-midi, *m.* or *f.* afternoon.

arbre, *m.* tree.

argent, *m.* silver; money.

arrêter, stop.

arriver (*être*), arrive; happen.

assez, enough; rather, quite.

attendre [63], wait for, wait.

aucun (*adj.*), any.

aujourd'hui, to-day.

aussi, also.

aussitôt, immediately.

aussitôt que, as soon as,

autant, as many, as much.

autour de, around.

autre, other.

autrefois, formerly.

Autriche, *f.* Austria.

avant, before.

avec, with.

avis, *m.* opinion.

avouer, confess, admit.

## B

bague, *f.* ring, finger-ring.  
 balle, *f.* bullet.  
 bas, *adv.* low, low down.—*m.* bottom.  
 bas, basse, *adj.* low.  
 bateau, *m.* boat.  
 battre (*irr. v.*), beat.  
 beau, bel, belle, fine, beautiful, handsome.  
 beaucoup, much, many, greatly.  
 besoin, *m.* need.  
 beurre, *m.* butter.  
 bibliothèque, *f.* library.  
 bien, well, very, many, much.  
 bientôt, soon.  
 billet, *m.* note, ticket.  
 blesser, wound.  
 bœuf, *m.* ox.  
 bois, *m.* wood.  
 boîte, *f.* box.  
 bon, bonne, good.  
 bonheur, *m.* happiness.  
 bord, *m.* shore.  
 boucher, butcher.  
 boulanger, baker.  
 bras, *m.* arm.  
 brave [237], good, brave.  
 briller, shine.  
 bruit, *m.* noise; rumor.

## C

cadeau, *m.* present.  
 café, *m.* coffee.  
 cahier, *m.* copy-book.  
 campagne, *f.* country [42].  
 car, *conj.* for.  
 cas, *m.* case.  
 casser, break.  
 cause de (à), on account of.  
 céder, yield; give over, cede.  
 cela, that.  
 celle, celui, Lesson XVII.  
 cent, one hundred.  
 cerise, *f.* cherry.  
 cesse (*sans*), unceasingly, constantly.

chacun, each, each one.  
 chagrin, *m.* grief, sorrow.  
 chaise, *f.* chair.  
 chambre, *f.* room.  
 chant, *m.* singing.  
 chanter, sing.  
 chapeau, *m.* hat.  
 chaque, each, every.  
 chaud, *adj.* warm, hot.—*m.* heat, warmth.  
 chef, *m.* chief.  
 chemin, *m.* way.  
 cheminée, *f.* chimney, mantelpiece.  
 cher, chère, dear.  
 chercher, look for, seek.  
 cheval, *m.* horse.  
 cheveu, *m.* hair.  
 chez, *prep.* See p. 133.  
 chien, *m.* dog.  
 choisir, choose.  
 chose, *f.* thing.  
 chute, *f.* fall.  
 ciel, *m.* heaven, sky.  
 clé or clef, *f.* key.  
 cœur, *m.* heart.  
 coin, *m.* corner.  
 collier, *m.* necklace.  
 combien, how many, how much.  
 comme, like, as.  
 comme ça, that way, like that.  
 comment, how.  
 comprendre (*irr. v.*), understand.  
 compter (*p. silent*), count; intend.  
 connaissance, *f.* knowledge; acquaintance.  
 connaître (*irr. v.*), know [70].  
 conseil, *m.* advice.  
 conserver, keep.  
 content, glad, happy.  
 contre, against.  
 convenir (*irr. v.*), suit, be suited.  
 coudre (*irr. v.*), sew.  
 courir (*irr. v.*), run.  
 couteau, *m.* knife.  
 coûter, cost.  
 craie, *f.* chalk.  
 craindre (*irr. v.*), fear.



croire (*irr. v.*), believe, think.  
croix, *f.* cross.  
cru, raw.

## D

dame, lady.  
dans, in.  
de, of; from.  
déesse, goddess.  
défaut, *m.* fault, defect.  
déjà, already.  
déjeuner, *m.* breakfast.  
déjeuner, *v.* breakfast.  
demain, to-morrow.  
demi, *adj.* half [233].  
depuis, *prep.* since, for.  
déranger, disturb.  
dernier, dernière, last.  
désormais, henceforth.  
dès que, as soon as.  
détruire (*irr. v.*), destroy.  
devant, before, in front of, in the face of.  
devenir (*irr. v.*), become.  
devoir, *n.* duty.—(*irr. v.*), owe, ought, must.  
dire (*irr. v.*), say, tell.  
diriger, direct.  
disparaître (*irr. v.*), disappear.  
doigt (*g silent*), *m.* finger.  
donc, therefore, so.  
donner, give; face.  
dormir (*irr. v.*), sleep.  
dos, *m.* back.  
droit, *adj.* right.—*m.* right; law.  
dur, hard.  
durer, last.

## E

eau, *f.* water.  
écouter, listen to.  
écrire (*irr. v.*), write.  
égal, equal.  
élève, pupil.  
élire (*irr. v.*), elect.  
empêcher, hinder, prevent.  
emporter, carry off.  
en, *prep.* in.—*pron.* [123, 172].

enchanter, delight.  
encore, again; yet.  
encre, *f.* ink.  
endroit, *m.* place, spot.  
enfant, child.  
enfin, at last.  
ensemble, together.  
ensuite, afterward, next.  
entendre, hear.  
entourer, surround.  
entre, between, among.  
entrer (être), come in, go in, enter.  
envers, toward.  
envoyer (*irr. v.*), send.  
époque, *f.* time.  
escalier, *m.* stairs, staircase.  
espérer, hope.  
essayer, try.  
et, and.  
étage, *m.* story, floor.  
été, *m.* summer.  
étendre, stretch out.  
étoile, *f.* star.  
étonner, astonish.  
étonner (s'), wonder.  
étude, *f.* study.  
étudier, study.  
éviter, avoid.  
exercer, exert.

## F

facile, easy.  
faim, *f.* hunger.  
faire (*irr. v.*), make, do.  
fait, *m.* fact.  
falloir (*irr. v. impersonal*), expressed by must.  
faux, *adv.* out of tune.  
fenêtre, *f.* window.  
fer, *m.* iron.  
fermer, close, shut.  
feu, *m.* fire.  
feuille, *f.* leaf.  
fille, *f.* daughter, girl.  
fils (*l silent, s pronounced*), son.  
fleur, *f.* flower.  
fois, *f.* time.

fort, *adj.* strong.—*adv.* very.  
 fou, fol, folle, crazy, mad.  
 foule, *f.* crowd.  
 frère, brother.  
 froid, cold.  
 fusil (*l silent*), *m.* gun.

## G

gagner, earn ; win.  
 gai, cheerful, merry.  
 garçon, boy.  
 garder, keep.  
 gare, *f.* railway-station.  
 gâter, spoil.  
 gens, people.  
 goût, *m.* taste.  
 grand, tall, large, great.  
 gros, grosse, big.  
 guère, hardly, not much.  
 guérir, cure ; get well.  
 guerre, *f.* war.

## H

habiter, inhabit, live in.  
 hardi (*aspirate h*), bold.  
 haut (*asp. h*), high.  
 herbe, *f.* grass.  
 heure, *f.* hour ; o'clock.  
 heure (de bonne), early.  
 heureux, happy.  
 hier, yesterday.  
 histoire, *f.* story, history.  
 hiver (*r sounded*), *m.* winter.  
 homme, man.

## I

ici, here, hither.  
 importer, import.  
 importe (n'), no matter, never mind.

## J

jamais, ever ; (*with neg.*) never.  
 jardin, *m.* garden.  
 jardinier, gardener.  
 jaune, yellow.  
 jeune, young.  
 joie, *f.* joy.

joli, pretty.  
 jouer, play.  
 jour, *m.* day.  
 journal, *m.* newspaper.  
 journée, *f.* day.  
 jusqu'à, until ; as far as.  
 jusque, up to.  
 juste, *adv.* right, in tune.

## L

là, there.  
 là-bas, down there, yonder, over there.  
 laisser, leave, let.  
 lait, *m.* milk.  
 langue, *f.* language.  
 léger, légère, light, slight.  
 lent, slow.  
 levé, risen, up.  
 lire (*irr. v.*) read.  
 lit, *m.* bed.  
 livre, *m.* book.  
 loin, far.  
 longtemps, *adv.* long, a long while.  
 lorsque, when.  
 louer, praise.  
 lune, *f.* moon.

## M

magnifique, magnificent.  
 main, *f.* hand.  
 maintenant, now.  
 mais, but.  
 mais non, why no.  
 maison, *f.* house.  
 maître, master ; teacher.  
 mal, *adv.* badly.  
 mal, *maux, n.* evil, hurt, ache.  
 malade, ill, sick.  
 malheur, *m.* misfortune.  
 malheureux, unhappy, unfortunate.  
 manger, eat.  
 manquer, miss ; be lacking.  
 marchand, merchant, dealer.  
 mari, husband.  
 matin, *m.* morning.  
 mauvais, bad.

**maux**, *pl. of mal*.  
**médecin**, physician.  
**meilleur, meilleure**, *adj.* better, best.  
**même**, *adv.* even.—*adj.* same.  
**menteur**, liar.  
**mentir** (*irr. v.*), lie.  
**mer**, *f.* sea.  
**merci**, thanks.  
**mère**, mother.  
**métier**, *m.* trade, handicraft.  
**mettre** (*irr. v.*), put.  
**midi**, *m.* noon; south.  
**mieux**, *adv.* better, best.  
**moindre**, *adj.* less, least.  
**moine**, monk.  
**moins**, *adv.* less, least; **au moins**, at least.  
**mois**, *m.* month.  
**moitié**, *f.* half.  
**monde**, *m.* world; **tout le monde**, everybody.  
**monter** (*être*), go up.  
**monsieur**, *pl.* messieurs, gentleman, Sir, Mr.  
**montrer**, show.  
**morceau**, *m.* bit, piece.  
**mort**, *f.* death.  
**mot**, *m.* word.  
**mourir** (*irr. v.*), die.  
**moyen**, *m.* means.  
**mûr**, ripe.

## N

**naquit** (*past. def. of naître*).  
**neige**, *f.* snow.  
**ni . . . ni**, neither . . . nor.  
**noir**, black, dark.  
**nom**, *m.* name; noun.  
**non plus**, either.  
**nord**, *m.* north.  
**nouveau, nouvel, nouvelle**, new.  
**nouvelle**, *f.* news.  
**nuît**, *f.* night.

## O

**œil**, *pl.* yeux, eye.  
**oiseau**, *m.* bird.

**on**, *pronoun*. See Lesson XXX.  
**or**, *m.* gold.  
**ordinaire** (*d'*), usually.  
**oser**, dare.  
**ou**, or.  
**où**, where.  
**oublier**, forget.  
**ouvert**, open.  
**ouvrir** (*irr. v.*), open.

## P

**pain**, *m.* bread.  
**par**, through, by.  
**paraître**, appear.  
**parce que**, because.  
**pareil, pareille**, such, like, similar.  
**paresse**, *f.* laziness.  
**paresseux**, lazy.  
**parler**, speak.  
**parole**, *f.* word.  
**partir** (*irr. v. être*), go away; start.  
**pauvre**, poor.  
**pays**, *m.* country.  
**peau**, *f.* skin; hide.  
**peine** (*à*), scarcely.  
**pendant**, *prep.* during; for.  
**pendant que**, *conj.* while.  
**pénible**, painful.  
**penser**, think [178].  
**perdre**, lose.  
**père**, father.  
**personne**, any one, nobody [102].  
**petit**, small, little.  
**peu**, few; **un peu**, a little.  
**peur**, *f.* fear.  
**phrase**, *f.* sentence.  
**pièce**, *f.* coin; room; play.  
**piéd**, *m.* foot.  
**place**, *f.* place; space; room; public square.  
**plaisir**, *m.* pleasure.  
**plein**, full; **en plein air**, in the open air; **en pleine mer**, out at sea.  
**pluie**, *f.* rain.  
**plume**, *f.* pen.  
**plupart**, *f.* most, majority.  
**plus**, more.

plusieurs, several.  
 poirier, *m.* pear-tree.  
 poisson, *m.* fish.  
 pommier, *m.* apple-tree.  
 porte, *f.* door; gate.  
 porter, carry, bear, wear.  
 pour, for; in order to.  
 pourquoi, why, what for.  
 pourtant, however.  
 pousser, push, impel; grow.  
 pouvoir (*irr. v.*), can, be able.—*m.*  
     power.  
 premier, première, first.  
 prendre (*irr. v.*), take.  
 près de, near.  
 presque, almost.  
 prêt (*à*), ready.  
 prêter, lend.  
 prévoir (*irr. v.*), foresee.  
 prier, pray, beg, entreat.  
 prochain, next.  
 promener (*se*), take a walk.  
 puis, then, next.  
 puisque, *conj.* since (*cause*).  
 puissance, *f.* power.

## Q

quand, when.  
 que, *conj.* that; than, as.  
 que, *rel. pron. acc.* whom, which,  
     *that*.  
 que, *interr. pron.* what?  
 que de, how many [105].  
 quel, quelle, *adj.* what, which.  
 quelque, some.  
 quelquefois, sometimes.  
 quelques, a few.  
 quelqu'un, some one.  
 qui, *rel. pron. nom.* who, which, that.  
 qui, *interr. pron.* who?  
 quitter, leave.  
 quoique, although, though.

## R

raison, *f.* reason, right.  
 ramasser, pick up, gather.  
 recevoir (*irr. v.*), receive.

reconnaître (*irr. v.*), recognize.  
 réfléchir, reflect.  
 regarder, look at.  
 remplir, fill.  
 rencontrer, meet.  
 rendre, give back, pay back; render;  
     translate.  
 rentrer (*être*), return home, come in  
     again.  
 repartir (*être*), start off again.  
 repas, *m.* meal.  
 répondre (*à*), reply [63].  
 rester (*être*), remain, stay.  
 retour (*de*), back.  
 retourner, go back.  
 retrouver, find.  
 réussir (*à*), succeed.  
 rêve, *m.* dream.  
 réveiller, wake.  
 revenir (*irr. v.*), to come back.  
 rien, anything, nothing [102].  
 roi, king.  
 roman, *m.* novel.  
 rompre, break.  
 rougir, blush.

## S

sage, wise; good.  
 salle, *f.* hall, room.  
 salle-à-manger, dining-room.  
 sans, without.  
 santé, *f.* health.  
 sauver, save.  
 savoir (*irr. v.*), know [70].  
 science, *f.* knowledge, science.  
 selon, according to.  
 semaine, *f.* week.  
 seul, alone, only, mere.  
 seulement, only, merely.  
 si, *conj.* if; whether.—*adv.* so; yes.  
     Lesson XXXII.  
 sœur, sister.  
 soie, *f.* silk.  
 soir, *m.* evening.  
 soirée, *f.* evening.  
 soit . . . soit, either . . . or.  
 soldat, soldier.

soleil, *m.* sun.  
 sort, *m.* fate, lot.  
 sorte (de la), in that way.  
 sorte que (de), so that.  
 sortir (*irr. v.*, être), go out.  
 sot, *m.* fool.  
 sourd, deaf.  
 sourd-muet, deaf-mute.  
 sous, under.  
 souvent, often.  
 suffire (*irr. v.*), suffice.  
 Suisse, *f.* Switzerland.  
 suivre (*irr. v.*), follow.  
 sur, on, upon; out of.  
 sûr, sure.  
 surprendre (*irr. v.*), surprise.

## T

tableau, *m.* picture, painting.  
 tâcher (de), try, endeavor.  
 tant, so many, so much.  
 tant que, as long as.  
 tante, aunt.  
 tel, telle, such [153].  
 temps, time; weather.  
 terre, *f.* earth; land.  
 tête, *f.* head.  
 tomber (être), fall.  
 tort, *m.* wrong.  
 tôt, soon.  
 toujours, always.  
 tout, *adj.* all; any [114, 223].—*pron.*  
 everything, all.  
 traduire (*irr. v.*), translate.  
 trahison, *f.* betrayal, treason.  
 travail, *m. pl.* travaux, work.  
 travailler, work.

traverser, cross.  
 très, very.  
 triste, sad.  
 tromper, deceive.  
 trop, too, too many, too much.  
 trouver, find; consider.  
 tuer, kill.

## U

utile, useful.

## V

vaincre (*irr. v.*), conquer.  
 valoir (*irr. v.*), be worth.  
 vaurien, *m.* good-for-nothing.  
 vendre, sell.  
 venir (*irr. v.*), come.  
 verre, *m.* glass.  
 vers, *m.* verse.—*prep.* toward.  
 viande, *f.* meat.  
 vie, *f.* life.  
 ville, *f.* (*l normal*) city.  
 vin, *m.* wine.  
 vite, quickly.  
 vivre (*irr. v.*), live.  
 voilà, behold, there is [151].  
 voir (*irr. v.*), see.  
 voiture, *f.* carriage.  
 voix, *f.* voice.  
 vouloir (*irr. v.*), will, wish.  
 vrai, true.  
 vraiment, truly, really.

## Y

y. See p. 180.  
 yeux, *m. pl.* eyes.

## ENGLISH-FRENCH

## A

abandon, abandonner.  
 about, autour de; (*concerning*) de.  
 absence, —, *f.*  
 absent, —.

accept, accepter.  
 accompany, accompagner.  
 according to, selon.  
 accuse, accuser.  
 act, agir.

admirably, *admirablement*.  
 admiral, *amiral*.  
 admire, *admirer*.  
 admit, *admettre* (*irr. v.*).  
 adversary, *adversaire, m.*  
 advice, *conseil, m.*  
 affair, *affaire, f.*  
 afraid (to be), *avoir peur*.  
 after, *après*.  
 afternoon, *après-midi* (*m. or f.*).  
 again, *encore, encore une fois*; also  
     expressed by prefix *re-*.  
 against, *contre*.  
 agitate, *agiter*.  
 ago. See 46.  
 agree, *s'accorder*; *convenir* (*irr. v.*).  
 agreeable, *agréable*.  
 air, —, *m.*; in the open air, *en plein*  
     *air*.  
 alight, *descendre*.  
 all, *tout* [114, 223]; not at all, *pas du*  
     *tout*.  
 allow, *permettre* (*irr. v.*).  
 alone, *seul*.  
 Alps, *les Alpes, f.*  
 already, *déjà*.  
 also, *aussi*.  
 always, *toujours*.  
 amiable, *aimable*.  
 among, *entre, parmi*.  
 amusing, *adj. amusant*.  
 and, *et*.  
 animal, *animal, pl. animaux*.  
 another, *un autre, une autre*.  
 answer, *n. réponse, f.*  
 answer, *v. répondre* (*à*) [63].  
 anxious, *inquiet, inquiète*.  
 any [see 60, 99], *tout*.  
 anybody, *quelqu'un; personne*.  
 any more, *plus*.  
 any one, *quelqu'un; personne*.  
 anything, *quelque chose; rien*.  
 anything else, *autre chose*.  
 apartment, *appartement, m.*  
 appear, *paraître* (*irr. v.*).  
 apple, *pomme, f.*  
 apple-tree, *pommier, m.*

approach, *s'approcher* (*de*).  
 argument, —, *m.*  
 arithmetic, *arithmétique, f.*  
 arm, *bras, m.*  
 army, *armée, f.*  
 around, *autour de*.  
 arrive, *arriver* (*être*).  
 article, —, *m.*  
 as, *comme; aussi . . . que*.  
 as long as, *tant que*.  
 as soon as, *aussitôt que, dès que*.  
 ascend, *monter* (*être*).  
 ask, *demander* [156].  
 ask a question, *faire une question*.  
 astonish, *étonner*.  
 at, *à, chez*.  
 attend, *assister* (*à*).  
 attention, —, *f.*  
 aunt, *tante*.  
 Austria, *Autriche, f.*  
 author, *auteur, m.*  
 away (usually not expressed by a sep-  
     arate word); go away, *partir, s'en*  
     *aller*; take away, *emporter, en-*  
     *lever*.

## B

back (usually not expressed by a sep-  
     arate word); be back, *être de re-*  
     *tour*; get back, *rentrer, être de*  
     *retour*; give back, *rendre*; pay  
     back, *rendre*.  
 badly, *mal*.  
 baker, *boulangier*.  
 bashful, *timide*.  
 battle, *bataille, f.*; combat, *m.*  
 be, *être* (*irr. v.*); aller, *se porter*.  
 bear, *porter*.  
 beat, *battre*.  
 beautiful, *beau, bel, belle*.  
 because, *parce que*.  
 because of, *à cause de*.  
 become, *devenir* (*irr. v.*).  
 bed, *lit, m.*; go to bed, *se coucher*.  
 before, *prep. avant* (priority); *devant*  
     (in front of).  
 before, *conj. avant que*.



beg, *prier*.  
 begin, *commencer*.  
 beginning, *commencement, m.*  
 behavior, *conduite, f.*  
 behind, *derrière*.  
 believe, *croire (irr. v.)*.  
 belong, *appartenir (irr. v.)*.  
 beside, *près de, à côté de*.  
 best, *adj. le meilleur, la meilleure*.  
 better, *adj. meilleur, meilleure.—adv. mieux*; it is better, *il vaut mieux*.  
 betrayal, *trahison, f.*  
 between, *entre*.  
 big, *gros, grosse*.  
 bird, *oiseau, m.*  
 bitterly, *amèrement*.  
 black, *noir*.  
 blame, *blâmer*.  
 blue, *bleu*; *pl. bleus*.  
 boat, *bateau*.  
 boat-riding, *les promenades en bateau*.  
 book, *livre, m.*  
 bookseller, *libraire, m.*  
 borrow, *emprunter*.  
 botany, *botanique, f.*  
 both, *les deux*.  
 bouquet, *—, m.*  
 box, *boîte, f.*  
 boy, *garçon*.  
 bread, *pain, m.*  
 break, *rompre, casser*.  
 breakfast, *déjeuner, m.*  
 bring, *amener*; *apporter* [196].  
 broom, *balai, m.*  
 brother, *frère*.  
 build, *bâtir*.  
 burn, *brûler*.  
 busy, *occupé*.  
 but, *mais*; *ne . . . que*.  
 butter, *beurre, m.*  
 buy, *acheter*.  
 by, *par*; *en*.

## C

call, *appeler*.  
 call for, *aller chercher, venir chercher*.

can, *pouvoir (irr. v.)*.  
 can it be? *se peut-il?*  
 Canada, *—, m.*  
 capital, *capitale, f.*  
 captain, *capitaine, m.*  
 care, *soin, m.*; to take care, *avoir soin*.  
 careful, *prudent*.  
 carriage, *voiture, f.*  
 carry, *porter*.  
 castle, *château*.  
 cat, *chat, m.*  
 catch, *prendre (irr. v.)*; *attraper*.  
 cause, *cause, f.*  
 celebrated, *célèbre*.  
 center, *milieu, m.*; *centre, m.*  
 ceremony, *cérémonie, f.*  
 certain, *—*.  
 chair, *chaise, f.*  
 chalk, *craie, f.*  
 change, *changer*.  
 Channel, the English, *la Manche*.  
 cherry, *cerise, f.*  
 cherry-tree, *cerisier, m.*  
 cheap, *à bon marché*.  
 chickens, *les poules*; (hens) *les poulets*.  
 child, *enfant*.  
 chimney, *cheminée, f.*  
 China, *Chine, f.*  
 chocolate, *chocolat, m.*  
 choose, *choisir*.  
 church, *église, f.*  
 cigar, *cigare, m.*  
 citizen, *citoyen, m.*  
 city, *ville, f.*  
 class, *classe, f.*  
 close, *fermer*.  
 coffee, *café, m.*  
 colonel, *—, m.*  
 color, *couleur, f.*  
 come, *venir (irr. v. être)*.  
 come back, *revenir*.  
 come down, *descendre*.  
 come home, *rentrer*.  
 come in, *entrer*.  
 come near, *s'approcher*; *faillir*.

company, *compagnie*, *f.*; keep company, *tenir compagnie*.  
 complete, *adj.* *complet*, *complète*; *v.* *achever*.  
 compliment, —, *m.*  
 composition, —, *f.*  
 concert, —, *m.*  
 conduct, *conduite*, *f.*  
 confer, *conférer*.  
 confess, *confesser*, *avouer*.  
 confidence, *confiance*, *f.*  
 Conqueror, *Conquérant*.  
 consent, *consentement*, *m.*  
 consider, *considérer*.  
 constantly, *constamment*, *sans cesse*.  
 consult, *consulter*.  
 continent, —, *m.*  
 continue, *continuer*.  
 convince, *convaincre* (*irr. v.*).  
 copy, *copier*.  
 copy-book, *cahier*, *m.*  
 cost, *coûter*.  
 country, *campagne*, *f.*; *pays*, *m.* [42].  
 courage, —, *m.*  
 course, *cours*, *m.*  
 cousin, —, *m.*; *cousine*, *f.*  
 cover, *couvrir* (*irr. v.*).  
 crime, —, *m.*  
 cross, *n.* *croix*, *f.*  
 cross, *v.* *traverser*, *passer*.  
 crowd, *foule*, *f.*  
 cure, *guérir*.  
 cut, *couper*.

## D

dance, *danser*.  
 dangerous, *dangereux*.  
 dare, *oser*.  
 dark, *brun*.  
 date, —, *f.*  
 daughter, *filie*, *f.* (*ll mouillées*).  
 day, *jour*, *m.*  
 dead, *mort*.  
 deaf, *sourd*.  
 deal (a good), *beaucoup*.  
 dear, *cher*, *chère*.  
 deceive, *tromper*.

declare, *déclarer*.  
 deep, *profond*.  
 deeply, *vivement*, *profondément*.  
 delight, *enchanter*.  
 deny, *nier*.  
 desire, *désirer*.  
 destroy, *détruire* (*irr. v.*).  
 detain, *retenir* (*irr. v.*).  
 dictionary, *dictionnaire*, *m.*  
 die, *mourir* (*irr. v. être*).  
 difference, *différence*, *f.*  
 difficult, *difficile*.  
 difficulty, *difficulté*, *f.*  
 dine, *dîner*.  
 dining-room, *salle-à-manger*, *f.*  
 dinner, *dîner*, *m.*  
 directly, *directement*.  
 disappointment, *désappointement*, *m.*  
     *déception*, *f.*  
 discourage, *décourager*.  
 discover, *découvrir* (*irr. v.*).  
 discuss, *discuter*.  
 dislike, *expressed by déplaire* (*à*) (*irr. v.*).  
 dispatch, *dépêche*, *f.*  
 disperse, *disperser*; *se disperser*.  
 displeasure, *déplaire* (*à*) (*irr. v.*).  
 distance, —, *f.*  
 distinguish, *distinguer*.  
 distribute, *distribuer*.  
 disturb, *déranger*.  
 do, *faire* (*irr. v.*); (suffice) *suffire* (*irr. v.*)  
 doctor, *médecin*.  
 dog, *chien*.  
 door, *porte*, *f.*  
 down (come), }  
 down (go), } *descendre* (*être*).  
 dozen, *douzaine*, *f.*  
 draft, *courant d'air*, *m.*  
 draw near, }  
 draw up, } *approcher*.  
 drawer, *tiroir*, *m.*  
 dress, *robe*, *f.*—*v. habiller*, *s'habiller*.  
 dressmaker, *couturière*, *f.*  
 duet, *duo*, *m.*  
 dull, to have a dull time, *s'ennuyer*.

during, pendant.  
dust, poussière, *f*.

## E

each, *adj.* chaque.—*pron.* chacun, *chacun*.  
each other, l'un l'autre [230].  
eagle, aigle, *m*.  
earlier, de meilleure heure.  
early, de bonne heure.  
earn, gagner.  
earth, terre, *f*.  
easy, facile.  
eat, manger.  
egg, œuf, *m*. [§ 45, 3].  
either, non plus [107].  
elect, élire (*irr. v.*).  
elephant, éléphant, *m*.  
else, anything else, autre chose.  
emperor, empereur, *m*.  
empty, vide.  
encourage, encourager.  
end, fin, *f*.; bout, *m*.  
ending, terminaison, *f*.  
enemy, ennemi, *m*.  
energy, énergie, *f*.  
England, Angleterre, *f*.  
enjoy, jouir (de).  
enlarge, étendre.  
enough, assez.  
enter, entrer (être).  
entire, entier, entière.  
errand, commission, *f*.  
equal, égal; *pl.* égaux.  
escape, échapper, se sauver.  
especially, précisément.  
establish, établir.  
esteem, estimer.  
Europe, —, *f*.  
European, européen, européenne.  
even (*numbers*), pair.  
evening, soir, *m*.; soirée, *f*.  
every, chaque [114].  
every other, tous les deux.  
everything, tout.  
examination, examen, *m*.  
except, excepté.

excuse, excuser.  
exercise, exercice, *m*.  
expect, attendre, s'attendre (à).  
explain, expliquer.  
explanation, explication, *f*.  
express, exprès, *m*.  
expression, —, *f*.  
eye, œil, *m*.; *pl.* yeux.

## F

fact, fait, *m*.  
factory, fabrique, *f*.  
fall, *n.* chute, *f*.  
fall, *v.* tomber (être).  
family, famille, *f.* (*U* mouillées).  
famous, fameux.  
fast, vite.  
father, père.  
fault, faute, *f*.  
fear, craindre (*irr. v.*).  
feed, donner à manger à.  
feel, sentir (*irr. v.*); to have feeling, être sensible.  
feminine, féminin.  
few, peu de; a few, quelques, quelques-uns.  
fewer, moins de.  
find, trouver.  
fine, beau, bel, belle.  
finger, doigt, *m.* (*g* silent).  
finger-nail, ongle, *m*.  
finish, finir.  
fire, feu, *m*.  
first, premier, première.  
fish, poisson, *m*.  
flattering, *adj.* flatteur, flatteuse.  
fleet, flotte, *f*.  
flower, fleur, *f*.  
fluently, couramment.  
fond, to be fond of, aimer.  
foot, pied, *m*.; on foot, à pied.  
footman, laquais, *m*.  
for, *prep.* pour [65, 143, 198].  
foreigner, étranger.  
forget, oublier.  
forgive, pardonner [166].  
forgiveness, pardon, *m*.

fork, *fourchette, f.*  
 fountain, *fontaine, f.*  
 franc, —, *m.*  
 France, —, *f.*  
 frank, *franc, franche.*  
 free, *libre.*  
 French, *français.*  
 friend, *ami, amie.*  
 friendship, *amitié, f.*  
 from, *de.*  
 fruit, —, *m.*  
 future, *n. avenir, m.—adj. futur.*

## G

garden, *jardin, m.*  
 gardener, *jardinier, m.*  
 gather, *ramasser; cueillir; se réunir.*  
 general, *général.*  
 generous, *généreux.*  
 gentleman, *monsieur (n and r silent).*  
 gentlemen, *messieurs.*  
 George, *Georges.*  
 German, *allemand.*  
 get, *recevoir; arriver; get back, rentrer, être de retour; get into, monter dans; get out, sortir; get to, arriver à; get up, se lever; get well, guérir.*  
 girl, *filles (ll mouillées).*  
 give, *donner; give back, rendre.*  
 glad, *content, bien aise.*  
 glass, *verre, m.*  
 glasses, *lunettes, f. pl.*  
 go, *aller (être) (irr. v.); go away, partir (irr. v.); s'en aller (irr. v.); go back, retourner; go down, descendre; go on, continuer; go out, sortir.*  
 gold, *or, m.*  
 good, *adj. bon, bonne.—n. bien, m.*  
 grandfather, *grand-père.*  
 grass, *herbe, f.*  
 gravitation, *gravité, f.*  
 great, *grand.*  
 greatly, *beaucoup, bien.*  
 Greek, *grec, grecque.*

green, *vert.*  
 gunpowder, *poudre à canon, f.*

## H

hair, *cheveu, m. [78].*  
 half, *moitié, f.*  
 half a dozen, *une demi-douzaine.*  
 half an hour, *une demi-heure.*  
 hand, *main, f.*  
 handkerchief, *mouchoir, m.*  
 handsome, *beau, bel, belle.*  
 happiness, *bonheur, m.*  
 happy, *heureux.*  
 hard, *dur; difficile.*  
 hardly, *à peine.*  
 hat, *chapeau, m.*  
 have, *avoir (irr. v.).*  
 hay, *foin, m.*  
 head, *tête, f.*  
 health, *santé, f.*  
 hear, *entendre.*  
 heaven, *ciel; m. pl. cieux.*  
 heavy, *lourd.*  
 help, *aider.*  
 here, *ici.*  
 hesitate, *hésiter (à).*  
 hide, *cacher.*  
 hide, *peau, f.*  
 high, *haut (asp. h).*  
 history, *histoire, f.*  
 hold, *tenir (irr. v.).*  
 home (at), *see 133.*  
 home (come), *rentrer (être).*  
 honor, *n. honneur, m.*  
 honor, *v. honorer.*  
 hope, *espérer.*  
 horse, *cheval.*  
 hospital, *hôpital.*  
 hot, *chaud.*  
 hour, *heure, f.*  
 house, *maison.*  
 how, *comment; how long, combien de temps; how many, how much, combien? que de!*  
 humming-bird, *oiseau-mouche, m.*  
 hunger, *faim, f.*  
 husband, *mari.*

## I

idea, idée, *f.*  
 if, si.  
 ill, *adj.* malade.—*n.* mal; *pl.* maux.  
 illness, maladie, *f.*  
 impatient, — (de).  
 importance, —, *f.*  
 in, dans, en, à [47, 139].  
 influence, —, *f.*  
 inhabitant, habitant, *m.*  
 instant, —, *m.*; on the instant, à l'instant.  
 instead of, au lieu de.  
 intend, compter, avoir l'intention de.  
 intention, —, *f.*  
 interest, *n.* intérêt, *m.*  
 —, *v.* s'intéresser (à).  
 interesting, *adj.* intéressant.  
 interrupt, interrompre.  
 into, dans.  
 invent, inventer.  
 invite, inviter.  
 Italian, italien, italienne.  
 Italy, Italie, *f.*

## J

jewel, bijou; *m. pl.* bijoux.  
 John, Jean.  
 journey, voyage, *m.*  
 judge, juge.  
 just as, tel que [153].  
 just now, tout à l'heure.

## K

keep, garder, tenir (*irr. v.*).  
 key, clé or clef, *f.*  
 kilometer, kilomètre, *m.*  
 kill, tuer.  
 kind, bon, bonne.  
 kindness, bonté.  
 king, roi.  
 kingdom (Nat. Hist.), règne, *m.*  
 knee, genou, *m.*  
 knife, couteau, *m.*  
 know, connaître (*irr. v.*); savoir (*irr. v.*) [70].  
 knowledge, connaissances, *f. pl.*

## L

lace, dentelle, *f.*  
 lady, dame.  
 lake, lac, *m.*  
 land, terre, *f.*; pays, *m.*  
 language, langue, *f.*; langage, *m.* [90].  
 large, grand.  
 last, *adj.* dernier, dernière.—*v.* durer.  
 late, tard, en retard [-v].  
 Latin, latin, *m.*  
 law, loi, *f.*; droit, *m.*  
 lawyer, avocat, *m.*  
 lazy, paresseux.  
 leaf, feuille, *f.* (*ll* mouillées).  
 learn, apprendre (*irr. v.*).  
 least (at), au moins.  
 leave, *trans.* laisser; *intrans.* partir (*irr. v.*).  
 lecture, conférence, *f.*  
 left, *adj.* gauche; I have left, il me reste.  
 lend, prêter.  
 less, moins [94].  
 lesson, leçon, *f.*  
 let, laisser.  
 letter, lettre, *f.*  
 library, bibliothèque.  
 lie, mentir (*irr. v.*).  
 lief, expressed by aimer autant.  
 life, vie, *f.*  
 lift, lever, soulever.  
 light (hair), blond.  
 —, *n.* lumière, *f.*  
 like, aimer; look like, avoir l'air (de); ressembler à.—*adj.* pareil, pareille (à); semblable (à); comme.  
 likely, probable: expressed by devoir.  
 lily, lis, *m.* (*s* sounded).  
 lion, —, *m.*  
 list, liste, *f.*  
 listen, écouter [98].  
 literature, littérature, *f.*  
 little, *adj.* petit—*adv.* peu; a little, un peu.  
 live, demeurer, habiter; vivre (*irr. v.*).  
 living, *n.* vie, *f.*  
 London, Londres.

long, *adj.* long, longue.—*adv.* long-temps; as long as, tant que; how long, depuis; combien de temps, combien y a-t-il que; no longer, ne . . . plus.

look at, regarder [98].

look for, chercher [98].

look like, ressembler (à); avoir l'air (de).

lose, perdre.

loud, haut (*asp. h.*).

Louvre, —, *m.*

love, aimer.

low, *adj.* bas, basse; in a low voice, à voix basse, à demi-voix.—*adv.* bas.—*v.* mugir.

## M

magnificent, magnifique, superbe.

maid, bonne.

mail, *v.* mettre à la poste.

make, faire (*irr. v.*).

man, homme.

many, beaucoup; as many, autant; how many, combien; so many, tant; too many, trop.

masculine, masculin.

matter, affaire, *f.*

mean, *v.* vouloir dire.

meaning, signification, *f.*

means, moyen, *m.*; by no means, pas du tout.

meat, viande, *f.*

meet, rencontrer; se rencontrer.

metal, métal; *m. pl.* métaux.

midnight, minuit, *m.*

milk, lait, *m.*

mind (to change one's), changer d'avis.

mineral, minéral, *m.*

mineralogy, minéralogie, *f.*

minute, —, *f.*

misfortune, malheur, *m.*

miss, manquer.

mistake, erreur, *f.*; faute, *f.*

moment, —, *m.*

money, argent, *m.*

monk, moine, *m.*

month, mois, *m.*

moon, lune, *f.*

more, plus; encore un [90, 125].

morning, matin, *m.*

mortal, mortel, mortelle.

most, la plupart de.

mother, mère.

mountain, montagne, *f.*

much, *adv.* beaucoup; as much, autant; so much, tant; too much, trop.

museum, musée, *m.*

music, musique, *f.*

must, expressed by falloir [164].

## N

name, *n.*; nom, *m.*—*v.* nommer.

natural, naturel, naturelle.

near, près de.

nearly, presque.

necessary, nécessaire.

necklace, collier, *m.*

neighbor, voisin, voisine.

never, ne . . . jamais.

news, nouvelle, *f. s.*

newspaper, journal, *m.*

next, prochain.

no, non; pas de [99], aucun.

no more, ne . . . plus.

nobody, personne (*neg. verb.*).

noise, bruit, *m.*

none, I have none, je n'en ai pas.

noon, midi, *m.*

north, nord, *m.*

not, ne . . . pas, ne . . . point, non [241]; why not? pourquoi pas? not yet, pas encore.

noun, nom, *m.*

now, maintenant; just now, tout à l'heure.

numerous, nombreux.

## O

obey, obéir (à).

oblige, obliger.

obtain, obtenir (*irr. v.*).

ocean, mer, *f.*; océan, *m.*

o'clock, expressed by heure, heures.



odd (*numbers*), *impair*.  
 of, *de*.  
 offer, *offrir* (*irr. v.*).  
 officer, *officier*.  
 often, *souvent*.  
 old, *vieux, vieil, vieille*; *âgé*.  
 on, *sur*.  
 once, *une fois*; once more, *encore une fois*; at once, *tout de suite*; *à la fois*.  
 one, *un, une*; the one, *celui, celle*.  
 only, *ne . . . que* [105], *seulement*.—  
*adj.* *seul*; only one, *seul*.  
 open, *adj. ouvert*.—*v. ouvrir* (*irr. v.*);  
 in the open air, *en plein air*.  
 opinion, *avis, m.*; *opinion, f.*  
 opportunity, *occasion, f.*  
 opposite, *en face*.  
 or, *ou*.  
 orange, —, *f.*  
 order, *n. ordre, m.*—*v. ordonner* (*à*).  
 other, *autre*.  
 out of, *de*; (with numbers) *sur*; be  
 out, *être sorti*; get out, *sortir* (*irr.*  
*v. être*); go out, *sortir*.  
 over, *sur*; plus *de*.  
 overcoat, *pardessus, m.*  
 over there, *là-bas*.  
 owl, *hibou (asp. h)*; *pl. hiboux*.  
 own, *posséder*.  
 owner, *propriétaire*.  
 ox, *bœuf* [§ 45, 3].

## P

page, —, *f.*  
 painter, *peintre, m.*  
 palace, *palais, m.*  
 pale, *pâle*.  
 paper, *papier, m.*; *journal, m.*  
 parents, —, *m.*  
 park, *parc, m.*  
 part, *n. partie, f.*; rôle, *m.*—*v. se sé-*  
*parer*.  
 participle, *participe, m.*  
 pass, *passer*.  
 passive, *passif, passive*.  
 patience, —, *f.*

patient, —.  
 pay, *payer*; pay a visit, *rendre or faire*  
*une visite*; pay back, *rendre*.  
 peacefully, *paisiblement*.  
 peacock, *paon, m.* [§ 15, 9].  
 pear, *poire, f.*  
 pearl, *perle, f.*  
 peculiar, *singulier, singulière*.  
 pen, *plume, f.*  
 pencil, *crayon, m.*  
 people, *gens* [205]; *peuple, m.*  
 perfectly, *parfaitement*.  
 perhaps, *peut-être*.  
 perish, *périr*.  
 permission, —, *f.*  
 person, *personne, f.*  
 physician, *médecin*.  
 piano, —, *m.*  
 picture, *tableau, m.*; *image, f.*  
 pick up, *ramasser*.  
 piece, *morceau, m.*  
 pity, *plaindre* (*irr. v.*).  
 place, *endroit, m.*  
 planet, *planète, f.*  
 plant, *n. plante, f.*  
 —, *v. planter*.  
 plaything, *joujou, m.*; *pl. joujoux*.  
 please, *plaire* (*à*) (*irr. v.*); as you please,  
*comme vous voudrez*; if you please,  
*s'il vous plaît*.  
 pleasure, *plaisir, m.*  
 plenty, *beaucoup*; *assez*.  
 poem, *poème, m.*  
 poet, *poète, m.*  
 polite, *poli*.  
 poor, *pauvre*.  
 postman, *facteur*.  
 power, *puissance, f.*; *pouvoir, m.*  
 practise, *étudier*.  
 praise, *louer*.  
 precious, *précieux*.  
 prefer, *préférer, aimer mieux*.  
 present, *adj. présent*.  
 —, *n. cadeau, m.*  
 president, *président*.  
 pretty, *joli*.  
 prevent, *empêcher*.

prey, proie, *f.*  
 price, prix, *m.*  
 probably, probablement.  
 professor, professeur.  
 profit, profiter.  
 promote, promouvoir (*irr. v.*).  
 proud, fier, fière.  
 prove, prouver.  
 prudent, —.  
 public, —, *m.*  
 punctual, exact.  
 punish, punir.  
 pupil, élève.  
 put, mettre (*irr. v.*).  
 — on, mettre.

## Q

quarrel, se quereller.  
 queen, reine.  
 question, *n.* —, *f.*  
 —, *v.* interroger.  
 quickly, vite.  
 quiet, tranquille [§ 52, 6].  
 —, *n.* calme, *m.*  
 quite, assez.

## R

rain, pluie, *f.*  
 raise, lever.  
 rarely, rarement.  
 rather (*with adj.*), assez.  
 —, (*with obj.*) expressed by aimer  
 mieux.  
 read, lire (*irr. v.*).  
 ready, prêt (*à*).  
 realize, comprendre (*irr. v.*).  
 really, vraiment, réellement, véritablement.  
 reason, raison, *f.*  
 recall, rappeler; se rappeler.  
 receive, recevoir (*irr. v.*).  
 reception, réception, *f.*  
 recite, réciter.  
 red, rouge.  
 reflect, réfléchir.  
 refuse, refuser (*de*).  
 regret, regretter (*de*).

reign, régner.  
 relate, raconter.  
 remain, rester (*être*).  
 remarkable, remarquable.  
 remember, se souvenir de, se rappeler.  
 render, rendre.  
 repeat, répéter.  
 represent, représenter.  
 republic, république, *f.*  
 reputation, réputation, *f.*  
 request, *v.* prier.  
 require, demander.  
 resemble, ressembler à.  
 resign, donner sa démission.  
 respect, respecter.  
 return (*give back*), rendre.  
 — (*go back*), retourner (*être*).  
 — home, rentrer (*être*).  
 Rhine, Rhin, *m.*  
 ribbon, ruban, *m.*  
 rich, riche.  
 right (*to be*), avoir raison.  
 ring, bague, *f.*  
 ripe, mûr.  
 rise, se lever.  
 risk, risquer.  
 river, rivière, *f.*  
 roar, rugir.  
 room, chambre, *f.*; place, *f.*  
 rose, —, *f.*  
 rule, règle, *f.*  
 ruler, souverain.

## S

sale (*for*), à vendre.  
 same, même [157].  
 say, dire (*irr. v.*).  
 scarcely, à peine; guère; pas plus  
 tôt.  
 school, école, *f.*  
 science, —, *f.*  
 sea, mer, *f.*  
 seated, assis.  
 secret, —, *m.*  
 see, voir (*irr. v.*).  
 seek, chercher.

seem, **sembler.**

Seine, —, *f.*

sell, **vendre.**

send, **envoyer** (*irr. v.*).

— *for*, **faire venir.**

sentence, **phrase, f.**

set (sun), **se coucher.**

several, **plusieurs.**

sew, **coudre** (*irr. v.*).

shameful, **honteux** (*asp. h.*).

shine, **briller** (*ll mouillées*).

shoe, **soulier, m.**

shore, **bord, m.**

short, **court.**

show, **montrer.**

shut, **fermer.**

sick, **malade.**

side, **côté, m.**

silence, —, *m.*

silk, **soie, f.**

since, *conj.* **depuis que** (*time*); **puis-**  
**que** (*cause*); **que** (*after il y a*).

—, *prep.* **depuis.**

sing, **chanter.**

singular, **singulier, singulière.**

sir, **monsieur.**

sister, **sœur.**

sister-in-law, **belle-sœur.**

sit down, **s'asseoir** (*irr. v.*).

situated, **situé.**

sky, **ciel, m.**

sleep, **dormir** (*irr. v.*).

sleepy, to be, **avoir sommeil.**

slowly, **lentement.**

small, **petit.**

snap, **faire claquer.**

snow, **neige, f.**

so (therefore), **donc.**—*adv.* **si.**

so many, } **tant** [161, 241].  
so much, }

so that, **de sorte que.**

society, **société, f.**

solar, **solaire.**

soldier, **soldat.**

some, **du, de la, de l', des.**

—, **quelque.**

—, **quelques-uns, quelques-unes.**

some one, **quelqu'un.**

something, **quelque chose.**

sometimes, **quelquefois.**

son, **fil** (*l silent, s sounded*).

song, **chant, m.**

soon, **bientôt**; as soon as, **aussitôt**  
**que, dès que.**

sooner, **plus tôt.**

sorrow, **chagrin, m.**

sou, —, *m.*

sound, **bruit, m.**

Spain, **Espagne, f.**

Spanish, **espagnol.**

speak, **parler.**

speech, **discours, m.**

spend, **passer.**

sprain, **fouler.**

spring, **printemps, m.**

stairs, **escalier, m.**

start, **partir** (*être*) (*irr. v.*).

station, **gare, f.**; **station, f.**

stay, *n.* **séjour, m.**

—, *v.* **rester** (*être*).

still, *adv.* **encore.**

stop, **arrêter, s'arrêter.**

store, **magasin, m.**

story, **histoire, f.**

street, **rue, f.**

stretch, **étendre.**

strong, **fort.**

study, *n.* **étude, f.**

—, *v.* **étudier.**

stupidity, **bêtise, f.**

subject, **sujet, m.**

succeed, **réussir**; **succéder** [171].

success, **succès, m.**

suffer, **souffrir** (*irr. v.*).

sufficient, **assez de.**

suggest, **suggérer.**

summer, **été, m.**

sum, **somme, f.**

summit, **sommet, m.**

sun, **soleil.**

sunrise, **lever du soleil, m.**

superior, **supérieur, supérieure.**

suppose, **supposer.**

sure, **sûr.**

surprise, *surprendre* (*irr. v.*).  
 surround, *entourer*.  
 Swiss, *suisse*.  
 Switzerland, *Suisse, f.*  
 system, *système, m.*

## T

table, —, *f.*  
 take, *prendre* (*irr. v.*).  
 take away, *enlever, emporter*.  
 talent, —, *m.*  
 talk, *parler*.  
 tall (*persons*), *grand*; (*things*), *haut* (*asp. h.*).  
 teacher, *maître, maîtresse, professeur*.  
 tell, *dire* (*irr. v.*), *raconter*.  
 termination, *terminaison, f.*  
 than, *que, de* [123], *que de* (*before inf.*).  
 thank, *remercier*.  
 thank you, } *merci*.  
 thanks, }  
 that, *adj. ce, cet, cette.—conj. que.—*  
*dem. pron. celui, celle; cela.—rel.*  
*pron. qui, que.*  
 theater, *théâtre, m.*  
 then, *alors, ensuite*.  
 there, *là; y*; there is, *il y a; voilà*.  
 thief, *voleur, voleuse*.  
 thing, *chose, f.*  
 think, *penser* [178], *croire* (*irr. v.*).  
 thirst, *soif, f.*  
 through, *à travers*.  
 thus, *ainsi, de la sorte*.  
 tide, *marée, f.*  
 time, *temps, m.—fois, f.*; on time, *à temps*; to have a good time, *s'amuser*; to have a dull time, *s'ennuyer*.  
 tired, *fatigué*.  
 to, *à, envers*; (*with inf.*) *à, de, pour*.  
 to-day, *aujourd'hui*.  
 together, *ensemble*.  
 to-morrow, *demain*.  
 too, *aussi*; trop; too many, *trop*.  
 toward, *vers, envers* [101].  
 tower, *tour, f.*

town, *ville, f.*  
 toy, *joujou, m.*  
 train, —, *m.*  
 translate, *traduire* (*irr. v.*).  
 travel, *voyager*.  
 treaty, *traité, m.*  
 tree, *arbre, m.*  
 trip, *voyage, m.*  
 troop, *troupe, f.*  
 trouble, to take, *se déranger*.  
 true, *vrai*.  
 truth, *vérité, f.*  
 try, *essayer* (*de*), *tâcher* (*de*).  
 tulip, *tulipe, f.*  
 tune (*in*), *juste*.  
 turn, *tourner, se tourner*.  
 Turkey, *Turquie, f.*  
 twice, *deux fois*.

## U

unanswered, *sans réponse*.  
 unaware, to be, *ignorer*.  
 uncle, *oncle*.  
 understand, *comprendre* (*irr. v.*).  
 unfortunate, }  
 unhappy, } *malheureux*.  
 United States, *États-Unis, m.*  
 universal, *universel, universelle*.  
 unless, *à moins que*.  
 until [p. 138, 6], *ne . . . que; jusqu'à*.  
 unwilling (to be), *ne pas vouloir*.  
 up, *levé*; higher up, *plus haut* (*h asp.*).  
 upstairs, *en haut* (*h asp.*).  
 use [96], *se servir de*.  
 useful, *utile*.  
 usually, *d'ordinaire*.  
 usurper, *usurpateur, m.*

## V

vacation, *vacances, f. pl.*  
 valiantly, *vaillamment*.  
 vegetable, *végétal*.  
 verb, *verbe, m.*  
 very, *très*; very much, very many, *beaucoup*.  
 vex, *fâcher, vexer*.  
 victorious, *victorieux*.

visit, *n.* visite, *f.*—*v.* visiter.  
 voice, *voix*, *f.*  
 vote, *voter*.  
 vulture, *vautour*, *m.*

## W

wage, *faire* (*irr. v.*).  
 wait, wait for, *attendre* [63].  
 waiting-room, *salle d'attente*, *f.*  
 wake, *réveiller*.  
 walk, *promenade*, *f.*  
 —, *se promener*, *faire une prome-*  
*nade*.  
 wall, *mur*, *m.*  
 want, *vouloir* (*irr. v.*).  
 war, *guerre*, *f.*  
 watch, *montre*, *f.*  
 water, *eau*, *f.*  
 way, *chemin*, *m.*—*moyen*, *m.*—*which*  
*way*, *par où*.  
 wealth, *richesse*, *f.* *richesses*, *f. pl.*  
 wear, *porter*.  
 weather, *temps*, *m.*  
 wedding, *mariage*, *m.*  
 week, *semaine*, *f.*  
 weep, *pleurer*.  
 well, *bien*; *eh bien*; *be well*, *aller*  
*bien*, *se porter bien*; *get well*,  
*guérir*.  
 what! *quoi! comment!*—(*interr.*  
*pron.*) *que*, *quoi*.—(*rel. pron.*) *ce*  
*qui*, *ce que*.—(*adj.*) *quel*, *quelle*.  
 whatever, *quel que*; *anything what-*  
*ever*, *n'importe quoi*.  
 when, *quand*; *lorsque*.  
 where, *où*.  
 whether, *si*.

*which* (*rel. pron.*), *qui*, *que*, *lequel*.—  
 (*adj.*) *quel*.  
 while, *conj.* *pendant que*.—(*with*  
*part.*), *en*; *a little while*, *quelque*  
*temps*.  
 white, *blanc*, *blanche*.  
 whole, *adj.* *tout* (*precedes article*).  
 why, *pourquoi*.  
 William, *Guillaume* (*ll mouillées*).  
 win, *gagner*.  
 window, *fenêtre*, *f.*  
 wine, *vin*, *m.*  
 winter, *hiver*, *m.* (*r sounded*).  
 wish, *vouloir* (*irr. v.*).  
 with, *avec*; *de*; *chez*.  
 without, *sans*.  
 woman, *femme* (*pron. fame*).  
 wonder, *se demander*; *s'étonner*.  
 wood, *bois*, *m.*  
 word, *mot*, *m.*; *parole*, *f.* [86].  
 work, *n.* *travail*, *m.*; *œuvre*, *f.*  
 —, *v.* *travailler* (*ll mouillées*).  
 worthy, *digne*.  
 wound, *blessé*.  
 write, *écrire* (*irr. v.*).  
 writing-paper, *papier à écrire*, *m.*  
 wrong (to be), *avoir tort*.

## Y

year, *an*, *m.*; *année*, *f.*  
 yellow, *jaune*.  
 yes, *oui*, *si* [16].  
 yesterday, *hier* (*r sounded*).  
 yet, *encore*.  
 yield, *céder*.  
 yonder, *là-bas*.  
 young, *jeune*.





# INDEX

*Numbers refer to pages*

**a**, prep. bet. nouns, 261.  
 after *dernier*, *premier*, 264.  
 with verbs of motion, 295.

**accents**, 2.

**acheter**, construction, 287.

**adjectives**, 39.  
 of nationality, 74, 94.  
 comparison, 80.  
 place of, 81, 277.  
 fem. of, 83, 87.  
 double masc. forms, 84.  
 as adverbs, 149, 286.

**adverbs**, place of, 51, 53, 96.  
 comparison, 91.  
 formation, 55, 92.  
 of quantity, 109.

**age**, expression of, 123.

**aller** (s'en), 235.  
 + inf., 249.  
 special use, 252.

**apposition**, 169.

**approcher**, 237.

**après** + inf., 240.  
*que*, 276.

**article**, repetition of, 62.  
 special uses, 164, 168.  
 omitted, 254.

**articles**, 30.  
 contraction, 37.  
 generic, 48.

**attendre**, 63.

**aucun**, 205.

**au revoir**, etc., 278.

**auxiliary verb**, verbs with *être*, 44.  
 paradigms, 315.

**avant and devant**, 54.

**avoir**, 31.  
 subj. and imper., 163.  
 idioms, 221.

**before**, 54.

**bonjour**, etc., 252.

**but**, meaning *only*, 105.

**cardinal numbers**, 117, 122.

**ce**, as pronoun, 67.

**ce, cet, cette**, 64.

**cedilla**, in conjugation, 193.

**celui-ci**, etc., 135.

**chez**, 133.

**collective nouns**, 286.

**comme**, exclamatory, 270.

**comparatives** without article, 169.

**comparison**, 80, 91.

**compound nouns**, 174, 261.

**conditional**, present, 145.  
 past, 160.  
 of modal verbs, 306.  
 of *savoir*, 309.  
 with *si*, 310.  
 special use, 311.  
 with *quand même*, 311.

**conjugation**, with *être*, 44.

first, 49.

special rules, 192, 207.

**conjugations**, the three regular, 318.

**conscience**, 296.

**convenir** + dative, 252.

**côté**, 166.

**craindre**, accord. to formation, 192.

**dans** and **en**, 139.

**dates**, 128.

**dative pronouns**, 155; use, 164.

**davantage**, 274.

**days of week**, 128.

**de**, after *quelque chose* and *rien*, 102.

between two nouns, 261.

**déception**, **décevoir**, 302.

**décider**, 264.

**demi** in compounds, 233.

**demonstrative adj.**, 64.

**pron.**, 68.

**depuis**, 197.

**devoir**, 298 et seq.

**disjunctive pron.**, 132, 133.

**dont**, 211.

**doubled consonants**, 19.

**elision**, 25, 147.

**en**, **pron.**, 123, 172.

derivation, 175.

**en**, **prep.**, 139, 240.

**en retard**, 120.

**envers**, 101.

**est-ce que**, 77.

**être**, 34.

subj. and imper., 163.

**euphonic t**, 32.

**faillir**, 287.

**faire**, pres. ind., 125.

**faire**, + inf., 188, 243, 244, 256.

past part., 245.

reflex. and impers., 247.

**falloir**, 261, 300.

**finir**, pres. ind., 52.

**fractions**, 127, 168.

**future**, 132.

**future anterior**, 136.

**gender**, 32, 55, 86, 111, 214.

**generic article**, 48, 61.

**gerund**, 239.

**héros**, 74.

**ignorer**, 313.

**imperative**, s added, 183.

**imperfect tense**, 71, 95.

**imperfect for Eng. pluperf.**, 198.

**indicative pres.**, meaning, 50.

after certain verbs, 268.

**infinitive**, with *pour*, 65, 148.

negative, 135, 286.

with *à*, 209, 290, 291.

with *par*, 209, 218.

past, with *après*, 240.

after *faire*, *laisser*, *entendre voir*, 247.

with *aller* and *venir*, 249.

after *vouloir*, 257.

substituted for subjunct., 276, 284.

without a prep., 285.

as subject, 285.

after impersonal verb, 291.

**interrogation**, 33, 70, 77, 113.

**interrogative adj.**, 99.

**pron.** 215, 220.

**irregular adjectives**, 87, 88.

plural, 75 et seq.

verbs, 320.

- le**, as pronoun, 274, 289.  
**letter-writing**, 130.  
**liaison**, 22.  
  
**mean**, 258.  
**mon, ton, son**, before a vowel, 56.  
**months**, 128.  
  
**naître**, tenses of, 281.  
**ne**, after a comparative, 113.  
     with subjunctive, 276.  
**ne . . . que**, 105.  
**negation**, 64, 72, 102, 105, 205, 310.  
**neuf, nouveau**, 233.  
**ni . . . ni**, 106.  
**numerals**, 117, 122, 127, 131.  
  
**obéir**, 294.  
**o'clock**, 119.  
**of**, in dates, 128.  
**on**, in dates, 128.  
**on**, indef. pron., 216.  
**only**, 105.  
**ordinal numbers**, 127.  
**où**, for *dans lequel*, etc., 216.  
**out of**, 125.  
  
**par**, idiomatic, 74.  
**partitive article**, 60, 61, 81, 108.  
**partitive noun**, 60, 61, 81, 99, 100, 106, 108.  
**pas omitted**, 310.  
**passer, se passer**, 236, 264.  
**passive verb**, 111, 206.  
     translation with *on*, 216.  
**past anterior**, 186.  
     definite, 103, 108.  
     indefinite, 46, 96.  
     participle, 44, 46, 49, 72, 151, 189, 190, 206, 207, 227, 230.  
**payer**, 171, 287.  
  
**penser**, 264.  
**personal pron.**, 132.  
     place of, 141, 142, 156, 159, 163, 181, 295.  
     compound, 234.  
**plaire**, 294.  
**plupart**, 121, 286.  
**pluperfect**, 72, 160.  
**plural of nouns**, 30, 75 et seq.  
     of adjectives, 75 et seq.  
**plus**, position of, 233.  
**porter**, pres. ind., 49.  
     according to formation, 191.  
**possessive case**, 40.  
     adjectives, 52, 56.  
     pronouns, 63.  
**pour**, 65.  
**pouvoir**, 303 et seq.  
**pouvoir (se)**, 304.  
**predicate noun**, 67, 254.  
**prendre à, dans**, 292.  
**prepositions repeated**, 41.  
**present indicative**, meaning, 50.  
     special use, 197.  
     participle, 238.  
**pronunciation**, 25.  
**propre**, 302.  
  
**quand même**, 311.  
**quantity**, 21.  
     adverbs of, 109.  
**que! how!** 182, 270.  
**que? why?** 271.  
**quel**, 99.  
**question repeated**, 287.  
**qui**, without antecedent, 287.  
**quoi que, quoique**, 275.  
**quotation**, 308.  
  
**reflexive verbs**, 225.  
     with indirect obj., 230.  
     for Eng. passive, 231.

**relative pron.**, 201.

with prep., 210, 211.

clause after obs. of hearing, seeing, 290.

containing subjunct., 271 et seq.

**rendre**, pres. ind., 61.

+ adj., 143.

**renoncer**, 257.

**retard** (en), 120.

**rien**, position, 103, 233.

**sage**, 278.

**savoir**, 309.

**se**, 227.

**s'en aller**, 235.

**sequence of tenses**, 280.

**servir**, 269.

**si**, yes, 116.

elision, 147.

whether, 153.

position, 233.

interrogative, 287, 310.

**soi**, 295.

**songer**, 264.

**souvenir**, 250.

**stress**, 21.

**stress-pronouns**, 132.

**subjunctive** of *avoir* and *être*, 163.

present, formation, 176.

with impers. verbs, 177.

past, 177.

imperfect, 184.

with inversion, 188.

after expression of doubt, 253.

after *vouloir*, 258.

absolute, 258.

after verbs of emotion, 266.

preceded by *ne*, 267, 276.

**subjunctive**, résumé of rules, 267.

in relative clause, 271 et seq.

with *quelque*; with *si*, 272.

with conjunctions, 275.

for conditional, 311.

**superlative**, 82.

**syllable-division**, 20.

**t**, euphonic, 32.

**tard**, 120.

**teach**, 292.

**tel**, 224.

**telling time**, 119.

**tenir**, imperative, 252.

**tenses**, sequence of, 280.

in quotation, 308.

**than**, after numbers, 123.

**this and that**, 73.

**tout**, 114.

place of, 241.

**tout ce qui, tout ce que**, 125.

**trees**, names of, 55.

**tu**, 31.

**unstressed pronouns**, 141, 155.

**valoir mieux**, 257.

**venir** + infinitive, 249.

**verbal adjective**, 239.

**vers**, 101.

**voir**, 140.

**volontiers**, 264.

**wonder**, 259.

**y**, 180.

**y avoir**, 38, 197, 198.









LIBRARY OF CONGRESS



0 003 116 497 7 ●